

UC-NRLF



\$B 311 385

HOSSFELD'S METHOD

FRENCH GRAMMAR



FIRST DIVISION

A. P. HUGUENET

HOSSFELD'S EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

SPANISH.

	s.	d.
ENGLISH-SPANISH GRAMMAR, by Hossfeld's New Method, arranged for Classes, Schools, and Private Lessons .	3	0
SPANISH-ENGLISH GRAMMAR, by Hossfeld's New Method	4	0
KEY to above	2	0
CONJUGATION OF THE SPANISH REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS	0	6
ENGLISH-SPANISH COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...	2	0
GERMAN-SPANISH COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT	2	0
FRENCH-SPANISH COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...	2	0
SPANISH-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH SPANISH DICTIONARY (New Edition)... ..	3	6
DITTO, by Velasquez	6	0
DITTO, by Velasquez (Large Edition)	24	0
HOSSFELD'S SPANISH READER	2	0
GERMAN-SPANISH READER	2	0
HOSSFELD'S SPANISH DIALOGUES	1	6
DON QUIXOTE, in SPANISH	5	0
GIL BLAS, in SPANISH	2	0

ITALIAN.

ENGLISH-ITALIAN GRAMMAR, by Hossfeld's New Method, arranged for Classes, Schools, and Private Lessons	3	0
ITALIAN COMPOSITION AND IDIOMS	2	6
CONJUGATION OF ITALIAN REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS	0	6
ENGLISH-ITALIAN AND ITALIAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY, by Meizi (2 vols.)	7	6
DITTO, by Millhouse (2 vols.)	12	0
DITTO, by Hossfeld	2	0
ITALIAN READER, by Dr. C. Scotti	2	0

PORTUGUESE.

GRAMMAR, by GRAUERT	5	0
----------------------------	---	---

DUTCH.

ENGLISH-DUTCH AND DUTCH-ENGLISH DICTIONARY ...	4	6
--	---	---

RUSSIAN.

ENGLISH-RUSSIAN AND RUSSIAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY ...	4	6
HINTS ON LANGUAGE, by R. I. Isnard	1	0

HIRSCHFELD BROS.,

22 AND 24, DREAMS BUILDINGS, FETTER LANE, LONDON, E.C.

HOSSFELD'S EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

FRENCH.

	s.	d.
ENGLISH-FRENCH GRAMMAR, by Hossfeld's New Method, arranged for Classes, Schools, and Private Lessons	3	0
ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR... ..	1	0
ADVANCED FRENCH GRAMMAR	2	6
FRENCH COMPOSITION AND IDIOMS	2	6
CONJUGATION OF FRENCH REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS	0	6
POLYGLOT CORRESPONDENT (English, French, German, Spanish)	3	6
ENGLISH-FRENCH COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...	2	0
FRENCH-ENGLISH COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...	2	0
ENGLISH-FRENCH DICTIONARY	1	0
FRENCH-ENGLISH DICTIONARY	1	0
THE TWO DICTIONARIES in one volume	2	0
MANUAL OF FRENCH CONVERSATION	1	6
100 PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO ENGLISH AND GERMAN	2	0
100 PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO GERMAN AND FRENCH	2	0
MOLIÈRE, LES FOURBERIES DE SCAPIN	1	0

GERMAN.

ENGLISH-GERMAN GRAMMAR, by Hossfeld's New Method, arranged for Classes, Schools, and Private Lessons .	3	0
MENDEL'S GERMAN EXERCISES AND IDIOMS	2	6
CONJUGATION OF GERMAN REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS	0	6
HOSSFELD'S GERMAN READER	2	0
ENGLISH-GERMAN COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...	2	0
FRENCH-GERMAN COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...	2	0
ENGLISH-GERMAN DICTIONARY	1	0
GERMAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY	1	0
THE TWO DICTIONARIES in one volume	2	0
SELECT GERMAN STORIES... ..	1	6

SWEDISH.


ENGLISH-SWEDISH AND SWEDISH-ENGLISH DICTIONARY .	4	6
--	---	---

DANO-NORWEGIAN.

ENGLISH - DANO - NORWEGIAN AND DANO - NORWEGIAN - ENGLISH DICTIONARY... ..	4	6
---	---	---

HIRSCHFELD BROS.

22 AND 24, BREAMS BUILDINGS, FETTER LANE, LONDON. E.C.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

HOSSFELD'S NEW METHOD.

INVALUABLE TO STUDENTS OF MODERN LANGUAGES.

HINTS ON LANGUAGE

AS A MEANS OF MENTAL DISCIPLINE,

And on the Importance of the Study of Modern Languages,

By PROF. R. J. ISNARD.

PRICE ONE SHILLING.

HIRSCHFELD BROS.,
BREAMS BUILDINGS, FETTER LANE, LONDON, E.C.

HOSSELD'S
NEW PRACTICAL METHOD
FOR LEARNING THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE

BY

A. P. HUGUENET,

*Officier d'Académie, Université de France;
Membre de la Société Nationale des Professeurs de Français en Angleterre.
Instructor Royal Naval College, Greenwich;
Examiner at Queen's College, London, &c. ;
Occasional Examiner to Her Majesty's Civil Service Commissioners.*

NEW AND REVISED EDITION.

London:

HIRSCHFELD BROTHERS,
BREMS BUILDINGS, FETTER LANE, E.C.

1892.



ENTERED AT
STATIONERS' HALL.

ALL
RIGHTS RESERVED.

PC 2111

H8

1892

CONTENTS.

	<i>page</i>
Preface	3
French alphabet	5
Accents and signs	5
Pronunciation of the vowels	6
Reading of words with vowels	7
Compound vowels.—Diphthongs	8
Pronunciation of the nasal sounds	8
Reading of words with compound vowels and diphthongs	9
Reading of words with nasal sounds	9
Pronunciation of the liquid sounds	10
Pronunciation of the consonants	10
Reading of words with liquid sounds	11
Reading of words with consonants	11
Linking of two words	14
Reading exercise on the linking of words	15
General exceptions to the rules of pronunciation ...	16
Division of syllables	18
Punctuation	18
Parts of speech	18
Numbers	19
Genders	19
The article and the noun.—Definite article	20

II

	<i>page</i>
Formation of the plural of nouns 	20
Indefinite article 	28
Partitive article 	32
Words which are the same or nearly the same in English and French 	36
The adjective 	40
Qualifying adjectives.—Formation of the feminine ...	40
" " Formation of the plural ...	48
Degrees of comparison 	48
Place of adjectives 	52
Determinative adjectives.—Cardinal numeral adjectives	56
Ordinal numeral adjectives 	60
Demonstrative adjectives 	64
Possessive adjectives 	68
Indefinite adjectives 	68
The pronoun.—Personal pronouns 	72
Demonstrative pronouns 	80
Possessive pronouns 	88
Relative and interrogative pronouns 	92
Indefinite pronouns 	96
Verbs 	104
Adverbs.—Adverbs of manner 	108
Adverbs of time 	112
Adverbs of place 	112
Adverbs of order 	112
Adverbs of quantity 	112
Adverbs of comparison 	112
Adverbs of affirmation, negation and doubt 	112
Adverbs of interrogation 	112
Prepositions 	116
Conjunctions 	120
Government of conjunctions 	120
Interjections 	128
Remarks on verbs 	132
Words with aspirated <i>h</i>	136

III

TWENTY DIALOGUES	... ..	page 141 to 160
A meeting, <i>une rencontre</i>	... ..	141
About the way, or road, <i>au sujet du chemin</i>	... ..	142
Visit, <i>visite</i>	... ..	143
Railway journey, <i>voyage en chemin de fer</i>	... ..	144
" " "	... ..	145
Sea journey, <i>traversée</i>	... ..	146
At a town, <i>dans une ville.</i>	... ..	147
Letting apartments, <i>location d'appartements</i>	... ..	148
With a servant, <i>avec un domestique</i>	... ..	149
Meals, <i>repas</i>	... ..	150
To write a letter, <i>pour écrire une lettre</i>	... ..	151
At a money-changer's, <i>chez un changeur</i>	... ..	152
Buying, <i>achats</i>	... ..	153
Carriages, <i>voitures</i>	... ..	154
At table, <i>à table</i>	... ..	155
A walk, <i>une promenade</i>	... ..	156
With a doctor, <i>avec un docteur</i>	... ..	157
Paris Museums, <i>Musées de Paris</i>	... ..	158
The Streets of Paris, <i>les rues de Paris</i>	... ..	159
How to progress in French, <i>comment faire des progrès en Français</i>	... ..	160
Syntax	... ..	162
Construction of affirmative sentences	... ..	166
Interrogative sentences	... ..	170
Negative sentences	... ..	178
Syntax of the article	... ..	186
Syntax of the noun.—Rules how to ascertain the gender of French nouns by their signification	... ..	194
Rules to ascertain the gender of French nouns by their endings	... ..	198
Gender of several nouns	... ..	206
Nouns which are of different gender according to their signification	... ..	214
Feminine of some nouns	... ..	218
Remarks on the number of nouns	... ..	222
Plural of compound nouns	... ..	226

	<i>page</i>
Syntax of the qualifying adjective.—Agreement of adjectives with nouns or pronouns	230
Place of adjectives	238
Adjectives of dimensions	242
Syntax of the determinative adjectives.—Possessive adjectives	246
Indefinite adjectives	250
Syntax of the pronoun.—Personal pronouns	254
Demonstrative pronouns	266
Indefinite pronouns	270
Syntax of the verb.—Subject of the verb	274
Complements of the verb	282
Use of the auxiliary verbs	286
Use of the tenses and moods	286
Syntax of the participles.—Present participle	298
Past participle	298

Instructions, how to correspond in French with the aid of HOSSFELD'S Commercial Correspondent	321—336
---	---------

The verb (supplement)	1—36
------------------------------	------

INDEX

A

	PAGE
Acute accent	
Adjectives (qualifying)	40, 44, 48
Adjectives (place of)	52, 238
Adjectives (complements of)	242
Adverbs	108, 112
Affirmation, negation and doubt (adverbs of) ...	112
Affirmative sentences (construction of)	166
Agreement of adjectives with nouns or pronouns	230, 234
Agreement of participles	298, 302
Apostrophe... ..	5
Article (definite)	20, 24
Article (indefinite)	28
Article (partitive)	32
Article (syntax of the)	186
Attribute	162
<i>Au, à la, à l', aux</i> , to the	24
<i>Aucun, nul</i> , no, none	68, 96, 250
<i>Avoir l'air</i> , to look	242
Auxiliary verbs (use of)	286

C

<i>Ce, cet, cette, ces</i> , this, that, these, those	64, 80, 84
<i>Ce, ceci, celui-ci, celui-là, ceux-ci. ceux-là, &c.</i> , this, that, these, those	80, 84, 266
<i>Chacun</i> , everyone	96, 270
<i>Chaque</i> , every, each	68
Cedilla	5
Circumflex accent	5
Collective nouns	278
Commercial correspondence	231, 336
Comparison (adverbs of)	112

VI

PAGE

Comparison (degrees of)	48, 52
Compound adjectives	234
Compound vowels (pronunciation of)	8
Compound nouns (plural of)	226
Complements of the verb	282
Conjunctions	120, 124, 128
Conjunctive personal pronouns	72, 76, 254
Conversations (and on the 3rd page of each lesson)	22, 26, 30

D

Demonstrative adjectives	64
Demonstrative pronouns	80, 84
Dialogues (twenty on subjects of every day life) ...	140
Diæresis	5
Dimensions (adjectives of)	242
Diphthongs (pronunciation of)	8
Disjunctive personal pronouns	72, 76, 254
<i>Dont</i> , of whom, of which	92
<i>Du, de la, de l', des</i> , of the	24, 32

E

<i>Elle, elles</i> , she, they	72
<i>En</i> , of him, of her, of it, of them, in, by, thence ...	72, 76, 246, 262
Endings of French verbs (supplement)	35
<i>Est-ce que</i> , is it that	174
<i>Eux</i> , they, them	72
Exercises (and on the 2nd page of each lesson)	21, 25, 29

F

Feminine of adjectives	40, 48
Feminine of some nouns	218
<i>Feu</i> , late	230

G

Genders	19
Genders (how to ascertain by the signification)	194, 198

VII

	PAGE
Genders (how to ascertain by the endings) ...	198, 202
General collective nouns	278
Government of verbs (supplement)	32
Grave accent	5
<i>Gens</i> , people	210

H

H (aspirated)	136
Hyphen	5

I

<i>Il, ils</i> , he, they	72
Imperfect, past definite, past indefinite (use of the)	290
Indefinite adjectives	68
Indefinite adjectives (syntax of)	250
Indefinite pronouns	96, 100
Indefinite pronouns (syntax of)	270
Interjections	128
Interrogation (adverbs of)	112
Interrogative pronouns	92
Interrogative sentences	174
Irregular verbs, first group (supplement)	24
Irregular verbs, second group (supplement) ...	26

J

<i>Je</i> , I	72
----------------------	----

L

<i>Le, la, l', les</i> , the	20, 24
<i>Le, la, l', les</i> , him, her, it, them	72, 76, 258
<i>Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles</i> , which	92
<i>Leur, leurs</i> , their	68, 246, 278
<i>Leur</i> , to them	72
<i>Lui, leur</i> , he, to him, to her, to them	72, 76, 262
<i>Le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.</i> , mine, thine, his, hers, its, &c.	88
<i>Le peu de</i> , the few, the want of	278
Linking of words	14
Liquid sounds (pronunciation of)	10

<i>L'un, l'autre, l'un l'autre, l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre,</i> the one, the other, each other, both, either, neither	96, 170
---	-----	-----	-----	-----	---------

M

Manner (adverbs of)	...	...	...	...	108
<i>Me, me,</i> to me	...	...	...	...	72
<i>Même,</i> same, even, self	...	...	...	...	250
<i>Moi,</i> I, me	...	...	...	...	72
<i>Mon, ma, mes,</i> my	...	...	...	...	68
Moods (use of)	...	...	...	...	294

N

Nasal sounds (pronunciation of)	...	...	...	8
<i>Ne, ne...pas, non,</i> not, no	...	...	...	178, 182
Negative sentences	...	...	...	178
<i>Ni,</i> neither, nor	...	...	...	274
<i>Nu, demi,</i> bare, half	...	...	...	230
<i>Nous,</i> we, us	...	...	...	72
Nouns (plural of)	...	...	...	20, 24, 28
Nouns (syntax of)	...	...	...	194
Nouns (genders of several)	...	...	...	206, 210, 214
Nouns (remarks on the number of several)	...	...	...	222
Nouns (of foreign origin)	...	...	...	222
Nominal adjectives (cardinal)	...	...	...	56
Nominal adjectives (ordinal)	...	...	...	60
Numbers	...	...	...	19

O

<i>On,</i> one, we, they, people	...	...	...	96, 100
Order (adverbs of)	...	...	...	112
<i>Ou,</i> or	...	...	...	274

P

Participle (syntax of the)	...	...	...	298
Partitive collective nouns	...	...	...	278
Past participles (agreement of)	...	...	...	298, 302
Period	...	...	...	162

IX

	PAGE
Personal pronouns	72, 76
Personal pronouns (syntax of)	254
<i>Personne</i> , nobody, anybody	96, 270
Place (adverbs of)	112
Possessive adjectives	68
Possessive adjectives (syntax of)	246
Possessive pronouns	88
Plural of nouns	20, 24, 28
Plural of adjectives	48
<i>Plusieurs</i> , several	68
Prepositions	116
Pronunciations (exceptions to the rules of) ...	16, 17
Propositions	162
Proper nouns	222
Punctuation	18

Q

Qualifying adjectives	40, 44, 48
Qualifying adjectives (syntax of)	230
Quantity (adverbs of)	112
<i>Que</i> , that	128
<i>Quel</i> , which, what	68
<i>Quelconque</i> , whatever	68
<i>Quiconque</i> , whoever	96
<i>Quelque</i> , some, any	68
<i>Quelque</i> , however	250
<i>Quel que</i> , whoever, whatever	250
<i>Quelqu'un</i> , somebody, anybody	96
Questions on grammar	22, 26, 30
(and on the 3rd page of each lesson)	
<i>Qui</i> , <i>que</i> , <i>quoi</i> , who, whom, what	92
<i>Qui est-ce qui</i> , <i>qui est-ce que</i> , &c., who, whom, &c. ...	174

R

Reading exercises	23, 27, 31
(and on the 4th page of each lesson)	
Relative pronouns	92
<i>Rien</i> , nothing, anything	96, 270

X

S

	PAGE
<i>Se, soi, himself, herself, themselves, one's self</i> ...	72, 76, 262
<i>Son, sa, ses, leur, leurs, his, her, its, their</i> ...	68, 246, 278
Speech (parts of)...	18, 19
Subject of the verb ...	162, 274
Syllables (division of) ...	18
Syntax ...	162

T

<i>Te, thee, to thee</i> ...	72
<i>Tel, such</i> ...	68
Tenses (use of) ...	286, 290
<i>Toi, thou, the</i> ...	72
Time (adverbs of) ...	112
<i>Tout, all, every, whole, quite...</i> ...	68, 96, 250
<i>Tu, thou</i> ...	72

U

<i>Un, une, a, an, one</i> ...	28, 56
--------------------------------	--------

V

Verbs ...	104
Verbs (remarks on) ...	132
Verbs (syntax of) ...	274
Verbs (Supplement ; <i>see</i> special index)	
Vocabularies ... (and on the 2nd page of each lesson)	21, 25, 29
<i>Vous, you</i> ...	72
Vowels (pronunciation of) ...	6

W

Words which are the same or nearly the same in English and French ...	36
--	----

Y

<i>Y, to, it, there, thither</i> ...	72, 76, 262
--------------------------------------	-------------

INDEX

TO THE PIECES OF PROSE AND POETRY TO BE
FOUND IN THIS VOLUME.

PROSE.

	PAGE
Les jardins de Babylone, <i>Rollin</i>	245, 249
Histoire d'une servante (Extrait de l'), <i>Lamartine</i>	253, 257
Immortalité de l'âme, <i>Jean Jacques Rousseau</i> ...	261
Combat de Télémaque, <i>Fénelon</i>	265
Etudes de la nature (Extrait des), <i>Bernardin de St.</i> <i>Pierre</i>	269
La conscience, <i>Châteaubriand</i>	273
Lettre à sa fille, <i>Madame de Sévigné</i>	277
Lettre à Madame Dupuy, <i>Voltaire</i>	281, 285
Adieux de Fontainebleau, <i>Napoléon I.</i>	289
Un réveille-matin, <i>Xavier de Maistre</i>	293
Les Romains conquérants, <i>Montesquieu</i> ...	297
Comment il faut causer, <i>La Bruyère</i>	301
Prononciation de l'U, <i>Molière</i>	305
Conseils sur l'art d'écrire, <i>Voltaire</i>	306
Pourquoi l'homme naît plus faible que les animaux, <i>Saintine</i>	306
La bosse de l'art militaire, <i>Tœpffer</i>	307
L'incendie de St. Sylvain, <i>Jules Sandeau</i> ...	308

POÉSIES.

L'huitre et les plaideurs, <i>Boileau</i>	311
La laitière et le pot au lait, <i>La Fontaine</i> ...	311
Le singe qui montre la lanterne magique, <i>Florian</i>	312
La jeune captive, <i>André Chénier</i>	313
Derniers moments d'un jeune poète, <i>Gilbert</i> ...	315
A une fleur, <i>Alfred de Musset</i>	316
Hymne, <i>Victor Hugo</i>	317
La feuille, <i>Arnault</i>	318
Image de la vie, <i>Madame Tastu</i>	318
Chœur d'Athalie, <i>Racine père</i>	318
Preuves de l'existence de Dieu, <i>Racine fils</i> ...	319

Signs and Abbreviations.

In the first 19 Reading Exercises, nasal and liquid sounds are indicated by italics, and the linking of words is indicated thus ~

m., masculine.

f., feminine.

p. or *pl.*, *plu.* or *plur.*, plural.

p. d., past definite.

i. or *imp.*, imperfect.

sing., singular.

PREFACE.

Notwithstanding the great success of the different works for the study of the French language, published by HIRSCHFELD Bros., it has been found that no one of them entirely meets the requirements of teaching in schools, and we have been frequently asked to publish another book on HOSSFELD's method which would be at the same time a Grammar, a Book of Exercises, a Manual of Conversation and a Reading-book, giving more development to the grammatical part and lengthening the exercises.

The present publication will be found to meet this acknowledged want.

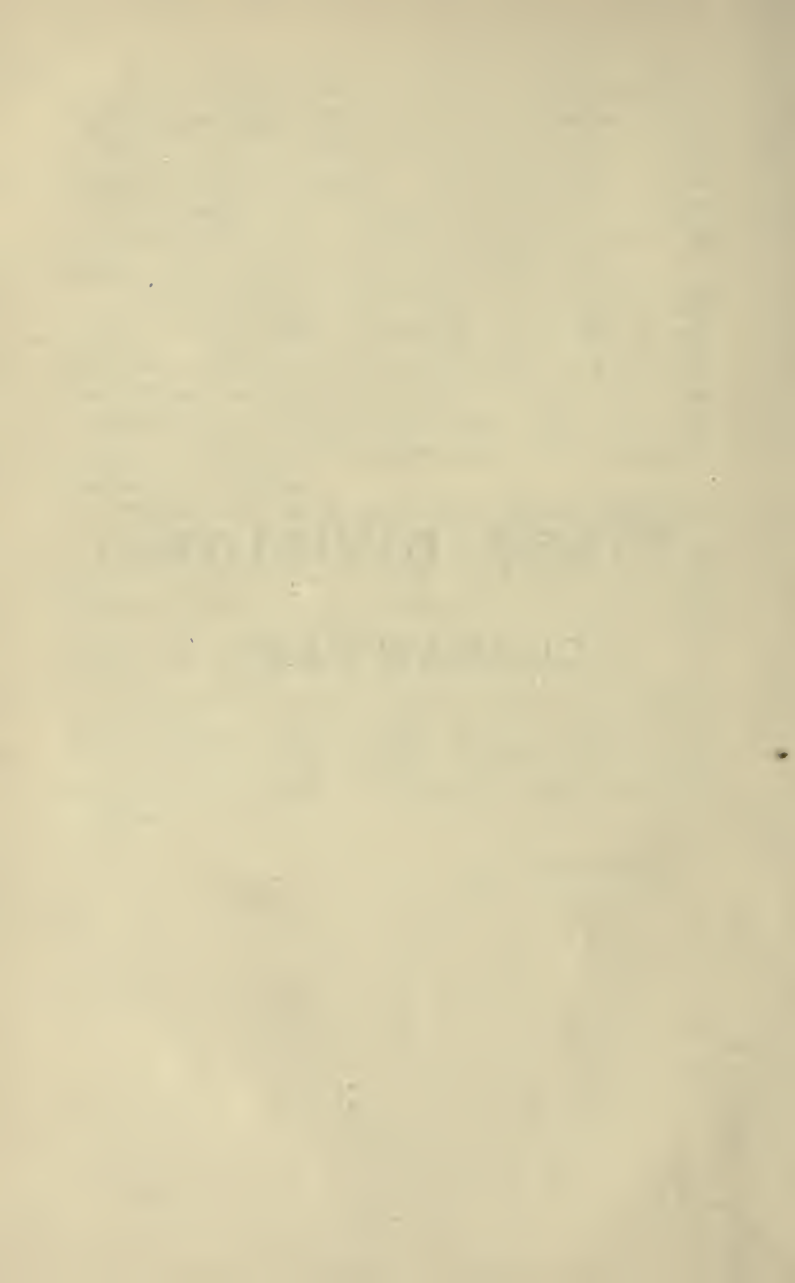
The book is divided into 66 lessons, each of which consists of 4 pages:

The *first page* is devoted to Grammar;

The *second* contains Exercises on Verbs and on the Rules on the opposite page;

The *third* gives Questions on the same Rules destined for pupils who are preparing for an examination at which they will have to answer similar questions; and also Conversations in which these rules are illustrated;

The *fourth* page consists always of a Reading Exercise, which must not only be read aloud, but also translated with the help of the indications given either between the lines, or at the bottom of the page.



THE FRENCH ALPHABET.

The French Alphabet consists of 26 letters :

A	a	ah	J	j	zhee	S	s	ess
B	b	beh	K	k	kah	T	t	teh
C	c	ceh	L	l	ell	U	u	ü (†)
D	d	deh	M	m	emm	V	v	veh
E	e	eh	N	n	enn	W	w	dooble veh
F	f	eff	O	o	oh	X	x	iks
G	g	zheh	P	p	peh	Y	y	ee greck
H	h	ash	Q	q	kü (†)	Z	z	zed
I	i	ee	R	r	err			

NOTE.—The letters *k* and *w* are very seldom used, and only occur in words of foreign origin.

The simple Vowels are : *a, e, i, o, u* and *y* ; and the remaining letters are Consonants.

Accents and Signs.

Accents in French are signs placed over a vowel to give it a different sound from its ordinary pronunciation, sometimes merely to indicate the difference between two words of the same spelling but different in their meanings.

There are three accents :

the acute (') which can only be applied to *e* : *é*.

the grave (`) which can be applied to *a, e, u* : *à, è, ù*.

the circumflex (^) which can be applied to all the vowels :

a, e, i, o, u : *â, ê, î, ô, û*.

The cedilla (,) is a sign placed under *c* : (*ç*) before *a, o, u*, to indicate that this consonant must be pronounced like *s*.

The diæresis (¨) is placed over *e* and *i* : *ë, ï*, to indicate that these vowels must be pronounced separately from a preceding vowel, and over *e* (mute) to indicate that the *u* which precedes it must be pronounced : *haïr, aiguë*.

The apostrophe (') is used to indicate the elision of the vowel *e*, and also that of *a* in the article *la* before a vowel, and of the *i* of *si* before *il* or *ils* : *l', s'il*.

The hyphen (-) is used to connect words.

(*) It is quite impossible to indicate the correct pronunciation of *u* by any spelling.

Pronunciation of the Vowels.

NOTE.—In pronouncing a French word, the emphasis or stress is always upon the last syllable pronounced, but the emphasis is very slight. The consonants in the examples are pronounced as in English. In French, consonants at the end of words are not sounded, except *c, f, l, r*, which are generally pronounced.

- a** sounds like *a* in *at* ; as in,
la, fatal, papa, bal, mal
- æ** (unaccented) at the end of a syllable (*) sounds like *e* in *her* ;
 as in, *le, me, te, cela, repas, arsenal*
- ə** (unaccented) at the end of a word of more than one syllable is
 always silent ; as in,
cabale, rame, malade, tasse, salade, avare
- é** (acute accent) sounds almost like *ey* in *abbey* ; as in,
métal, répété, sérénade, armée, marée
- e** (unaccented) sounds like *é* in the end syllables *ed, ez*, and in
er, if the final consonant is mute ; as in,
pied, assez, nez, armer, parler
- è** (grave accent) sounds like *e* in *where* ; as in,
mètre, remède, frère, élève, carène, nêfle
- ê** (unaccented) sounds like *è* in a syllable terminated by one or
 more consonants (*) ; as in,
esclave, fer, préfet, tablette, belle
- ê** (circumflex accent) sounds like *ay* in *hay* ; as in,
tête, frêle, fenêtre, rêve, crème
- i & y** sound like the English *e* in *equal* ; as in,
il, mine, victime, flétrir, myrte
- o** sounds like the *o* in *cross* ; as in,
corset, mol, col, botte, dormir, donner
- u** having no equivalent in English must be heard from the mas-
 ter. In order to get at the sound pronounce the *ee* in *been*
 with rounded lips as in whistling ; as in,
bulbe, cumul, futur, butte, brutal, rupture
- u** is silent after *q* and between *g e* and *g i* (not before *ë* or *ï*) ; as
 in,
quart, qui, guérir, guide
- NOTE:** All vowels have a short sound, except in the following
 principal cases, when the sound becomes long :
1. if they have the circumflex accent ; as in,
pâle, tête, île, ôter, flûte
 2. if followed by *rr*, a final *s* or *se*, a final *r* or *re* ; as in,
*barre, terre, ses, dos, base, brise, rose, muse, finir, avare, frère,
 lire, pore, pure*
 3. if followed by an *e* mute ; as in, *armée, vie, rue*

(*) viz.: Division of syllables on page 18.

Reading of Words with Vowels.

Malade	rupture	pêle-mêle	matina/(*)	alité	écume	
ill	rupture	pell-mell	early	laid up	foam	
salade	une	âne	pelure	sérénade	morbide	élève
salad	a	ass	peel	serenade	morbid	pupil
ballade	café	verre	marmelade	lunette	morale	perle
ballad	coffee	glass	marmalade	eye-glass	morals	pearl
si	fortune	prune	urbanité	livre	carnava/	futu/ i/
if	fortune	plum	urbanity	book	carnival	future he
regard	fibre	réga/	alène	universe/	rude	cana/
look	fibre	feast	awl	universal	rude	cañal
ridicule	calamité	ba/	navire	crêpe	mortalité	mer
ridicule	calamity	ball	ship	crape	mortality	sea
riva/	maritime	maturité	cataracte	colone/	elle	
rival	maritime	maturity	cataract	colonel	she	
répète	co/	amica/	abbé	minéra/	ma/	divinité me
repeats	collar	amicable	abbot	mineral	evil	divinity me
il jette	pâle	que	docilité	nêfle	miracle	dos terre
he throws	pale	that	docility	medlar	miracle	back earth
amira/	redevenir	mo/	vulgarité	balustrade	guerre	
admiral	to become again	soft	vulgarity	balustrade	war	
colosse	quatre	utilité	paterne/	nu/	relatif	or
colossus	four	utility	paternal	null	relative	gold
fermer	guinée	idole	répété	réalité	carpe	flûte
to shut	guinea	idol	repeated	reality	carp	flute
mercure	pied	forme	avenir	véritable	frêle	
mercury	foot	form	future	veritable	slender	
ver lune	if	rareté	arme	tabernacle	dîner	vérité
worm moon	yew	rarity	arm	tabernacle	dinner	truth
avarice	vertica/	crêpuscule	fanatisme	mur	i/	va
avarice	vertical	twilight	fanaticism	wall	he goes	
barre	pyramide	table	morose	plume	calme	assez
bar	pyramid	table	morose	feather	calm	enough
lûreté	tu	lis	trône	éternité	pur	âme
hardness	thou	readest	throne	eternity	pure	soul
porosité	culture	pâte	rhume	rapacité	verdure	
porosity	culture	paste	cough	rapacity	verdure	
urne	fi/	amabilité	tulle	manifeste	canapé	énormité
urn thread	amiability	net	manifesto	couch	enormity	

(*) As final consonants are seldom pronounced, we have printed in Italics those which must be sounded.

Compound Vowels.

ai, ei are pronounced like *ai* in *hair* :

clair, plaine, gai, laine, neige, pleine, reine

au, eau are pronounced like *o* in *note* :

aube, aurore, beau, cadeau, peau, plateau, veau

eu, œu are pronounced somewhat like *u* in *but* :

Dieu, peuple, fleur, vœu, sœur, œuvre

ou is pronounced like *oo* in *wood* :

goutte, poule, route, boule, louve, sou, fou

Diphthongs.

ay is pronounced like the French *ai-i* :

balayer, essayer, ayant, pays, payer

oi is pronounced like the two English interjections *oh* and *ah* joined together :

roi, miroir, bois, boire

ui is pronounced by giving to the two vowels their natural sound, but pronouncing them as a single syllable :

lui, puis, fuire, nuire, nuit, cuit

oy, uy are pronounced like the French *oi-i* and *ui-i* :

foyer, royal, écuyer, fuyard

Pronunciation of the nasal sounds.

A NASAL SOUND(*) arises when a simple or compound vowel is followed by *m* or *n* ; but no nasal sound is produced if the *m* or *n* is followed by another vowel or another *m* or *n*.

aim, ain, ein, im, in, ym sound nearly like *an* in *pang* :

faim, main, ceindre, impérial, vin, nymphe

am, an, em, en sound nearly like *aun* in *unt* :

amputer, dans, embellir, en, enfant

om, on sound somewhat like *on* in *long* :

plomb, bonbon, fond, garçon, non

um, un sound somewhat like *un* in *lung* :

humble, parfum, brun, un, lundi

The nasal sound *en* in the end syllables *ien*, *yen* has the sound of the nasal sound *ain* :

bien, rien, citoyen, moyen

oin is pronounced like *o-ain* :

besoin, coin, foin, joindre

(*) Similar nasal sounds are found in the English words : *aunt, long, pang, lung* in order to get the pronunciation of the French nasal sounds, *an, on, ain, un* are pronounced nearly as in the above words but without sounding the *g*.

Reading of words with compound vowels and diphthongs.

Baie	peine	aurore	pays	feu	œu	fou	foyer
bay	pain	aurora	country	fire	vow	mad	hearth
appuyer	reine	paysanne	sœur	roi	clou	tournée	
to support	queen	peasant (/f/)	sister	king	nail	circuit	
essuyer	seize	aumône	balayer	Dieu	œuvre	roya/	
to wipe	sixteen	alms	to sweep	God	work	royal	
maître	fou	baleine	eau	cœur	boutoir	boyaux	
master	fool	whale	water	heart	snout	bowels	
fuyard	beauté	bœuf	écumoire	ouverture	vous		
fugitive	beauty	ox	skimmer	opening	you		
plaire	taureau	ivoire	poudre	yeux	palais	aile	
to please	bull	ivory	powder	eyes	palace	wing	
mœurs	loi	moineau	couteau	bateau	voleur	œuf	
manners	law	sparrow	knife	boat	thief	egg	
soie	coudoyer	foule	peau	beurre	fuseau	noyer	
silk	to elbow	crowd	skin	butter	distaff	to drown	
tuyau	mémoire	croûte	oiseau	peuple	bois	poule	
tube	memory	crust	bird	people	wood	hen	

Reading of words with nasal sounds.

Ambulant	emballer	ciment	bimbelot	quinze		
ambulatory	to pack up	cement	toy	fifteen		
lymphatique	daim	bain	ceindre	criant	conscience	
lymphatic	deer	bath	to gird	crying	conscience	
France	ancien	combat	bonbon	humble	brun	
France	ancient	combat	sugar-plum	humble	brown	
besoin	fonte	enfant	cendre	grimper	dinde	essaim
want	casting	child	ashes	to climb	turkey-hen	swarm
crainte	dépeindre	fiancée	ancienne	comte	parfum	
fear	to describe	betrothed	ancient	count	perfume	
aucun	fantaisie	membre	denrée	allemand	nymph	
no one	fantasy	member	provisions	German	nymph	
faim	gain	étreinte	friand	expérience	citoyen	
hunger	profit	grasp	dainty	experience	citizen	
moyen	rompre	citron	défunt	foin	son	gant
means	to break	lemon	deceased	hay	sound	glove
remplacer	enchanter	imparfait	incandescent	feinte		
to replace	to enchant	imperfect	white-hot	pretence		

Pronunciation of the liquid sounds.

l and **ill** if preceded by a simple or compound vowel, have a liquid sound and are pronounced like *ee-y* in the middle and *ee* at the end of words ; the vowels preceding *il* or *ill* keep their usual pronunciation, except *e*, which *i* pronounced like *è* :

bail, caillou, bataille, soleil, meilleur, bouteille, fauteuil, feuillet, feuille, fenouil, bouillir, patrouille

œ and *ue* before *il* and *ill* have the sound of the French *eu* :
œil, œillet, cercueil

ill not preceded by a vowel has also a liquid sound, as in *billet, famille*, except in words which commence with *ill, mill, vill*, and a few others, *illégal, mille, millimètre, ville, village, piller, fille, grille, habiller, mantille*.

Pronunciation of the Consonants.

CONSONANTS are generally pronounced as in English, but, as a rule, are not sounded at the end of words. *c, f, l, r*, however, when they occur as last letters of a word, are pronounced. But *r* is not pronounced in words of more than one syllable ending in *er*.

REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS.

c is pronounced like *k* ; but like *ss* before *e* and *i*, and also before *a, o, u*, when the cedilla is placed underneath :

duc, ceci, cela, cidre, ça, déçu, façade, reçois

cc is pronounced like *ks* before *e* and *i*, and like *k* before *a, o, u* or a consonant :

accéder, accident, vaccine, accorder, accréditer, accumuler

ch is pronounced like *sh* :

chasse, chat, charade, cheval, biche, château

but is pronounced like *k* before *r*, and in the greater number of words derived from the Greek :

chrôme, chronique, choral, chaos, écho

g is pronounced like *g* in gallop ; but it is pronounced like *s* in *pleasure* before *e, i* and *y* :

gorge, galop, gelée, genou, girafe, gymnase,

Reading of words with liquid sounds.

Bataille	cerfeuil	carillon	œil	bouillir	canaille
Battle	chervil	chime	eye	to boil	rabble
bouteille	deuil	mantille	aillade	brouillard	citrouille
bottle	mourning	mantilla	garlic-sauce	fog	pumpkin
ferrailleur	caillot	corbeille	écureuil	drille	œillet
fighter	clot of blood	basket	squirrel	fellow	eyelet-hole
quenouille	éventail	merveille	fauteuil	famille	fouiller
distaff	fan	marvel	arm-chair	family	to search
douillet	taille	soleil	feuille	fille	grenouille
soft	waist	sun	leaf	daughter	frog
vermeil	seuil	papillon	rouille	gargouille	abeille
rosy	threshold	butterfly	rust	gutter-spout	bee
pareil	veille	bétail	railler	maille	raillerie
alike	eve	cattle	to banter	stitch	raillery
andouille	treille	soupirail	détaillant	treuil	funérailles
twist	vine	air-hole	retailer	windlass	funeral
écueil	tenailles	cercueil	écaille	éveillé	
rock	tongs	coffin	scale	awakened	

Reading of words with consonants.

Cheval(*)	botte	bal	cabale	chrôme	cela	duo
horse	boot	ball	cabal	chrome	that	duke
chair	sec	célèbre	chalet	chronique	cadre	celle
flesh	dry	celebrated	cottage	chronicle	frame	this
écheo	chaleur	calice	accélérer	accaparer	accorder	
check	heat	chalice	to accelerate	to forestall	to grant	
dormir	badaud	fable	beaucoup	gelée	galop	
to sleep	cockney	fable	much	frost	gallop	
mois	habile	face	petit	genou	riche	darder
month	clever	face	little	knee	rich	to dart
facteur	ceci	germer	gymnase	aigre	fortune	
postman	this	to germinate	gymnasium	sour	fortune	
cerf	lire	papa	poli	laborieux	passer	nager
stag	to read	papa	polite	industrious	to pass	to swim
cavalerie	demande	bananier	chat	chameau	dromadaire	
cavalry	demand	banana-tree	cat	camel	dromedary	
badinage	canon	canif	fatalité	furie	Chine	comète
frolic	cannon	penknife	fatality	fury	China	comet

(*) No further indications will be given when final consonants must be pronounced.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS (*continued*).

gn is pronounced somewhat nasal and very much the same as *ni* in the English word *companion*:

signe, agneau, campagne, gagner, Boulogne

h is generally silent, but if aspirated (usually indicated in dictionaries by 'h) its sound is but faintly heard:

homme, hôte, heureux, 'héros, 'haricot

j is always pronounced like *s* in *pleasure*:

jambon, jardin, je, jubilé, jaune, jeudi

p is generally silent before *t*:

baptême, baptiser, sculpture.

ph is pronounced like *f*:

phrase, physique, philosophe

qu is pronounced like *k*:

quatre, requête, liquide, quai

r is harder than in English, principally at the beginning of words, and when followed by another *r*:

reproche, râle, brigade, drame, serre, horrible

it is silent at the end of words of more than one syllable ending in *er*:

abuser, goûter, charger, premier, mensonger

s is pronounced hard at the beginning of words, and between a vowel and a consonant:

sable, serpe, passage, estime, reste, narcisse, masse

It is pronounced soft like *z* between two vowels, except when it is the first letter of the second word in compound words:

visage, ruse, asile, visible, phase; but belle-sœur, parasol, entre-sol, demi-siècle

sc is pronounced like *ss* before *e* and *i*, and like *sk* before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant:

sceau, scélérat, sciage, scission; scapulaire, scolastique, sculpture, scrupuleux

Reading of words with consonants.

lire	papa	poli	laborieux	honnête	mal	nous	nager
to read	papa	polite	laborious	honest	evil	we	to swim
palais	baptême	phare	quatre	acoustique	mercredi		
palace	baptism	light-house	four	acoustics	Wednesday		
jaconas	coup	baptiser	quiétude	église	ans		
jaconet	blow	to baptise	quietude	church	years		
laisser	laver	quitter	arroser	radis	rire	mère	car
to leave	to wash	to leave	to water	radish	to laugh	mother	for
mer	sable	visage	belle-sœur	pas	bras	sceau	
sea	sand	face	sister-in-law	step	arm	seal	
scrofuleux	reproche	marine	cher	cocher	ruse	frimas	
scrofulous	reproach	navy	dear	coachman	cunning	rime	
baratte	cirque	charrette	barbe	choc	ciseau	machine	
churn	circus	cart	beard	shock	chisel	machine	
nicher	papier	drap	compter	pharmacie	barrique		
to nestle	paper	cloth	to reckon	chemistry	cask		
jardinier	nomade	parade	galop	gâteau	phrase	onze	
gardener	wandering	parade	gallop	cake	phrase	eleven	
esclave	sculpture	prière	former	fleur	passage	table	
slave	sculpture	prayer	to form	flower	passage	table	
sol	cygne	'héros	quatorze	que	erreur	amusement	
soil	swan	hero	fourteen	that	error	amusement	
pur	quarante	sur	signe	paresse	muse	humeur	
pure	forty	upon	sign	laziness	muse	humour	
'hideux	bois	poésie	mur	campagne	souvent	qualificatif	
hideous	wood	poetry	wall	country	often	qualificative	
soigneux	jaune	histoire	quoique	salut	fer	digne	
careful	yellow	history	though	salute	iron	worthy	
qui	été	quel	quoi	peu	heure	habitant	qualité
who	summer	which	what	little	hour	inhabitant	quality
prier	magnifique	'hagard	quel	je	plaigne	'hache	
to pray	magnificent	haggard	which	I	may pity	axe	
assurance	habit	querelle	honneur	'honte		reçu	
assurance	coat	quarrel	honour	shame		received	
épargne	homme	dose	'hauteur	phrase	sel	'haine	
saving	man	dose	height	phrase	salt	hatred	
usage	jus	dignité	'haïr	humble	Afrique.		
custom	juice	dignity	to hate	humble	Africa		

PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS (*concluded*).

t is pronounced like *s* in the end syllable *tie* preceded by a vowel :

diplomatie, minutie, prophétie

also in the middle of words in the syllable *ti* followed by a vowel :

*partiel, ambitieux, nation, martial, béotien,
impatience, factieux*

But *t* has its natural sound in the syllables and endings *stion, xtion, tié, tier, tière, tième*, and in the endings *tions* and *tiez* of the tenses of verbs in *ter* :

*question, mixtion, amitié, portier, jitière, giletière,
septième, nous portions, vous portiez*

th is pronounced like a single *t* :

théâtre, théologie, thyrsé

x has the sound of *gs* at the beginning and in the middle of words :

exercer, examiner, Xénophon, exemple

it is pronounced like *k* when before *ce* and *ci* :

excéder, excellence, excepter, exciper, exciter

Linking of two words.

The linking of two words is the pronouncing of the last consonant of a word with the first syllable of the next word when it begins with a vowel or mute *h*. Linking only takes place between words closely connected by their meaning, as articles and nouns, adjectives and nouns, personal pronouns and verbs; Ex.: *lesamis, deux beauxoiseaux, ilsont parlé*.

In linking *d* is pronounced like *t*, *f* like *v*, *s* and *x* like *z*; Ex.: *le grandenfant, le mauvaishomme, neufans, dixoiseaux*.

READING OF WORDS WITH CONSONANTS.

jet	façade	aristocratie	laitier	homme	septième	théâtre
throw	front	aristocracy	milkman	man	seventh	theatre
tacher	distrain	que	démocratie	portier	cafetière	
to stain	distracted	that	democracy	porter	coffee-pot	
jeune	théière	taffetas	plat	lit	séditieux	
young	tea-pot	taffeta	dish	bed	seditions	
valet	troisième	excéder	beaux	assez	zèle	
servant	third	to exceed	fine	enough	zeal	
vassal	chaque	zénith	chez	velours	exercer	quinze
vassal	every	zenith	at	velvet	to exercise	fifteen
maison	excepter	doux	zéphir	nez	Athénien	
house	to except	sweet	zephyr	nose	Athenian	
impartial	radieux	isolement	salade	musicien	sultan	
impartial	radiant	loneliness	salad	musician	sultan	
rat	ambitieux	imposant	misérable	collection	supériorité	
rat	ambitious	imposing	miserable	collection	superiority	
physique	expédition	radeau	réussir	escalade	flux	
physics	expedition	raft	to succeed	scaling	flow	
rassemblement	hypocrite	opposition	crise	majesté		
gathering	hypocrite	opposition	crisis	majesty		

Reading exercise on the linking of words.

Nous avons.	Trois oiseaux.	Un petit homme.		
We have	Three birds	A little man		
Ils eurent.	Vous avez.	Des habits usés.	Les états	
They had	You have	Some coats worn out	The states	
Nous attendons Alfred.	Ils ont.	Six heures.	Est elle	
We expect	Alfred	They have	Six hours	Is she
chez elle?	Comment vous appelez-vous?	Deux amis.		
at home	How yourself do call you	Two friends		
Il est ici.	Mes enfants.	Nos ennemis.	Elles entrèrent.	
He is here	My children	Our enemies	They entered	
Un grand ami.	Il a neuf ans.	Avez-vous un mauvais		
A good friend	He has nine years	Have you a bad		
ouvrier?				
workman				

General Exceptions to the Rules of Pronunciation.

(For reference only.)

1. A is silent in—*aout, Saône, toast* (st pronounced.)
2. B (*final*) is sounded in—*club, nabab, rob.*
3. C (*final*) is silent in—*accroc, banc, blanc, clerc, cric, croc, échecs, escroc, estomac, flanc, franc, lacs, marc, porc, raccroc, tabac, tronc.*
Also in the singular present of the verbs *vaincre* and *convaincre*; as in *je vains, il convainc, etc.*
4. C & CH sound like g in—*second, drachme.*
5. D is sounded in—*sud, Talmud.*
6. E is silent between g and a or o, when it serves to give the g the soft sound; as in *vengeance, pigeon, etc.*
7. E sounds like è, if the first letter of a word, and followed by a double consonant; and in all words beginning with *dess*, as in *effacer, essarter, dessécher, etc.*, also in the word *et* (and).
8. E sounds like a at the beginning of the adverbial termination *ement*, as in *prudemment, etc.*; e has also the sound of a in the words *femme, solennel*, and their derivatives.
9. F (*final*) is silent in—*bœufs, cerf, cerf-volant, chef-d'œuvre, clef, (or clé), nerfs, œufs.*
10. G (*final*) is sounded in—*grog, zigzag.*
11. G is silent in—*doigt, legs, signet, vingt.*
12. GN is pronounced hard g-n in—*agnat, cognat, gnôme, gnômon, igné, ignition, ignicole, imprégnation, inexpugnable, stagnant, stagnation.*
13. L is silent in—*baril, chenil, coutil, fusil, gentil, outil, persil, sourcil.*
14. M is silent in—*damner, condamner, automne.*
15. P is sounded in—*cap, cep, croup, group, hanap, jalap, julep, salep*; also in *septembre, septuple.*
16. P is silent in—*corps, temps, printemps.*
17. R is sounded in the end syllable *er* (e pronounced è) of the following words of more than one syllable :—*amer, belvédér, cancer, cuiller, cutter, enfer, fier, frater, hier, hiver, magister, outremer, pater, and in proper names.*
18. R is silent in—*monsieur, messieurs.*
19. S (*final*) is sounded in—*atlas, biceps, bis, cassis, chorus, fils* (pronounce *fiss*), *gratis, jadis, lis, mats, mars, mœurs, oasis, obus, omnibus, ours, papyrus, prospectus, rébus, tournevis, typhus, vis*, and in all nouns in *us* derived from the Latin.
20. T (*final*) is sounded in—*abject, aconit, brut, Christ, chut, contact, correct, cobalt, déficit, district, direct, dot, est* (east), *exact, fat, incorrect, indirect, infect, intellect, lest, mat, net, ouest, post, préterit, rit, strict, suspect, test, transit.*
21. T in *tie* sounds like t in—*épizootie, rôtie, sotie.*
22. T in *ti* sounds like t in—*chrétien, entretien, maintien, soutien*; and in *bestial, bestiaire, vestiaire, galimatias*, and their derivatives.
23. T in *tier* sounds like s in all the tenses of verbs in *tier* (except *châtier*): as in *balbutier, balbutiant, nous balbutions, etc.*

24. **ST** is silent in—*est* (is) and *Jésus Christ*, but is pronounced in *Christ*.
25. **TH** is silent in—*asthme*, *asthmatique*, *isthme*.
26. **U** after *qu*, or *gu*, is sounded in—*équestre*, *équidistant*, *équilatéral*, *équitation*, *liqueur*, *questeur*, *quintuple*, — *arguer*, *aiguille*, *guise*, *inextinguible*, *linguistique*, and in all words derived from the adjective *aigu*; as, *aiguiser*, etc.
27. **U** in *qua* sounds like the French *ou* in—*aquarelle*, *aquatique*, *équateur*, *équation*, *quatuor*, *quaternaire*, *quinquagénnaire*, and their derivatives; and in all words beginning with *quadr*; as, *quadrupède*.
28. **X** (*final*) is sounded in—*Aix*, *index*, *lynx*, *préfix*, *silex*, *sphinx*.
29. **X** sounds like *z* in—*deuxième*, *dixième*, *sixième*.
30. **X** sounds like *ss* in—*Auxonne*, *Bruxelles*, *Cadix*, *soixante*.
31. **Z** is sounded in—*gaz*, and in words of foreign origin—*Rodez*, *Sûz*, *Cortez*, *Fernandez*.
-
32. **EU** sounds like the French *u* in the tenses of the verb *avoir*; as in, *j'eus*, *eu*, *que j'eusse*.
33. **OE** & **OË** sound like (the French) *oi* in—*moelle*, *poêle*.
34. **OI** sounds like *o* in—*encoignure*, *oignon*, *empoigner*, *poignard*, *poignet*.
-
35. **ILL** is not liquid but fully sounded in—*Achille*, *codicille*, *distiller*, *imbécillité*, *Lille*, *osciller*, *pupille*, *scintiller*, *titiller*, *tranquille*, *vaciller*.
36. **IL** is liquid in—*avril*, *babil*, *péril*, *grésil*, *gentilhomme*, and sometimes in *cil* and *gril*.
-
37. **AM**, **EM**, **IM**, **UM** at the end of words are not nasal, and the *m* is sounded; as in—*Abraham*, *album*, etc. but they remain nasal in—*Adam*, *dam*, *quidam*, *parfum*.
38. **EMM** at the beginning of words is nasal and sounds like *en-m*; as in *emménager*, *emmener*, etc.
39. **ENT** in the 3rd person plural of verbs is silent; as in—*ils parlent*, *elles parleraient*.
40. **EN** is nasal in—*enivrer*, *ennobler*, *enorgueillir*, *ennui* (and its derivatives).
41. **EN** sounds like *ain* (nasal) in—*Benjamin*, *examen*, *mentor*, *memento*.
42. **EN** sounds like *enn* in—*abdomen*, *amen*, *Eden*, *gluten*, *gramen*, *Hymen*, *lichen*.
43. **IEN** (not *ienn*) in the tenses of the verbs *venir* and *tenir*, and their derivatives sounds like *i-ain* (nasal); as in—*je viens*, *nous tiendrons*, etc.
44. **AEN** & **AON** sound like *an* (nasal) in—*Caen*, *faon*, *paon*, *taon*, (sometimes pronounced *ton*).

NOTE: The nasal sound is generally written with *m* before *p* and *b*; as in, *empire*, *rompre*, *impérial*. Consonants at the end of foreign proper names are generally pronounced, as in—*Alep*, *Bagdad*, *Périclès*.

Division of Syllables.

In French words are divided into syllables according to the following principal rules :

1. A consonant between two vowels commences the new syllable ; as,
i-nu-ti-le, a-mi, pè-re, a-ca-dé-mie
2. When there are two consonants between two vowels one of them belongs to the first and the other to the second syllable ; as,
ex-cep-ter, e-xer-cer, col-lec-tion, in-cor-po-ra-tion
3. Consonants however followed by *l* or *r* are not added to the first syllable but commence the second ; thus,
ta-bleau, fa-ble, li-vre, œu-vre

Punctuation.

The signs of punctuation are the same as in English, viz : (,) *virgule*, comma ; (.) *point*, period ; (;) *point-et-virgule*, semi-colon ; (:) *deux points*, colon ; (!) *point d'exclamation*, note of exclamation ; (?) *point d'interrogation*, note of interrogation.

Parts of Speech.

The French language contains ten parts of speech. Six are flexible : *le substantif* or *nom*, the noun ; *l'article*, the article ; *l'adjectif*, the adjective ; *le pronom*, the pronoun ; *le verbe*, the verb ; and *le participe*, the participle. Four are inflexible : *l'adverbe*, the adverb ; *la préposition*, the preposition ; *la conjonction*, the conjunction ; and *l'interjection*, the interjection.

Definition of the Parts of Speech.

The ARTICLE (*l'article*) is a word used before nouns to limit or define their application ; as,

the man, l'homme ; the house, la maison

a man, un homme ; a house, une maison

The NOUN (*le nom*) is the name of anything which exists, or which we can conceive to exist, whether material or immaterial ; as,

man, homme ; house, maison ; virtue, vertu

The ADJECTIVE (*l'adjectif*) is a word added to a noun to qualify or determine it ; there are two kinds of adjectives in French :—1. *the qualifying adjective* as in English ; as,

a good boy, un bon garçon ; the young girl, la jeune fille

2. *the determinative adjective*, in English ordinarily called pronoun ; as, *this boy, ce garçon ; which girl, quelle fille ; my son, mon fils*

A PRONOUN (*un pronom*) is a word used instead of a noun; as,
He (John) is rich, *il* (*Jean*) *est riche*; *this* is good, *ceci est bon*

The VERB (*le verbe*) is a word by which we affirm—1. What anybody or anything does; 2. What is done to him or to it; 3. In what state he or it exists; as,

the man *works*, *l'homme travaille*; the boy *was punished*,
le garçon fut puni; the child *sleeps*, *l'enfant dort*

The PARTICIPLE (*le participe*) is so called because it partakes of the nature of the verb from which it is derived, and assumes in part the nature of an adjective; as,

a son *protecting* his mother, *un fils protégeant sa mère*; a
burnt house, *une maison incendiée*; your letter is badly *written*,
votre lettre est mal écrite

An ADVERB (*un adverbe*) is a word which modifies a verb, an adverb, or an adjective; as,

he wrote *well*, *il écrivait bien*; he will be here *soon*, *il sera bientôt ici*; my sister is *as pretty*, *ma sœur est aussi jolie*

The PREPOSITION (*la préposition*) serves to show the relation of a noun or pronoun to some other word in the sentence; as,

the book is *on* the table, *le livre est sur la table*; he sat
behind me, *il était assis derrière moi*

A CONJUNCTION (*une conjonction*) is a word which serves to connect the different parts of an extended sentence; as,

John *and* Jacob went out yesterday, *Jean et Jacob sortirent hier*; I cannot come, *because* I am ill, *je ne puis pas venir, parce que je suis malade*

The INTERJECTION (*l'interjection*) is a word which expresses any sudden desire or violent emotion; as,

Hush! *paix! chut!* ah! ah! alas! *hélas!* bravo! *fort bien!*

Numbers.

There are two numbers in French the *singular* and the *plural*; the singular refers to one person or thing, the plural to more than one.

Genders.

There are but two genders in French, the *masculine* and the *feminine*; therefore things which are *neuter* in English are in French either masculine or feminine.

Rules to ascertain the gender of inanimate objects will be given later on; but we advise students never to learn a noun without placing either the definite or indefinite article before it, as this is by far the best plan for fixing the proper gender in the memory.

The ARTICLE and the NOUN.

The Definite Article *the* is translated:

le before a masculine singular noun beginning with a consonant; as,—*le frère*, the brother; *le livre*, the book.

la before a feminine singular noun beginning with a consonant; as,—*la sœur*, the sister; *la porte*, the door.

l' before masculine or feminine nouns in the singular, when they begin with a vowel or *h* mute; as,—
l'oncle, the uncle; *l'hôtel*, (m.*) the hotel; *l'église*, (f.*) the church;
l'hôtesse, the landlady.

les before masculine or feminine nouns in the plural; as,
les frères, the brothers; *les sœurs*, the sisters;
les hôtels (m.), the hotels; *les églises* (f.), the churches.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

1.—The plural of nouns is formed by adding *s* to the singular;

as,—*le livre*, the book, *les livres*, the books; *le chat*, the cat,
les chats, the cats; *la sœur*, the sister, *les sœurs*, the
sisters; *la maison*, the house, *les maisons*, the houses.

2.—Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, *z* do not change in the plural; as,
le bras, the arm, *les bras*, the arms; *la voix*, the voice, *les voix*,
the voices; *le nez*, the nose, *les nez*, the noses.

The Verbs being of the utmost importance we shall add a portion of them to each lesson, independently of the other rules.

~~~~~  
The auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

| SINGULAR.  |                                 | Indicative Present.          | SINGULAR. |
|------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| 1st Person | j'ai, (**) <i>I have</i>        | ai-je, <i>have I?</i> (†)    |           |
| 2nd        | „ tu as, <i>thou hast</i>       | as-tu, <i>hast thou?</i>     |           |
| 3rd        | „ { il a, (m.) <i>he has</i>    | a-t-il, <i>has he?</i>       |           |
|            | { elle a, (f.) <i>she has</i>   | a-t-elle, <i>has she?</i>    |           |
| PLURAL.    |                                 | PLURAL.                      |           |
| 1st Person | nous avons, <i>we have</i>      | avons-nous, <i>have we?</i>  |           |
| 2nd        | „ vous avez, <i>you have</i>    | avez-vous, <i>have you?</i>  |           |
| 3rd        | „ { ils ont, (m.) } <i>they</i> | ont-ils, } <i>have they?</i> |           |
|            | { elles ont, (f.) } <i>have</i> | ont-elles, }                 |           |

(\*) We indicate the gender of nouns either by placing *le* before or *m.* (masculine) after a masculine noun, *la* before or *f.* (feminine) after a feminine noun.

(\*\*) *je*, *ne*, *me*, *que*, *ce*, *se*, etc. before a vowel become *j'*, *n'*, *m'*, *qu'*, *c'*, *s'*, etc.

(†) In the interrogative form the pronoun is placed after the verb and a hyphen inserted; if the 3rd person singular ends in a vowel, for euphony's sake, a *t* placed between two hyphens is inserted (*-t*).

## The Vocabulary

is to be learned by heart as these words will not be given again

|                            |                               |                              |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| and, <i>et</i> (*)         | hand, <i>main</i> f.          | nose, <i>nez</i> m.          |
| arm, <i>bras</i> m. (**)   | herring, <i>hareng</i> m. (+) | price, prize, <i>prix</i> m. |
| book, <i>livre</i> m.      | hotel, <i>hôtel</i> m.        | sir, <i>monsieur</i> m. (*)  |
| brother, <i>frère</i> m.   | house, <i>maison</i> f.       | sister, <i>sœur</i> f.       |
| cat, <i>chat</i> m.        | landlady, <i>hôtesse</i> f.   | uncle, <i>oncle</i> m.       |
| church, <i>église</i> f.   | madam, <i>madame</i> f.       | voice, <i>voix</i> f.        |
| dog, <i>chien</i> m.       | mouse, <i>souris</i> f.       | who, whom, <i>qui</i>        |
| door, <i>porte</i> f. (**) | no, <i>non</i>                | yes, <i>oui</i>              |

### Exercise No. 1.

*Translate the Singular and Plural of the following nouns and articles.*

1. The brother, the brothers,—the dog, the dogs,—the nail (*clou* m.), the nails,—the sister, the sisters,—the cow (*vache* f.), the cows,—the hand, the hands,—the child (*enfant* m.), the children,—the hotel, the hotels,—the church, the churches,—the story (*histoire* f.), the stories,—the month (*mois* m.), the months,—the mouse, the mice,—the price, the prices,—the nut (*noix* f.), the nuts,—the nose, the noses,—the book, the books,—the landlady, the landladies,—the herring, the herrings,—the voice, the voices,—the cat, the cats,—the fan (*éventail* m.), the fans,—the arm, the arms,—the door, the doors,—the uncle, the uncles,—the coat (*habit* m.), the coats.

He has,—have we?—have I?—you have,—have they (f.)?—thou hast,—has she?—they have,—we have,—has he?—have you?—I have,—have they?—she has,—they (f.) have.

2. Les frères et les sœurs. Le chat et la souris. L'hôtesse a le chien. Ils ont entendu<sup>1</sup> la voix. Avez-vous lu<sup>2</sup> le livre? Nous avons les maisons. J'ai vu<sup>3</sup> l'église. A-t-il vu<sup>3</sup> l'hôtel? Qui a les harengs? Le bras et la main. L'oncle a donné<sup>4</sup> le prix. Elle a deux<sup>5</sup> hôtels. La maison a deux<sup>5</sup> portes.

The cats and the mice. Have we the books? He has two<sup>5</sup> uncles. The arms and the hands. Who has seen<sup>3</sup> the hotels? Have you the dogs? The sister has given<sup>4</sup> the prizes. Who has seen<sup>3</sup> the churches? Has she the herring? The landlady has two<sup>5</sup> houses. Who has heard<sup>1</sup> the voices? The brother has the hotel. Has he the dog? Yes, he has the dog. Have you seen<sup>3</sup> the cat, sir? No, madam.

(\*) Pronounce *et—é*; *monsieur—me-si-eu*

(\*\*) Students should always place the article before a noun they are learning, this being the best way to remember the proper gender: *le bras, la porte, etc.*

(†) The *h* when aspirated, i.e. to be pronounced, is indicated by an apostrophe (*'h*) and in this case *le* or *la* must be used and not *l'*.



## Questions on Grammar.

1. How is the definite article *the* rendered in French?
2. When is *le* used, when *la*, when *l'*, and when *les*?
3. How is *the* translated before 'h (aspirated)?
4. What is the gender of a noun preceded by *le*, what when preceded by *la*?
5. What is the first and general rule for the formation of the plural of nouns?
6. Which nouns do not change in the plural?
7. When is the *e* of *je* elided and an apostrophe placed instead?
8. What is the place of the pronoun subject in the interrogative form of verbs in French?
9. When is a *t* between two hyphens inserted after the verb?

## Conversation.

Good morning, }  
Good day, } sir.

Good evening, madam.

Thanks, (thank you).

Have you the book, madam?

No, sir, his (*sa*) sister has the book.

Has he seen (*vu*) his (*son*) uncle?

Yes, sir.

Has she the cat?

No, madam, she has the dog.

What (*que*) have they in (*dans*)  
their (*leurs*) hands?

They have four (*quatre*) herrings.

Who has bought (*acheté*) the hotel?

His (*son*) brother has bought the  
hotel.

Has the dog (translate: the dog  
has he) the mouse?

No, it is (*c'est*) the cat which (*qui*)  
has the mouse.

Have you heard (*entendu*) the  
voice?

Yes, I have heard the voice.

Has the church (translate: the  
church has she) two doors?

No, the church has three doors, and  
the house has two doors.

Has he paid (*payé*) the price  
asked (*demandé*) for (*pour*) the  
dog?

Yes, he has paid the price.

Bonjour, monsieur.

Bonsoir, madame.

Merci (je vous remercie).

Avez-vous le livre, madame?

Non, monsieur, sa sœur a le livre.

A-t-il vu son oncle?

Oui, monsieur.

A-t-elle le chat?

Non, madame, elle a le chien.

Qu'ont-ils dans leurs mains?

Ils ont quatre harengs.

Qui a acheté l'hôtel?

Son frère a acheté l'hôtel.

Le chien a-t-il la souris?

Non, c'est le chat qui a la souris.

Avez-vous entendu la voix?

Oui, j'ai entendu la voix.

L'église a-t-elle deux portes?

Non, l'église a trois portes, et la  
maison a deux portes.

A-t-il payé le prix demandé pour  
le chien?

Oui, il a payé le prix.

## Reading Exercise (\*) No. 1.

Tout commencement est(24†)difficile. Qu'avez-vous dans  
 All commencement is difficult What have you in  
 votre main? J'ai un journal français. Qu'est-ce? A  
 your hand I have a newspaper French What is that To  
 qui appartient(43†)cela? Sont-ils riches? Etes-vous pauvre?  
 whom belongs that Are they rich Are you poor  
 Il fait froid. Fait-il chaud? Qui est là? Bonjour.  
 It makes cold Makes it warm Who is there Good day  
 Bonsoir. Bonne nuit. Où étiez-vous hier(17)? J'étais à la  
 Goodevening Good night Where were you yesterday I was at the  
 campagne. Je n'ai pas d'argent. Où est-il? Notre chat  
 country I „have not of money Where is he Our cat  
 a pris une souris. Parlez-vous français? Oui, un peu.  
 has caught a mouse Speak you French Yes a little  
 Pouvez-vous me comprendre? Pas du tout. Que désirez-  
 Can you me understand Not at all What wish  
 vous? Veuillez me donner mon chapeau? Je vous  
 you Will me give my hat I you  
 remercie. Sortirez-vous cette après-midi? Non; je  
 thank Will go out you this afternoon No I  
 resterai chez moi. Le temps(16)est trop froid. Aujourd'hui  
 shall remain at me The weather is too cold To-day  
 il fait très chaud. Quelle heure est-il? Il est dix heures.  
 It makes very warm What hour is it It is ten hours  
 Pourquoi venez-vous si tard? J'ai manqué le train. Mon  
 Why come you so late I have missed the train My  
 frère était aujourd'hui au théâtre. Veuillez prendre un  
 brother was to-day at the theatre Will take a  
 siège. N'oubliez pas de venir ce soir. Demain soir  
 seat „ Forget not to come this evening To-morrow evening  
 nous irons au concert. Avez-vous déjà dîné? Non, nous  
 we shall go to the concert Have you already dined No we  
 ne dînons pas avant six heures. A demain.  
 „ dine not before six hours To to-morrow

(\*) In order to assist the student in practising these exercises nasal and liquid sounds are printed in italics, and the linking is indicated by a curved line.

(†) The figure in parenthesis indicates the group amongst which the word is included on pages 16 and 17.

## SECOND LESSON.

## Deuxième Leçon.

THE ARTICLE AND THE NOUN (*continued*).

The article is frequently preceded by prepositions as in English; but the articles *le* and *les*, can never be preceded by *de*, (of or from), or *à* (to or at), and the following contractions are used:

*du* instead of *de le* } before a masculine singular noun be-  
*au* „ „ *à le* } ginning with a consonant; as—

*du frère*, of the brother.

*au frère*, to the brother.

*du livre*, of the book.

*au livre*, to the book.

*des* instead of *de les* } before masculine and feminine  
*aux* „ „ *à les* } nouns in the plural; as,—

*des frères*, of the brothers.

*aux frères*, to the brothers.

*des sœurs*, of the sisters.

*aux sœurs*, to the sisters.

*des oncles*, of the uncles.

*aux oncles*, to the uncles.

*des hôteses*, of the landladies.

*aux hôteses*, to the landladies.

OBSERVATION: *la* and *l'* are never contracted; as—

*de la sœur*, of the sister.

*à la sœur*, to the sister.

*de l'oncle*, of the uncle.

*à l'oncle*, to the uncle.

The form of the English Possessive: *the father's hat*, *the girl's bonnets*, *Charles' book*, etc., must be altered when translating into French thus: *the hat of the father*, *le chapeau du père*; *the bonnets of the girl*, *les chapeaux de la fille*; *the book of Charles*, *le livre de Charles* etc.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS (*continued*).

3.—Nouns ending in *au* and *eu* take *x* in the plural instead of *s*; as,—*le chapeau*, the hat, *les chapeaux*, the hats.  
*le neveu*, the nephew, *les neveux*, the nephews.

4.—Nouns ending in *al* change this termination into *aux*;  
 as,— *le cheval*, the horse, *les chevaux*, the horses.  
*l'animal*, the animal, *les animaux*, the animals.

The auxiliary verb *être*, to be.*Indicative Present.*

*je suis*, I am

*tu es*, thou art

*il, elle est*, he, she is

*nous sommes*, we are

*vous êtes*, you are

*ils, elles sont*, they are

*suis-je*, am I?

*es-tu*, art thou?

*est-il, est-elle*, is he, is she?

*sommes-nous*, are we?

*êtes-vous*, are you?

*sont-ils (elles)*, are they?

Interrogative sentences, as: *Has the aunt read the book?* *Are the soldiers in the house?* etc., must be changed in form, when translating into French, thus: The aunt *has she* read the book, *la tante a-t-elle lu le livre?* the soldiers *are they* in the house, *les soldats sont-ils dans la maison?*



|                            |                              |                             |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| animal, <i>animal m.</i>   | hat (bonnet), <i>chapeau</i> | officer, <i>officier m.</i> |
| aunt, <i>tante f.</i>      | horse, <i>cheval m.</i> [m.] | on, <i>sur</i>              |
| bird, <i>oiseau m.</i>     | in, <i>dans</i>              | room, <i>chambre f.</i>     |
| chair, <i>chaise f.</i>    | knife, <i>couteau m.</i>     | soldier, <i>soldat m.</i>   |
| curtain, <i>rideau m.</i>  | nephew, <i>neveu m.</i>      | street, <i>rue f.</i>       |
| fire, <i>feu m.</i>        | newspaper, <i>journal m.</i> | table, <i>table f.</i>      |
| general, <i>général m.</i> | niece, <i>nièce f.</i>       | where, <i>où.</i>           |

### Exercise No. 2.

1. Of the soldier, to the soldier,—of the dog, to the dog,—of the arms, to the arms,—of the rooms, to the rooms,—of the hotels, to the hotels,—of the churches, to the churches,—of the table, at(\*) the table, of the hotel, at the hotel,—of the church, to the church,—the brother's book,—the aunt's cat,—the officer's dogs,—the landlady's chairs,—the sisters' house,—the curtain, the curtains,—of the knife, of the knives,—to the fire, to the fires,—the general, the generals,—of the newspaper, of the newspapers,—to the horse, to the horses,—the niece's bonnets,—to the animal, to the animals,—to the street, to the streets,—of the bird, to the birds.

He is,—are we?—am I?—you are,—are they (*f.*)?—thou art,—is she?—they are,—is he?—have you?—I am,—has he?—are you?—we have,—we are,—I have,—she is.

2. La sœur a-t-elle vu<sup>1</sup> le chien de la tante? Les soldats du général sont dans la rue. J'ai deux<sup>2</sup> neveux. C'est<sup>3</sup> le cheval de l'officier. Les journaux sont-ils dans la chambre? Nous sommes les nièces de l'hôtesse. Avez-vous parlé<sup>4</sup> au frère? C'est<sup>3</sup> le prix des chapeaux. Les livres sont sur la table. Le général a-t-il écrit<sup>5</sup> aux officiers? J'ai parlé<sup>4</sup> à la sœur du soldat. Où sont les rideaux? A-t-elle deux<sup>2</sup> chiens? Avez-vous écrit<sup>5</sup> à l'hôtesse de l'oncle? L'officier a-t-il vu<sup>1</sup> les chevaux? Avez-vous vu<sup>1</sup> le livre sur la table?

Has the aunt the uncle's knives? Are you the soldier's brother? Have you seen<sup>1</sup> the generals? We have spoken<sup>4</sup> to the landlady's nephew. Has the officer seen<sup>1</sup> the newspapers? Are the general's horses in the street? I have written<sup>5</sup> to the officer's niece. He has two<sup>2</sup> nephews. I have given<sup>6</sup> the birds to the soldier. The aunt's bonnet is on the chair. We have given<sup>6</sup> the curtains to the officer's sisters. Where are the aunt's cats? We have seen<sup>1</sup> the soldiers. I have written<sup>5</sup> to the uncle. Is she in the room? Has the general's nephew given<sup>6</sup> the knife to the officer?

(\*) *at* must be translated like *to*.

1 *vu*, seen 2 *deux*, two 3 *c'est*, that is 4 *parlé*, spoken 5 *écrit*, written 6 *donné*, given

## Questions on Grammar.

1. How are *of the* and *to the* translated before a masculine singular noun commencing with a consonant?
2. How are *of the* and *to the* translated before a feminine singular noun commencing with a consonant?
3. How are *of the* and *to the* translated before a singular noun, whether masculine or feminine, commencing with a vowel or *h* mute?
4. How are *of the* and *to the* translated before a noun in the plural?
5. Can the prepositions *de* or *à* precede the articles *le* or *les*? if not, what must be used instead?
6. What nouns form their plural by adding *x*?
7. What nouns form their plural by changing their termination into *aux*?
8. How do you translate into French, *the brother's book, the dog's nose, the uncle's voice, Charles' hat*?

## Conversation.

Where is the uncle's book?

The uncle's book is on the chair.

Who is in the father's room?

The aunt is in the father's room.

Have you seen the niece's bird?

Yes, sir, the niece's bird is on the table.

Has the landlady's nephew the knife?

Yes, madam, he has the knife.

Have you read (*lu*) the paper, madam?

Yes, sir, I have read the papers which (*qui*) are on the chair.

Is your brother (an) officer?

Yes, madam, he is [a] general.

Where have you seen (*vu*) the sister's bonnet?

We have seen her (*son*) bonnet in the brother's room.

Is the soldier's dog in the street?

No, madam, he is in the house.

Has thou seen the mouse in the room?

Yes, I have seen the cat and the mouse.

To whom (*qui*) have you given (*donné*) the curtains?

I have given the curtains to the woman.

Où est le livre de l'oncle?

Le livre de l'oncle est sur la chaise.

Qui est dans la chambre du père?

La tante est dans la chambre du père.

Avez-vous vu l'oiseau de la nièce?

Oui, monsieur, l'oiseau de la nièce est sur la table.

Le neveu de l'hôtesse a-t-il le couteau?

Oui, madame, il a le couteau.

Avez-vous lu le journal, madame?

Oui, monsieur, j'ai lu les journaux qui sont sur la chaise.

Votre frère est-il officier?

Oui, madame, il est général.

Où avez-vous vu le chapeau de la sœur?

Nous avons vu son chapeau dans la chambre du frère.

Le chien du soldat est-il dans la rue?

Non, madame, il est dans la maison.

As-tu vu la souris dans la chambre?

Oui, j'ai vu le chat et la souris.

À qui avez-vous donné les rideaux?

J'ai donné les rideaux à la femme.

## Reading Exercise No. 2.

Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or. Ouvrez la fenêtre.

All that which glitters ,, is not gold Open the window

Fermez la porte. Où demeurez-vous? Nous demeurons

Shut the door Where live you We live

dans cette jolie maison. Quand avez-vous acheté cet

in this pretty house When have you bought this

habit? Où est votre sœur? Elle est allée se promener

coat Where is your sister She is gone herself to walk

avec sa tante. Les jours augmentent<sup>(39)</sup> sensiblement. Le

with her aunt The days increase sensibly The

temps<sup>(16)</sup> était très beau avant-hier<sup>(17)</sup>. Il ne fait pas aussi

weather was very fine the day before yesterday It ,, makes not so

froid en Angleterre que dans le Nord de la France. J'ai

cold in England as in the North of the France I have

oublié d'acheter des gants. Comment s'appellent<sup>(39)</sup> les sept

forgotten to buy some gloves How themselves call the seven

jours de la semaine? Ils s'appellent: lundi, mardi,

days of the week They themselves call Monday Tuesday

mercredi, jeudi, vendredi, samedi et dimanche. Quels

Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday and Sunday What

sont les noms des mois de l'année? Janvier, février,

are the names of the months of the year January February

mars<sup>(19)</sup>, avril<sup>(36)</sup>, mai, juin, juillet, août<sup>(1)</sup>, septembre<sup>(15)</sup>,

March April May June July August September

octobre, novembre et décembre. Lisez-vous des livres

October November and December Read you any books

français? Oui, quelquefois. Lisez-vous à haute voix?

French Yes sometimes Read you at loud voice

Oui, toujours; car mon professeur m'a dit que c'était la

Yes always for my professor me has said that this was the

seule manière d'acquérir une prononciation correcte.

only manner of to acquire a pronunciation correct

Pouvez-vous me comprendre quand je parle français?

Can you me understand when I speak French

Oui, quand vous ne parlez pas trop vite. Pourriez-vous

Yes when you ,, speak not too quick Could you

suivre une conversation? Non, monsieur; mon oreille n'est

follow a conversation No Sir my ear ,, is

pas assez habituée à la prononciation de votre langue.

not enough accustomed to the pronunciation of your language

## THIRD LESSON.

## Troisième Leçon

THE ARTICLE (*continued*) AND THE NOUN (*concluded*).

The Indefinite Article *a* or *an* is translated:

*un* before masculine singular nouns; as,—

*un frère*, a brother; *un animal*, an animal.

*une* before feminine singular nouns; as,—

*une hôtesse*, a landlady; *une porte*, a door.

NOTE.—*de* before a vowel or *h* mute becomes *d'*; thus,

*d'un*, *d'une*, of a or of an

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS (*concluded*).

*Exceptions to the formation of the Plural of Nouns.*

EXCEPTIONS to Rule 1.—a). Seven nouns ending in *ou* add *x* in the plural; viz: *le bijou*, the jewel; *le caillou*, the pebble; *le chou*, the cabbage; *le genou*, the knee; *le hibou*, the owl; *le joujou*, the toy; *le pou*, the louse.—Plural: *les bijoux*, *les cailloux*; &c.

b). Seven nouns ending in *ail* form their plural by changing that termination into *aux*; viz: *le bail*, the lease; *le corail*, the coral; *l'émail* (*m.*), the enamel; *le soupirail*, the air hole; *le travail*, the work; *le vantail*, the leaf of a folding door; *le vitrail*, the stained glass-window.—Plural: *les baux*, *les coraux*, etc.

EXCEPTIONS to Rule 4.—Five nouns ending in *al* add *s* in the plural; viz: *le bal*, the ball; *le régal*, the feast; *le carnaval*, the carnival; *le chacal*, the jackal; *le nopal*, the cactus.—Plural: *les bals*, *les régals*, etc.

The following four nouns form their plural irregularly; viz:—

*l'aïeul* (*m.*), the ancestor; Plural: *les aïeux*

*le ciel*, the heaven; „ *les cieux*

*l'œil* (*m.*), the eye; „ *les yeux*

*le bétail*, the cattle; „ *les bestiaux*

However *ciels* is used when it means *skies*, and in a few compound nouns; *œils* is used in *œils de bœuf*, oval window, and *œils de chat*, cat's eyes (jewels); *aïeuls* is used in the meaning of *grandfathers*.

The Auxiliary Verbs *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be.

*Imperfect.*

j'avais, *I had*  
tu avais, *thou hadst*  
il, elle avait, *he, she had*  
nous avions, *we had*  
vous aviez, *you had*  
ils, elles avaient, (\*) *they had*

j'étais, *I was*  
tu étais, *thou wast*  
il, elle était, *he, she was*  
nous étions, *we were*  
vous étiez, *you were*  
ils, elles étaient, (\*) *they were*

OBSERVATION: Whenever negations, as: *pas*, not, *rien*, nothing, *jamais*, never, etc. are used with a verb, the particle *ne* is also required. *Ne* can only be used with verbs, and must always precede the verb, as  
*je n'ai pas*, I have not. *ne suis-je pas*, am I not?  
*n'avais-je pas*, had I not? *je n'étais pas*, I was not.

(\*) *ent* of all verbs in the 3rd person plural is mute. (vide Exception 39.)



|                               |                            |                                |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| The ball, <i>la balle</i>     | the eye, <i>l'œil m</i> ;  | the mother, <i>la mère [m.</i> |
| plur: <i>les balles</i>       | plur: <i>les yeux</i>      | „ parents, <i>les parents</i>  |
| „ ball (festival), <i>le</i>  | „ father, <i>le père</i>   | „ pen, <i>la plume</i>         |
| <i>bal</i> ; plur: <i>les</i> | „ garden, <i>le jardin</i> | „ pencil, <i>le crayon</i>     |
| <i>bals</i>                   | „ knee, <i>le genou</i> ;  | „ son, <i>le fils</i>          |
| „ boy, <i>le garçon</i>       | plur. <i>les genoux</i>    | „ watch, <i>la montre</i>      |
| „ child, <i>l'enfant m.</i>   | „ letter, <i>la lettre</i> | „ woman, <i>la femme</i>       |
| „ daughter or girl,           | „ man, <i>l'homme m.</i>   | for, <i>pour</i>               |
| <i>la fille</i>               |                            | or, <i>ou</i>                  |

### Exercise No. 3.

1. A father,—a mother,—a pencil,—a pen,—of a son,—of a daughter,—to a man,—to a woman,—the knee, the knees,—at the ball, at the balls,—of the eye, of the eyes,—the parents' letter,—a child's ball,—the chairs of a room,—the mice or the birds,—the son's aunt,—to the garden,—an animal's knees,—to the curtains,—the noses and the eyes,—the general's nephews,—a herring and the cat,—to the hand,—an officer's horses,—at (to) an hotel,—to the voices,—the door of a church,—a boy's watch,—the uncle's hats,—of the fires,—to a girl,—from a watch,—to a soldier,—at (to) a table,—from (of) the men.

You had,—hadst thou?—had he?—they (*f.*) had,—had we?—I had,—had they?—she had,—was she?—they were,—thou wast,—were you?—was I?—we were,—were they (*f.*)?—he was,—he is not,—have I not?—are we not?—you have not,—were they not?—he has not,—you had not,—you are not,—I had not,—has she not?—they have not,—are they (*f.*) not?

2. Avez-vous une plume et un crayon? La fille de la femme n'a pas la lettre. Qui avait les journaux? Où étaient les fils du général? N'avez-vous pas donné<sup>1</sup> les livres au père? Les enfants n'étaient pas dans un jardin. L'officier est le neveu d'un général. Nous n'avions pas les balles. Le livre est-il sur la table ou sur la chaise? La montre était pour l'oncle. Le fils de l'homme n'avait-il pas un couteau? J'avais écrit<sup>2</sup> une lettre à la mère.

For whom was the letter? Had the uncle a watch? Who has given<sup>1</sup> the balls to the children? Where was the father? He was not in the landlady's house. Has the boy a pencil? I have not written<sup>2</sup> to the man. The eyes of a horse are large (*grands*). Has the mother given<sup>1</sup> the hats to a woman? Was the aunt in the garden or in the house? The parents have not the curtains. Were the newspapers not on a table? The nieces and (the\*) nephews were in a garden. Were you at a ball?

(\*) In French before every noun the article must be employed, even if in English the article be not repeated.

1 donné, given 2 écrit, written.

## Questions on Grammar.

1. Is the indefinite article *un*, *une* the translation for *a* or *an* or for both?
  2. When is *un* and when is *une* used?
  3. How is *of a* or *of an* translated?
  4. What is the general (first) rule in French for the formation of the plural of nouns?
  5. What is the second rule
  6. What is the third rule
  7. What is the fourth rule
- } for the formation of the plural of nouns?
8. How many nouns ending in *ou* and *ail* are exceptions to rule 1, and how do they form their plural?
  9. Are there any nouns ending in *al* (rule 4) which do not change into *aux* in the plural?
  10. Are there any other exceptions?
  11. Are verbs used negatively accompanied by one negation only as in English?
  12. What participle can never be used without a verb—that it must always precede?
  13. Is *ent* in the 3rd person plural of a verb ever pronounced?

## Conversation.

Have you a pen, sir?  
 No, madam, I have no (*pas de*) pen,  
 but (*mais*) I have a pencil.  
 Has the uncle a son and two (*deux*)  
 daughters?  
 No, sir, he has two sons and one  
 (*une*) daughter.  
 Have you given (*donné*) the letter  
 to the mother?  
 No, I have not given the letter to  
 the mother, but to the father.  
 Has the woman a watch?  
 Yes, she has a watch and a knife.

Have they seen (*vu*) the child's  
 ball?  
 Yes, madam, they have found  
 (*trouvé*) two balls.  
 Has the boy large (*de grands*)  
 eyes?  
 Yes sir, the boy and the girl have  
 large eyes.  
 What (*que*) have you seen in the  
 street?  
 We have seen a horse which  
 (*qui*) had both (*les deux*) knees  
 broken (*cassés*).

Avez-vous une plume, monsieur?  
 Non, madame, je n'ai pas de  
 plume, mais j'ai un crayon.  
 L'oncle a-t-il un fils et deux filles?  
 Non, monsieur, il a deux fils et  
 une fille.  
 Avez-vous donné la lettre à la  
 mère?  
 Non, je n'ai pas donné la lettre à  
 la mère, mais au père.  
 La femme a-t-elle une montre?  
 Oui, elle a une montre et un cou-  
 teau.  
 Ont-ils vu la balle de l'enfant?  
 Oui, madame, ils ont trouvé deux  
 balles.  
 Le garçon a-t-il de grands yeux?  
 Oui, monsieur, le garçon et la fille  
 ont de grands yeux.  
 Qu'avez-vous vu dans la rue?  
 Nous avons vu un cheval qui avait  
 les deux genoux cassés.



## Reading Exercise No. 3.

Monsieur Robert est-il chez lui? *Non, monsieur,*  
 Mr. Robert is he at home No sir  
 Il est sorti. Pourriez-vous me dire quand il rentrera?  
 He is gone out Could you me say when he will return  
*Non, monsieur; mais je ne crois pas qu'il reste longtemps*  
 No sir but I „ believe not that he may remain long time  
 absent. A quelle heure le train part-il? Il part à  
 absent At what o'clock the train starts it It starts at  
 neuf heures quarante-cinq. N'y a-t-il pas un autre train  
 nine o'clock forty five „ There has it not an other train  
 à dix heures et demie? Je ne pourrais vous donner ce  
 at ten hours and half I not could you give this  
 renseignement. Combien d'argent avez-vous dans votre  
 information How much of money have you in your  
 porte-monnaie? J'ai deux cents francs<sup>(3)</sup> en or; douze  
 purse I have two hundred francs in gold twelve  
 francs cinquante centimes en argent et quinze centimes en  
 francs fifty centimes in silver and fifteen centimes in  
 monnaie de cuivre. Quelle est la valeur du shelling en  
 coin of copper What is the value of the shilling in  
 argent français? Il vaut environ un franc vingt<sup>(11)</sup>-cinq  
 money French It is worth about one franc twenty five  
 centimes. Que désirez-vous acheter aujourd'hui? J'ai  
 centimes What desire you to buy to-day I have  
 besoin d'un gilet et d'un pardessus. Ne vous faut-il pas  
 need of a waistcoat and of an overcoat „ To you is it necessary not  
 un chapeau? *Non, monsieur; mais je voudrais acheter*  
 a hat No sir but I should wish to buy  
 une paire de bottines et une paire de souliers. Que  
 a pair of boots and a pair of shoes What  
 faut-il servir à monsieur? Donnez-moi, s'il vous plaît,  
 is it necessary to serve to Mr. Give me if it you please  
 un potage au tapioca, une côtelette de mouton, des  
 a soup at the tapioca a chop of mutton some  
 pommes de terre frites, et un demi-poulet rôti. Avez-vous  
 potatoes fried and a half chicken roasted Have you  
 fait un bon voyage? *Non, le temps<sup>(16)</sup> n'a pas été*  
 made a good journey No the weather has not been  
 favorable. Hier<sup>(17)</sup> soir j'ai perdu mon parapluie.  
 favorable Yesterday evening I have lost my umbrella

The ARTICLE (*concluded*).

The Partitive Article *du, de la, de l', des* must be used in French before every noun *taken in a partitive (\*) sense*; *some* or *any* is the translation of the partitive article, which is often omitted in English.

The *partitive article* is in reality the *definite article* with the preposition *de* (of) and is used in the same manner, viz.:

*du* before a masculine noun singular } commencing with a  
*de la* „ „ feminine „ „ } consonant  
*de l'* „ „ any noun singular commencing with a vowel or *h* mute  
*des* „ „ „ „ plural; as,—  
*du vin* (m.), some or any wine *de la viande* (f.), some or any meat  
*de l'argent* (m.), „ „ „ money *des plumes* (f.), „ „ „ pens  
 Give me some bread, meat, water, and apples. *Donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, de l'eau, et des pommes.*

*De* or *d'* takes the place of the partitive article *du, de la, de l', des* before a noun in the singular or plural :—

1. After a negation; as,  
*pas de viande*, no or not any meat *pas d'oiseaux*, no or not any birds
2. After adverbs of quantity (like *enough, much*, etc.); as—  
*assez d'huile*, enough oil *combien de soldats?* how many soldiers
3. After nouns expressing a quantity, weight, measure, etc. (like *a glass, a cup, a pound, a dozen, two yards*, etc.), corresponding here exactly with the the English *of*; as,—  
*un verre de vin*, a glass of wine *une livre de viande*, a pound of meat  
*une couple d'oiseaux*, a couple of birds
4. This is also generally the case if the noun in French is preceded by an adjective; as,  
*de bon vin*, (some or any) good wine  
*de jolis oiseaux*, (some or any) pretty birds

The Auxiliary Verbs *avoir*, to have, *être*, to be.

## Future.

*j'aurai, I shall have*  
*tu auras, thou wilt have*  
*il, elle aura, he, she will have*  
*nous aurons, we shall have*  
*vous aurez, you will have*  
*ils, elles auront, they will have*

*je serai, I shall be*  
*tu seras, thou wilt be*  
*il, elle sera, he, she will be*  
*nous serons, we shall be*  
*vous serez, you will be*  
*ils, elles seront, they will be*

(\*) The word *partitive* implies the idea of an indefinite *part* of anything; Ex. *Give me some bread*; here *some bread* means a part or a portion of bread. *Have you any pens?* here *any pens* means an indefinite number of pens. Buy some tea, coffee, sugar and apples, i.e. *some coffee, some sugar, some apples*, means: Buy a quantity (not distinctly mentioned) of tea, of coffee, of sugar, and an indefinite number of apples.

|                               |                                         |                           |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| the apple, <i>la pomme</i>    | how much (how many),<br><i>combien?</i> | the pear, <i>la poire</i> |
| „ beer, <i>la bière</i>       | the ink, <i>l'encre f.</i>              | „ pound, <i>la livre</i>  |
| „ bottle, <i>la bouteille</i> | „ meat, <i>la viande</i>                | „ salt, <i>le sel</i>     |
| „ bread, <i>le pain</i>       | „ money, <i>l'argent m.</i>             | „ sugar, <i>le sucre</i>  |
| „ coffee, <i>le café</i>      | „ oil, <i>l'huile f.</i>                | „ tea, <i>le thé</i>      |
| „ cup, <i>la tasse</i>        | „ paper, <i>le papier</i>               | „ water, <i>l'eau f.</i>  |
| „ enough, <i>assez</i>        |                                         | „ wine, <i>le vin</i>     |
| „ glass, <i>le verre</i>      |                                         |                           |

### Exercise No. 4.

1. Some (any) bread,—some (any) paper,—some (any) beer,—some (any) meat,—some (any) money,—some (any) ink,—some (any) books,—some (any) apples,—some coffee, meat, oil, and pears,—paper, ink, and pens,—cups, bottles, and glasses,—beer, coffee, and meat,—not any bread, no\* beer,—not any money,—no sons,—(some or any) good (*bonne*) ink,—(some or any) bad (*mauvais*) tea,—enough wine,—how much sugar? —many (*beaucoup*) pears,—a glass of water,—a cup of coffee,—a dozen (*douzaine f.*) of chairs,—enough paper,—some water,—a bottle of beer,—some books,—a pound of salt,—some (any) sugar and bread,—some newspapers,—no tables,—some (any) oil,—no beer,—some children.

We shall have,—shall I have?—he will have,—will they (*f.*) have? —you will have,—wilt thou have?—will she be?—they will be,—thou wilt be,—will you be?—I shall be,—shall we be?—I shall not have,—I have not,—shall we not be?—we were not,—you have,—you will not have,—will you be?—we are not,—they will have,—were they (*f.*)?

2. Achetez<sup>1</sup> une livre de sucre et une bouteille de vin. Aurons-nous du café? Ils n'auront pas de thé. Avez-vous de l'encre et des plumes? La mère a assez de poires. Donnez-moi<sup>2</sup> un verre de bière. J'aurai de bonne (*good*) huile. Voilà<sup>3</sup> de l'eau et du vin. Combien d'argent a l'officier? Qui a du sel? Combien de chaises avez-vous dans la chambre? J'ai de la viande et du pain. Nous avons vu<sup>4</sup> des oiseaux dans le jardin. Avez-vous de la bière, du vin, ou du café?

We shall have some coffee. Officers and soldiers are in the house. Have they any money? Has he any apples and pears, bread and salt? Give me<sup>2</sup> a cup of coffee and a glass of water. I have not enough sugar. He has not any bread. How many cups of tea have you? There are<sup>3</sup> paper and ink. Has the general any bad (*mauvais*) horses? The father will be in the garden. Buy<sup>1</sup> a bottle of oil and a pound of meat. Have you not any ink? Has she some pencils? Have you seen<sup>4</sup> any animals? I have not<sup>\*</sup> any beer. There is<sup>3</sup> a glass of wine.

(\*) No as well as not must be translated *pas*.

1 achetez, buy 2 donnez-moi, give me 3 voilà, there is, there are 4 vu seen

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What is the partitive article in French ?
2. Is the partitive article similar to the definite article ?
3. What words in English are the translation of *du, de la*, etc.
4. Are these words always expressed in English ?
5. When must the partitive article be used ?
6. What is the meaning of partitive ?
7. How is the partitive article rendered after a negation or an adverb of quantity, or before an adjective ?
8. When is *de* used instead of the partitive article ?

## Conversation.

What (*que*) have you in your (the) hand ?

I have a pear and some bread in my (the) hand.

How much tea did you buy (have you bought (*acheté*) ?

We did not buy any tea, but (*mais*) we have bought a bottle of wine, two (*deux*) pounds of meat, some coffee, some ink and some paper.

Do you prefer (*préférez-vous*) a cup of coffee to a glass of wine ?

Thank you, madam ; we prefer (*nous préférons*) coffee.

Have you seen (*vu*) the uncle's knife ?

Yes, madam, I have seen the uncle's knife on the table

Who has given (*donné*) some oil to the little (*petit*) boy ?

I have not given any oil to the boy.

What have you done (*fait*) with (*avec*) the money ?

We have bought some apples, some sugar, and some salt.

Has the officer's son some pens ?

No, sir, he has no pens, but some pencils.

To whom have you given a watch ?  
I have given a watch to the woman's niece.

For whom have you bought a garden ?

I have not bought any garden, but we have bought a house.

Qu'avez-vous dans la main ?

J'ai une poire et du pain dans la main.

Combien de thé avez-vous acheté ?

Nous n'avons pas acheté de thé, mais nous avons acheté une bouteille de vin, deux livres de viande, du café, de l'encre et du papier.

Préférez-vous une tasse de café à un verre de vin ?

Merci, madame ; nous préférons du café.

Avez-vous vu le couteau de l'oncle ?

Oui, madame, j'ai vu le couteau de l'oncle sur la table.

Qui a donné de l'huile au petit garçon ?

Je n'ai pas donné d'huile au petit garçon.

Qu'avez-vous fait avec l'argent ?

Nous avons acheté des pommes, du sucre et du sel.

Le fils de l'officier a-t-il des plumes ?

Non, monsieur, il n'a pas de plumes, mais des crayons.

A qui avez-vous donné une montre ?  
J'ai donné une montre à la nièce de la femme,

Pour qui avez-vous acheté un jardin ?

Nous n'avons pas acheté de jardin mais nous avons acheté une maison.



## Reading Exercise No. 4.

*Translate this and the following anecdotes. Words which the student has already learnt are omitted and indicated by a . and those which are the same or nearly the same in English as in French are indicated by a —*

*Esope et le piéton.*

*Æsop . . . foot-passenger*

Esope, le célèbre fabuliste, était très pauvre. Il faisait

*Æsop . celebrated fabulist . very poor . made*

souvent à pied des excursions d'une ville à l'autre. Il  
*often on foot . — . town . another .*

rencontra un jour un piéton : celui-ci l'arrêta et lui dit :  
*met . day . foot passenger this him stopped . to him said*

"Voudriez-vous me dire quelle distance me sépare de la  
*Would . — tell what . — . separates . .*

ville qui est sur la colline." Esope prit un air stupide et  
*town which . . . hill Æsop took . — stupid .*

répondit : "Vous n'avez qu'à marcher, et vous y arriverez."  
*answered . . , . but to walk . . there will arrive*

L'étranger sourit et dit : "Je sais parfaitement cela ; mais  
*. stranger smiled . said . know perfectly that but*

je désirerais savoir combien de temps il me faudra pour  
*. should wish to know . . time . — will be necessary for*

faire le chemin." Esope parut s'offenser et répéta les  
*make . way Æsop appeared himself to offend . repeated .*

mêmes paroles. "Cet homme n'est pas tout à fait lucide :  
*same words This man . . . quite lucid*

il ne me dira rien," pensa le piéton ; et il continua son  
*. . , — will tell nothing thought . foot-passenger . . continued his*

chemin. Quelques minutes plus tard il entendit qu'on  
*way . Some . — later . heard that one*

l'appelait : il se retourna et vit Esope que le suivait.  
*him called . himself turned round . saw Æsop . him followed*

"Que me voulez-vous," lui demanda-t-il ? "Je veux vous  
*What from me wish . to him demanded . . wish .*

dire, dit Esope, que vous serez à la ville dans une heure et  
*to say said Æsop that . will be . . town . . hour .*

demie." "Et pourquoi ne m'avez-vous pas répondu immé-  
*a half . why . , me . . answered imme-*

diatement." "C'est parce qu'il était nécessaire que je visse  
*diately. This . because it . necessary that shou-*

comment vous marchiez."  
*how . walked*

## FIFTH LESSON.

## Cinquième Leçon.

Words which are the same or nearly the same in English and French.

Words which are the same, are nearly all nouns or adjectives, ending as follows:

|        |                             |        |                            |
|--------|-----------------------------|--------|----------------------------|
| in al  | Ex.: <i>central, filial</i> | in age | Ex.: <i>âge, village</i>   |
| in ble | „ <i>table, visible</i>     | in uge | „ <i>déluge, refuge</i>    |
| in ce  | „ <i>distance, vice</i>     | in ent | „ <i>prudent, diligent</i> |
| in ade | „ <i>sérénade, parade</i>   | in ion | „ <i>nation, station,</i>  |
| in ude | „ <i>habitude, solitude</i> |        | <i>commission</i>          |

REMARK.—Letters which are accented in French drop their accent in English.

Words which undergo a slight modification.

|                         |     | change that ter- |      |      |                      |
|-------------------------|-----|------------------|------|------|----------------------|
|                         |     | mination into    |      |      |                      |
| English words ending in | ary | ...              | aire | Ex.: | solitary —solitaire  |
|                         | ory | ...              | oire | „    | glory —gloire        |
|                         | cy  | ...              | ce   | „    | clemency —clémence   |
|                         | ty  | ...              | té   | „    | charity —charité     |
|                         | ous | ...              | eux  | „    | pious —pieux         |
|                         | our | ...              | eur  | „    | favour —faveur       |
|                         | or  | ...              | eur  | „    | doctor —docteur      |
|                         | ic  | ...              | ique | „    | comic —comique       |
|                         | ive | ...              | if   | „    | active —actif        |
|                         | ian | ...              | ien  | „    | historian —historien |

Many English verbs ending in *ise, ize* or *use*, end in French in *iser, user*.—Examples: realise, *réaliser*; exercise, *exercer*; abuse, *abuser*; amuse, *amuser*.

|                 |     | change this |      |          |           |
|-----------------|-----|-------------|------|----------|-----------|
|                 |     | ending into |      |          |           |
| Verbs ending in | ate | ...         | er   | moderate | —modérer  |
|                 | fy  | ...         | fier | modify   | —modifier |

NOTE.—There are few exceptions to the above rules; they will greatly assist the student in rapidly acquiring a large number of words.

Verbs *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be.

*Present Conditional,*

j'aurais, *I should have*  
 tu aurais, *thou wouldst have*  
 il, elle aurait, *he, she would have*  
 nous aurions, *we should have*  
 vous auriez, *you would have*  
 ils, elles auraient, *they would have*

je serais, *I should be*  
 tu serais, *thou wouldst be*  
 il, elle serait, *he, she would be*  
 nous serions, *we should be*  
 vous seriez, *you would be*  
 ils, elles seraient, *they would be*



|                                |                              |                            |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| apprentice, <i>apprenti m.</i> | great, <i>grand</i>          | small, <i>petit</i>        |
| ass, <i>âne m.</i>             | here, <i>ici</i>             | there, <i>là</i>           |
| boot, <i>botte f.</i>          | large, <i>grand</i>          | time, <i>temps (16) m.</i> |
| cousin, <i>cousin m.</i>       | master, <i>maître m.</i>     | to-morrow, <i>demain</i>   |
| cousin(f.), <i>cousine f.</i>  | morning, <i>matin m.</i>     | trade, <i>métier m.</i>    |
| day, <i>jour m.</i>            | pair, <i>paire f.</i>        | useful, <i>utile</i>       |
| foot, <i>piéd m.</i>           | shoe, <i>soulier m.</i> [m.] | very, <i>très</i>          |
| friend, <i>ami m.</i>          | shoemaker, <i>cordonnier</i> | work, <i>travail m.</i>    |

### Exercise No. 5.

1. General(")(\*)—respectable—conscience—escalade—aptitude—heritage(')—febrifuge(')—accident—admiration—military—history—decency(')—beauty—curious—ardour—horror—aquatic—adjective—comedian(')—to idealize(')—to refuse—to accelerate(")—to stupefy(')—moral—anniversary—honorable—captivity—musical—obligatory—similitude—adversary—city—pretentious(')—to analyse—evidence—(')—firmament—naval—original—capable—inactive—illusion—to moderate(')—lion—charitable—calamity—visage—motion—direction—vanity—instrument—to indemnize—colonnade—rage—imprudence—notary—civic—notable—adversity.

You would have—I should be—would he have?—they would be—thou wouldst be—I should have—she would not be—we should not have—we should be—should we have?—would you be?—we should have—thou wouldst have—she would be—he would have—would they (*f.*) have?—you would be—he would have—we should not be—wouldst thou have?—should I be—we should not be—she would have—they (*m.*) would have.

2. Les bottes et les souliers de votre<sup>1</sup> ami sont à la station. Nous aurions attendu<sup>2</sup> mon<sup>3</sup> cousin. Ceci<sup>4</sup> est obligatoire. Cette (*this*) capitulation serait honorable. Votre action n'est pas charitable. Vous ne seriez pas sur<sup>5</sup> le rivage. Seraient-ils dans la cité. Je ne serais pas capable de<sup>6</sup> refuser.

The instrument is very useful. The boots of the general are in the room. He has a large foot. This<sup>7</sup> would be a great (*grande*) imprudence (*f.*). It would have a great (*grande*) importance (*f.*) My<sup>8</sup> friend would be impatient. The shoemaker would not have finished<sup>9</sup> the boots. We should have a good master. You would be capable to<sup>10</sup> simplify the question. His<sup>11</sup> apprentice was very laborious. Your<sup>12</sup> cousin has a very good trade. You will have a pair of boots and his<sup>13</sup> cousin (*f.*) a pair of shoes. Would he have the time? He would not be there. We should be here to-morrow morning. His charity is immense. The ass is an animal which<sup>14</sup> is very useful.

1 *vous*, yours 2 *attendu*, waited for 3 *mon*, my 4 *ceci*, this 5 *sur*, on 6 *de*, to 7 *this*, ce 8 *my*, mon 9 *finished*, *fini* 10 *to*, *de* 11 *his*, *son* 12 *your*, *votre* 13 *his*, *sa* 14 *which*, *qui*

(\*) The apostrophes placed between brackets indicate that as many acute accents are required in the French word.

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What are the endings which are generally the same in French as in English?
2. What becomes of the accents which exist in the French words when such words also exist in the English language?
3. What are the endings which are nearly the same in French as in English?
4. How can French words be formed from English words ending in *ary* and *ory*?
5. How do English words in *ty* and *cy* end in French?
6. How can French words be formed from English words ending in *ous*, *our*, *or*.
7. How do English words ending in *ic*, *ive* and *ian* change those terminations?
8. How do most of the English verbs ending in *ise*, *ize* and *use* end in French?
9. How do verbs ending in *ate* and *fy* end in French?

## Conversation.

Has the shoemaker an apprentice?

Yes, he has two apprentices in his (*son*) workshop (*atelier*).

Where are the boots?

The boots are in my (*mon*) uncle's room.

Are the shoes too (*trop*) small?

No, they are rather (*plutôt*) too large.

Has your (*votre*) cousin a large foot?

No, his (*son*) foot is very small.

Will the boots be ready (*prêtes*) to-morrow morning?

Yes, they will be here.

What (*quel*) is your friend's trade (the trade of your friend)?

He is (a) shoemaker.

Have you two pairs of boots?

No, I have only (*seulement*) one pair of boots; but (*mais*) I have also (*aussi*) a pair of shoes.

Where is my friend's ass?

It is in the garden.

Is it (*ce*) a useful animal?

Yes; it (*il*) is very useful.

Le cordonnier a-t-il un apprenti?

Oui, il a deux apprentis dans son atelier.

Où sont les bottes?

Les bottes sont dans la chambre de mon oncle.

Les souliers sont-ils trop petits?

Non, ils sont plutôt trop grands.

Votre cousin a-t-il un grand pied?

Non, son pied est très petit.

Les bottes seront-elles prêtes demain matin?

Oui, elles seront ici.

Quel est le métier de votre ami?

Il est cordonnier.

Avez-vous deux paires de bottes?

Non, j'ai seulement (je n'ai qu') une paire de bottes; mais j'ai aussi une paire de souliers.

Où est l'âne de mon ami?

Il est dans le jardin.

Est-ce un animal utile?

Oui, il est très utile.

## Reading Exercise No. 5.

*Un* de nos amis avait besoin d'une paire de bottes.  
 . . . our . . . need . . .  
 Il alla chez le cordonnier et lui dit : Faites-moi, s'il vous  
 . went to . . . to him said make me if . you  
 plaît, une paire de bottes, mais je désire qu'elles soient de  
 please . . . but I wish . . . should be .  
 première qualité. Il faut aussi que je vous dise quelque  
 first — It is necessary also . . . may say some  
 chose. Je me suis cassé une jambe, dans ma jeunesse ; c'est  
 thing . myself broke . leg in my youth this .  
 pourquoi j'ai un pied plus gros que l'autre. Vous devez  
 why . . . larger than . other . must  
 donc faire une botte plus large que l'autre. Le cordonnier  
 then make . . . wider than . other .  
 promet de faire attention et prit mesure. Trois jours après  
 promised . to do — . took measure three . afterwards  
 l'apprenti du cordonnier apportait les bottes à mon ami ;  
 . . . brought . . . my friend  
 celui-ci les essaya immédiatement : il mit la plus grande  
 this them tried immediately . put . larger  
 botte au plus petit pied, et ce dernier y entra très facile-  
 . . . smaller . . . this last there entered very easi-  
 ment. Il voulut ensuite mettre la plus petite botte au  
 ly . wished afterwards to put . smaller . . .  
 plus grand pied : mais il ne put naturellement pas y  
 larger . but . „ could naturally . in it  
 réussir. Il se fâcha alors et dit à l'apprenti : Votre  
 succeed . got angry then . said . . .  
 maître ne comprend pas son métier. Je lui avais recom-  
 . „ understands . his . . . him . recom-  
 mandé de faire une botte plus large que l'autre et je trouve  
 mended . to make . . . larger than . other . . find  
 tout le contraire : il a fait l'une beaucoup plus étroite que  
 all . contrary . . made . . . much more narrow than  
 l'autre. Prenez ces bottes et remportez-les, afin qu'il  
 . other take these . . . take away them in order that .  
 se conforme à mes instructions.  
 himself may conform . my —

## The Adjective.

There are two kinds of adjectives: those which express some quality belonging to the noun or pronoun to which they refer and are therefore called *qualifying*; and those which determine or define more clearly than the article, and are called *determinative*.

Adjectives are variable words and take the gender and number of the noun which they qualify or determine.

### Qualifying Adjectives.

#### FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

RULE I.—Adjectives form their feminine by adding *e* to the masculine; as,—*grand*, large, *grande*; *petit*, small, *petite*; *joli*, pretty, *jolie*; *aisé*, easy, *aisée*

RULE II.—Adjectives ending in *e* mute remain the same in the feminine; as,

*modeste*, modest, *modeste*; *fidèle*, faithful, *fidèle*

RULE III.—Adjectives ending in *on*, *an*, *et*, *el*, *eil*, *ien*, double the final consonant and add an *e*; as,

*bon*, good, *bonne*; *paysan*, peasant, *paysanne*; *muet*, dumb  
*muette*; *éternel*, eternal, *éternelle*; *pareil*, alike, *pareille*; *chrétien*,  
christian, *chrétienne*

EXCEPTIONS.—*complet*, complete; *concret*, concrete; *discret*, discreet; *inquiet*, uneasy; *replet*, stout; *secret*, secret, form their feminine by putting a grave accent on the *e* before the *t*, and adding an *e* to the masculine; thus: *complète*, *discrète*, *inquiète*, &c.

RULE IV.—Adjectives ending in *x* change *x* into *se*; as,  
*heureux*, happy, *heureuse*; *jaloux*, jealous, *jalouse*

EXCEPTIONS.—*doux*, sweet, *douce*; *roux*, reddish, *rousse*; *faux*, false, *fausse*; *vieux*, old, *vieille*.

RULE V.—Adjectives ending in *f* change *f* into *ve*; as,  
*neuf*, new, *neuve*; *actif*, active, *active*

RULE VI.—Adjectives ending in *er* change *er* into *ère*; as,  
*fier*, proud, *fière*; *premier*, first, *première*; *singulier*, singular, *singulière*

### The Auxiliary Verbs *avoir*, to have and *être*, to be.

#### *Past Indefinite.*

(Compound tenses in French are formed with the tenses of an auxiliary verb and the past participle).

J'ai eu, *I have had*  
tu as eu, *thou hast had*  
il, elle a eu, *he, she has had*  
nous avons eu, *we have had*  
vous avez eu, *you have had*  
ils, elles ont eu, *they have had*

J'ai été, *I have been*  
tu as été, *thou hast been*  
il, elle a été, *he, she has been*  
nous avons été, *we have been*  
vous avez été, *you have been*  
ils, elles ont été, *they have been*



|                                    |                                 |                            |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| advice, <i>avis m</i>              | hard, <i>dur</i>                | no, <i>non</i>             |
| alone, <i>seul</i>                 | honest, <i>honnête</i>          | old, <i>vieux</i>          |
| anxious, <i>anxieux</i>            | impossible, <i>impossible</i>   | person, <i>personne f.</i> |
| bad, <i>mauvais</i>                | lame, <i>boiteux</i>            | positive, <i>positif</i>   |
| courageous, <i>courageux</i>       | last, <i>dernier</i>            | prudent, <i>prudent</i>    |
| embarrassment, <i>embarras</i>     | misfortune, <i>infortune f.</i> | small, <i>petit</i>        |
| good, <i>bon</i> [ <i>ras m.</i> ] | neighbour, <i>voisin m.</i>     | too, <i>trop</i>           |
| and writing, <i>écriture f.</i>    | news, <i>nouvelle f.</i>        | town, <i>ville f.</i>      |

### Exercise No. 6.

*Write the feminine of the following adjectives.*

1. Patient—savant—égal—obtus—renommé—ardu—hardi—agreste—mignon—coquet—solennel—vermeil—payen—secret—audacieux—doux—récréatif—dernier—rond—malade—sujet—obstiné—fameux—faux—opulent—inactif—vieux—content—dur—lourd—actuel—facile—net—vertueux—roux—réservé—comique—laborieux—serein—complet—droit—triste—naturel—boiteux—habile—lent—religieux—plein—juste—ancien—libéral—vicieux—discret—incliné—intelligent.

We have been—I have not had—they (*f.*) have been—have we had?—I have not been—he has not had—we have not had—thou hast had—he has had—thou hast been—have you not had?—you have not had—have they (*m.*) had?—has she been?—have they (*f.*) had?—you have been—have I not been?—have we had?—have they (*m.*) not been?—they (*m.*) have been—we have not been.

2. La maison est grande. La ville est petite. Ma<sup>1</sup> mère était seule. J'ai été prudente. Nous avons eu le courage. Sa<sup>2</sup> sœur est boiteuse. Cette<sup>3</sup> chambre ne serait pas trop grande. Elle a été généreuse(\*). Cette<sup>3</sup> ville est très vieille. La nouvelle est positive. Son<sup>4</sup> écriture est très mauvaise. Cette personne était très honnête. Mon<sup>5</sup> écriture n'était pas bonne. Il est impossible (de) refuser un avis à notre<sup>6</sup> voisin dans son<sup>4</sup> embarras et dans son infortune. La dernière nouvelle est bonne. Cette viande est dure. Cette personne est très discrète.

She has been happy. My<sup>7</sup> room is not very large. He had had patience. This<sup>8</sup> woman is old. Our<sup>9</sup> sister is good. His<sup>10</sup> misfortune is great. This<sup>8</sup> person is anxious to see<sup>11</sup> the town. My mother was also in her<sup>12</sup> large room. This handwriting is very bad. You have been prudent (*f.*) in your<sup>13</sup> advice. She was very courageous in her<sup>14</sup> embarrassments. The news is too positive. The old woman is lame. Is this<sup>8</sup> person honest and discreet?

(\*) Some adjectives which are not found in the vocabulary must be looked for on the opposite page.

1 *ma*, my 2 *sa*, his 3 *cette*, this 4 *son*, his 5 *mon*, my 6 *notre*, our 7 *my*, *ma*  
8 *this*, *cette* 9 *our*, *notre* 10 *his*, *son* 11 *to see*, *de voir* 12 *her*, *sa* 13 *your*,  
*vos* 14 *her*, *ses*



## Questions on Grammar.

1. How many kinds of adjectives are there in French ?
2. What is the difference between qualifying and determinative adjectives ?
3. How do adjectives agree with the nouns they qualify or determine ?
4. How do adjectives form their feminine in French ?
5. How do adjectives ending in *e* mute form their feminine ?
6. What are the endings of adjectives which double their final consonant in the feminine ?
7. Give the adjectives in *et* which form their feminine by changing that ending into *ète* ?
8. How do adjectives ending in *x* form the feminine ?
9. Give the exceptions to the above rule.
10. How do adjectives ending in *f* form the feminine ?
11. How do adjectives ending in *er* form the feminine ?

## Conversation.

|                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Who ( <i>qui</i> ) has written ( <i>écrit</i> ) this ( <i>cette</i> ) letter ?                                                                          | Qui a écrit cette lettre ?                                                  |
| My ( <i>mon</i> ) friend has written the letter.                                                                                                        | Mon ami a écrit la lettre.                                                  |
| To whom has this letter been ( <i>été</i> ) written ( <i>écrite</i> ) ?                                                                                 | A qui cette lettre a-t-elle été écrite ?                                    |
| It ( <i>elle</i> ) has been written to my father.                                                                                                       | Elle a été écrite à mon père.                                               |
| Is the handwriting of your ( <i>votre</i> ) friend very bad ?                                                                                           | L'écriture de votre ami est-elle très mauvaise ?                            |
| No, it is very good.                                                                                                                                    | Non, elle est très bonne.                                                   |
| Is it possible to write ( <i>d'écrire</i> ) a letter with ( <i>avec</i> ) this bad pen ?                                                                | Est-il possible d'écrire une lettre avec cette mauvaise plume ?             |
| No, it ( <i>c'</i> ) is impossible.                                                                                                                     | Non, c'est impossible.                                                      |
| Is it ( <i>il</i> ) possible that the old shoemaker should come ( <i>vienn</i> ) to-morrow ?                                                            | Est-il possible que le vieux cordonnier vienne demain ?                     |
| It ( <i>ce</i> ) would be possible if ( <i>s'</i> ) he were ( <i>était</i> ) not lame.                                                                  | Ce serait possible s'il n'était pas boiteux.                                |
| Have you seen ( <i>vu</i> ) this news in the last newspaper ?                                                                                           | Avez-vous vu cette nouvelle dans le dernier journal ?                       |
| Yes, I have seen the news in the newspaper which ( <i>que</i> ) the postman ( <i>facteur</i> ) brought ( <i>a apporté</i> ) this ( <i>ce</i> ) morning. | Oui, j'ai vu la nouvelle dans le journal que le facteur a apporté ce matin. |
| Is the news positive ?                                                                                                                                  | La nouvelle est-elle positive ?                                             |
| Yes, it ( <i>elle</i> ) is quite ( <i>tout à fait</i> ) true ( <i>vraie</i> ).                                                                          | Oui, elle est tout à fait vraie.                                            |

## Reading Exercise No. 6.

Un homme avait reçu une lettre et voulait y répondre  
 . . . received . . . wished to it to answer  
 Pour son malheur il ne pouvait pas écrire et il se trouva  
 . his misfortune . . . could . . . write . . . himself found  
 dans l'embarras. Il alla voir un de ses voisins et lui  
 . . . embarrassment . . . went too see . . . his . . . him  
 demanda conseil. "Allez chez notre vieux sacristain" lui  
 asked . . . go to . . . sexton to him  
 dit le voisin; "il écrit souvent des lettres pour d'autres  
 said . . . writes often . . . other  
 gens." L'homme suivit son avis, alla chez le sacristain  
 people . . . followed his advice went to . . . sexton  
 et lui expliqua son embarras. "Je suis fâché de ne pas  
 . him explained his embarrassment . . . sorry of . . .  
 pouvoir écrire votre lettre" répondit le sacristain; "je  
 to be able to write your . . . answered . . . sexton . . .  
 suis boiteux." L'homme fut étonné. "Vous êtes boiteux,"  
 . . . astonished . . .  
 dit-il, "et cela vous empêche d'écrire ma lettre! écrivez-  
 said . . . that you prevents . to write my . . . write  
 vous donc avec le pied?" "Non," répliqua le sacristain  
 . then with . . . no replied . . . sexton  
 "j'écris avec la main; mais mon écriture est si mauvaise  
 . write with . . . but my . . . so . . .  
 que je puis seul la lire. Les gens étaient obligés de m'en-  
 that . . . can . . . it read . . . people . . . obliged . . . me to  
 voyer chercher pour que je lusse les lettres que j'avais  
 send fetch for that I should read . . . which . . .  
 écrites. Maintenant, comme je suis paralysé, il m'est  
 written now as . . . paralyzed . to me . . .  
 impossible d'aller trouver ceux qui ont reçu mes lettres;  
 — to go to find those who . . . received my . . .  
 et comme la personne à qui vous voulez écrire habite une  
 . as . . . — . . . whom . . . wish to write inhabits . . .  
 autre ville, elle ne pourrait pas venir dans ma maison.  
 other . . . . . could . . . come . . . my . . .  
 Il est donc impossible que j'écrive votre lettre, comme  
 . . . then — . . . may write your . . . as  
 vous me le demandez."  
 . . . — it ask

Qualifying Adjectives (*continued*).FORMATION OF THE FEMININE (*continued*).

RULE VII.—Adjectives ending in *eur* and derived from present participles by changing *ant* into *eur* form their feminine by changing *r* into *se*; as,

*trompeur*, deceptive, *trompeuse*; *menteur*, liar, *menteuse*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Vengeur*, avenger; *enchanteur*, enchanter; *pêcheur*, sinner, and some adjectives used only as law terms as, *demandeur*, plaintiff &c., although derived from present participles, have for their feminines *vengeresse*, *enchanteresse*, *pêcheresse* and *demanderesse*.

RULE VIII.—Adjectives ending in *érieur* form their feminine by the simple addition of *e* to the masculine; as,

*supérieur*, superior, *supérieure*; *inférieur*, inferior, *inférieure*

REMARK.—*Majeur*, major; *mineur*, minor and *meilleur*, better follow the same rule.

RULE IX.—Adjectives ending in *teur* not derived from present participles form their feminines by changing *teur* into *trice*; as,

*admirateur*, admirer, *admiratrice*; *créateur*, creator, *créatrice*

RULE X.—Adjectives in *au* and *ou* form their feminines by changing *au* into *elle*, and *ou* into *olle*; as,

*beau*, beautiful, *belle*; *nouveau*, new, *nouvelle*; *mou*, soft, *molle*

REMARK.—*beau*, *nouveau*, *mou*, *fou* (mad) and *vieux* become *bel*, *ouvel*, *mol*, *fol* and *vieil* before a masculine noun beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

RULE XI.—The following adjectives double the final consonant and add an *e* to the masculine :

|               |       |                 |             |       |               |               |         |                 |
|---------------|-------|-----------------|-------------|-------|---------------|---------------|---------|-----------------|
| <i>nul</i>    | void  | <i>nulle</i>    | <i>gros</i> | large | <i>grosse</i> | <i>épais</i>  | thick   | <i>épaisse</i>  |
| <i>sot</i>    | silly | <i>sotte</i>    | <i>gras</i> | fat   | <i>grasse</i> | <i>las</i>    | tired   | <i>lasse</i>    |
| <i>gentil</i> | nice  | <i>gentille</i> | <i>bas</i>  | low   | <i>basse</i>  | <i>exprès</i> | express | <i>expresse</i> |

RULE XII.—The following adjectives are irregular :

|              |       |                |               |          |                  |                |             |                    |
|--------------|-------|----------------|---------------|----------|------------------|----------------|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>aigu*</i> | acute | <i>aiguë</i>   | <i>long</i>   | long     | <i>longue</i>    | <i>favori</i>  | favorite    | <i>favorite</i>    |
| <i>frais</i> | fresh | <i>fraîche</i> | <i>public</i> | public   | <i>publique</i>  | <i>devin</i>   | guesser     | <i>devineresse</i> |
| <i>sec</i>   | dry   | <i>sèche</i>   | <i>caduc</i>  | decrepit | <i>caduque</i>   | <i>malin</i>   | malicious   | <i>maligne</i>     |
| <i>blanc</i> | white | <i>blanche</i> | <i>turc</i>   | Turkish  | <i>turque</i>    | <i>benin</i>   | benign      | <i>benigne</i>     |
| <i>franc</i> | frank | <i>franche</i> | <i>grec</i>   | Greek    | <i>grecque</i>   | <i>coi</i>     | still       | <i>coite</i>       |
| <i>tiers</i> | third | <i>tierce</i>  | <i>hebreu</i> | Hebrew   | <i>hebraïque</i> | <i>traître</i> | treacherous | <i>traïtesse</i>   |

Present Indicative of the verb *donner*, to give.

(*First Conjugation, including all verbs ending in er.*)

|                                |                                   |                                          |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>je donn-e, (t) I give</i>   | <i>donné-je, do I give?</i>       | <i>je ne donne pas, I do not give</i>    |
| <i>tu donn-es, thou givest</i> | <i>donnes-tu, dost thou give</i>  | <i>tue donne pas, thou dost not —</i>    |
| <i>il donn-e, he gives</i>     | <i>donne-t-il, does he give</i>   | <i>il ne donne pas, he does not —</i>    |
| <i>nous donn-ons, we give</i>  | <i>donnons-nous, do we give?</i>  | <i>nous ne donnons pas, we do not —</i>  |
| <i>vous donn-ez, you give</i>  | <i>donnez-vous, do you give?</i>  | <i>vous ne donnez pas, you do not —</i>  |
| <i>ils donn-ent, they give</i> | <i>donnent-ils, do they give?</i> | <i>ils ne donnent pas, they do not —</i> |

(\*) All adjectives ending in *gu* take the diæresis on the *e* (*ë*) in the feminine.

(†) The endings have been separated from the root by a hyphen and must be placed after the root of any verb of the same conjugation; as, —*je parl-e*, I speak; *tu march-es*, thou walkest; *il chant-e*, he sings, &c.

|                              |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| answer, <i>réponse f.</i>    | lady, <i>dame f.</i>         | to-day, <i>aujourd'hui</i>     |
| clever, <i>habile</i>        | lesson, <i>leçon f.</i>      | to like, to love, <i>aimer</i> |
| cow, <i>vache f.</i>         | nothing, <i>rien</i>         | to sing, <i>chanter</i>        |
| doctor, <i>docteur m.</i>    | physician, <i>médecin m.</i> | to speak, <i>parler</i>        |
| dress, <i>robe f.</i>        | pretty, <i>joli</i>          | to walk, <i>marcher</i>        |
| exercise, <i>exercice m.</i> | quick, <i>vite</i>           | visit, <i>visite f.</i>        |
| gentleman, <i>monsieur</i>   | red, <i>rouge</i>            | well, <i>bien</i>              |
| health, <i>santé f.</i>      | song, <i>chanson f.</i>      | with, <i>avec</i>              |
| ill, <i>malade</i>           |                              |                                |

## Exercise No. 7.

*Write the feminine of the following adjectives.*

1. Rieur—intérieur—générateur—jumeau—fou—réclameur—ven-  
 geur—majeur—consolateur—beau—sot—blanc—aigu—malin—nul—  
 frais—caduc—contigu—enchanteur—gentil—joueur—exprès—sec—  
 bénin—gros—favori—mineur—mou—las—gras—blanc—pêcheur—  
 épais—franc—public—devin—meilleur—bas—ambigu—nouveau—long.

We give—do I give?—you do not give—do they (*f.*) give?—he  
 gives—thou givest—they (*f.*) do not give—it (*f.*) gives—does he give?  
 --I speak—we like—I give—do we give?—they (*m.*) do not give—do  
 you give?—I do not give—you give—she walks—they (*f.*) sing—she  
 does not give—do we speak?—they (*m.*) give—doest thou give?—do  
 they (*m.*) give?—we do not give—do they (*m.*) sing?—she gives—she  
 likes.

2. La dame a eu une visite. Le médecin parle bien. Vous mar-  
 chez vite. Mon<sup>1</sup> père donne une robe<sup>b(\*)</sup> blanche<sup>a</sup> à ma<sup>2</sup> petite cousine.  
 Ma voisine est la sœur<sup>b</sup> jumelle<sup>a</sup> de ce<sup>3</sup> monsieur. Donnez-vous une  
 meilleure pomme à votre<sup>4</sup> frère? Je ne donne pas la grosse poire au  
 petit garçon. Avez-vous une vache<sup>b</sup> grasse<sup>a</sup>? Nous chantons au-  
 jourd'hui. Donnent-ils leurs<sup>5</sup> exercices au professeur? Qu'<sup>6</sup>avez-vous  
 dans votre main?—Rien. Leur<sup>7</sup> vache est malade. Elle chante bien.

We sing to-day with your<sup>8</sup> sister. My<sup>9</sup> cousin walks very quickly.  
 My<sup>10</sup> dress is white and red. They (*m.*) give some large apples to the  
 little girl. She was a great friend of my<sup>10</sup> aunt. This<sup>11</sup> is my favorite<sup>b(\*)</sup>  
 song<sup>a</sup>. Her<sup>12</sup> answer was ambiguous. Do you give this<sup>13</sup> long lesson  
 to the little boy? This<sup>13</sup> girl is very clever. You speak well. The  
 lady is ill; she has received<sup>14</sup> the visit of the physician. My<sup>15</sup> mother  
 gives these<sup>16</sup> apples and these pears to the little boy and to the pretty  
 little girl.

(\*) *b..a* indicate that the word marked *a* must be placed before the word marked *b*.

1 *mon*, my 2 *ma*, my 3 *ce*, this 4 *votre*, your 5 *leurs*, their 6 *qu'*, what 7 *leur*,  
 their 8 *your*, *voire* 9 *my*, *ma* 10 *my*, *ma* 11 *this*, *c'* 12 *her*, *sa* 13 *this*.  
 14 *received*, *reçu* 15 *my*, *ma* 16 *these*, *ces*



## Questions on Grammar.

1. How do adjectives ending in *eur* derived from present participles form the feminine ?
2. Give the adjectives which change *eur* into *eresse* in the feminine.
3. Which are the adjectives ending in *eur* which form the feminine by adding *e* to the masculine ?
4. How do adjectives ending in *teur*, not derived from present participles, form the feminine ?
5. How do adjectives in *au* and *ou* form the feminine ?
6. Give the forms used instead of *beau*, *nouveau*, *mou*, *fou* and *vieux* before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or a mute *h*.
7. Give the feminine of *gentil*, *gros*, *gras*, *épais*,  *sot*, *nul*.
8. Give the feminine of *frais*, *sec*, *blanc*, *long*, *public*, *favori*, *malin*.
9. What is the sign which must be placed on the final *e* of the feminine form of adjectives ending in *gu* in the masculine ?

## Conversation.

Where (*où*) is the lady ?

The lady is in the room with the physician.

Is she ill ?

No (*non*); but (*mais*) she wishes (*désire*) to have his (*son*) advice on (*sur*) the health of her (*sa*) daughter.

Is the doctor clever ?

Yes ; a gentleman told me (*m'a dit*) that he was very clever.

Do you like the dress of this (*cette*) little girl ?

Yes, I like it (*l'*) (very) much (*beaucoup*).

Do you walk quickly ?

No, I do not walk very quickly.

Have you seen (*vu* my (*mon*) neighbour's cow ?

Yes, it is very pretty ; it is brown and white.

Have you received (*reçu*) an answer from your brother ?

Yes, sir ; he is in very good health.

Is he always (*toujours*) with your (*votre*) sister in the country (*à la campagne*) ?

No, he is alone now.

Où est la dame ?

La dame est dans la chambre avec le médecin.

Est-elle malade ?

Non, mais elle désire avoir son avis sur la santé de sa fille.

Le docteur est-il habile ?

Oui ; un monsieur m'a dit qu'il était très habile.

Aimez-vous la robe de cette petite fille ?

Oui ; je l'aime beaucoup.

Marchez-vous vite ?

Non, je ne marche pas très vite.

Avez-vous vu la vache de mon voisin ?

Oui, elle est très jolie ; elle est brune et blanche.

Avez-vous reçu une réponse de votre frère ?

Oui, monsieur ; il est en très bonne santé.

Est-il toujours avec votre sœur à la campagne ?

Non, il est seul maintenant.



## Reading Exercise No. 7.

Une dame avait *un* soin exagéré de sa santé. Elle  
 . . . a care exaggerated . her .  
 était dans la plus grande inquiétude, au sujet de la plus  
 . . . greatest uneasiness on the subject . . most  
 légère indisposition et envoyait immédiatement chercher  
 slight — . sent immediately to fetch  
 le docteur. Ce médecin était *un* homme très habile et  
 . — this . . . clever .  
 avait conséquemment une grande clientèle. Il lui était  
 . consequently . practice . to him .  
 donc très désagréable d'être dérangé inutilement de ses  
 then . disagreeable . to be disturbed uselessly from his  
 autres occupations. Il résolut de corriger cette dame de  
 other — . resolved to correct . . .  
 sa manie. Un jour qu'elle avait remarqué une tache rouge  
 her mania . . that . . remarked . spot .  
 sur sa main, elle le fit aussitôt appeler. Il vint, regarda  
 on her . . him made at once call . came looked at  
 la main et dit : "vous avez très bien fait de me faire venir  
 . . . said . . . well done of — to make come  
 aujourd'hui." La dame fut épouvantée en l'entendant  
 . . . frightened on him hearing  
 parler ainsi et lui demanda si elle était dangereusement  
 speak thus . him asked if . . dangerously  
 malade. "Pas le moins du monde," répondit le docteur.  
 . . . least . world answered . —  
 "Mais si vous aviez attendu jusqu'à demain, la tache  
 but if . . waited till to-morrow . spot  
 aurait certainement disparu sans mon traitement et j'aurais  
 . certainly disappeared without any treatment . .  
 perdu le prix de cette visite." La dame comprit probable-  
 lost . . . this visit . . understood probably  
 ment la leçon, car le médecin, après avoir raconté cette  
 . . . for . . after . related this  
 anecdote, ajoutait que la dame ne l'avait jamais fait  
 — added that . . , him . never made  
 appeler, depuis ce jour-là, sinon lorsqu'elle était réellement  
 call since that . there but when . . really  
 malade.

## EIGHTH LESSON.

## Huitième Leçon.

Qualifying Adjectives (*continued*).

## FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

RULE.—Adjectives form their plural according to the rules given for nouns. (Lessons 1, 2 & 3.)

EXCEPTION 1.—Adjectives ending in *eu* take *s* in the plural instead of taking an *x*; as,—*bleu*, blue, *bleus*; *feu*, defunct, *feus*

2.—The following adjectives ending in *al* take *s* in the plural instead of changing *al* into *aux*; they are very seldom used in the plural.

|              |              |                |                |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>fatal</i> | <i>fatal</i> | <i>glacial</i> | <i>glacial</i> | <i>natal</i> | <i>natal</i> |
| <i>final</i> | <i>final</i> | <i>jovial</i>  | <i>jovial</i>  | <i>naval</i> | <i>naval</i> |

and a few others very little used.

## Degrees of Comparison.

There are three degrees of comparison of adjectives: the *positive*, the *comparative* and *superlative*.

The *positive* is the adjective itself, without any comparison between the noun which it qualifies and any other noun; as,

*cet homme est pauvre*, this man is poor

The *comparative* is the degree which indicates that a comparison is made between the object qualified by the adjective and one or several other objects of the same kind. Comparatives are formed in French by placing the adverbs *plus*, more, *moins*, less, *aussi*, as, before the adjectives.

*cet homme est plus généreux que moi*, this man is more generous than I  
*cet homme est moins généreux que moi*, this man is less generous than I  
*cet homme est aussi généreux que moi*, this man is as generous as I

It may be seen from these examples that *than*, as well as *as*, at the beginning of the second term of the comparison is translated *que*.

The *superlative* is the degree which indicates that the object qualified by the adjective possesses the quality in a very high degree (*superlative absolute*) or in the highest degree (*superlative relative*). The *superlative absolute* is formed by placing *très*, *fort* or *bien*, very before the adjective; as,

*cet homme est très pauvre*, this man is very poor

The *superlative relative* is formed by placing the article *le*, *la*, *les* before the comparative; as,

*cet homme est le plus généreux*, this man is the most generous  
*les hommes les plus sages*, the wisest men

Imperfect of the verb *donner*, to give.

|                                                   |                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Je donn-ais, <i>I gave</i> or <i>I was giving</i> | donnais-je, <i>did I give</i> or <i>was I giving</i> |
| tu donn-ais, <i>thou gavest</i>                   | donnais-tu, <i>didst thou give</i>                   |
| il donn-ait, <i>he gave</i>                       | donnait-il, <i>did he give</i>                       |
| nous donn-ions, <i>we gave</i>                    | donnions-nous, <i>did we give</i>                    |
| vous donn-iez, <i>you gave</i>                    | donniez-vous, <i>did we give</i>                     |
| ils donn-aient, <i>they gave</i>                  | donnaient-ils, <i>did they give</i>                  |

beautiful, *beau*  
 blue, *bleu*  
 coat, *habit m.*  
 debt, *dette f.*  
 end, *bout m. fin f.*  
 family, *famille f.*  
 flower, *fleur f.*  
 glove, *gant m.*

London, *Londres m.*  
 month, *mois m.*  
 new, *nouveau*  
 painter, *peintre m.*  
 painting, *tableau m.*  
 perfect, *parfait*  
 poor, *pauvre*  
 ribbon, *ruban m.*

rich, *riche*  
 soon, *bientôt*  
 sound, *son m.*  
 sum, *somme f.*  
 tall, *grand*  
 to give, *donner*  
 wide, *large*  
 young, *jeune*

### Exercise No. 8.

1. The tall<sup>b</sup> men<sup>a</sup> —the tall<sup>b</sup> women<sup>a</sup> —the beautiful flowers —some blue<sup>b</sup> coats<sup>a</sup> —some blue<sup>b</sup> dresses<sup>a</sup> —the beautiful gardens—the nasal<sup>b</sup> sounds<sup>a</sup> —a larger street—the largest house—a wide<sup>b</sup> river<sup>a</sup> —the widest<sup>b</sup> rivers<sup>a</sup> —a more intelligent<sup>b</sup> gentleman<sup>a</sup>—some more intelligent<sup>b</sup> ladies<sup>a</sup> —a very rich<sup>b</sup> friend<sup>a</sup>—some very old hats—the bad debts—the poor<sup>b</sup> families<sup>a</sup> —some beautiful flowers—some richer<sup>b</sup> men<sup>a</sup>.

He gave—we did not give—did I give?—she did not give—he sang—did we give?—thou gavest—he did not give—you did not sing—they (*m.*) walked—they (*m.*) did not sing—we gave—didst thou give?—did you speak?—you did not give—did he give?—I gave—we walked—did you give?—they (*f.*) did not give—I spoke—you gave—did she speak?—they (*m.*) gave—thou didst not give—did they (*f.*) give?—I did not give.

2. Le peintre a envoyé<sup>1</sup> de très beaux tableaux à mon<sup>2</sup> ami. Ma<sup>3</sup> sœur aime les rubans bleus. Les nouveaux régiments ont des habits rouges. Mon<sup>2</sup> père a des chevaux moins beaux que les vôtres.<sup>4</sup> Les maisons de la nouvelle rue sont très belles. Les rues du nouveau Paris sont plus larges que les rues de Londres. Les fleurs de votre<sup>5</sup> jardin sont d'une parfaite beauté. Mes<sup>6</sup> frères donnaient (des) avis à leurs<sup>7</sup> amis. Les couteaux que<sup>8</sup> vous donniez à mes<sup>6</sup> sœurs étaient aussi bons que les miens.<sup>9</sup> Donnez-vous des<sup>10</sup> fleurs à mon<sup>2</sup> ami.

He will pay<sup>11</sup> his<sup>12</sup> debts at the end of the month. These<sup>13</sup> flowers will soon<sup>b</sup> be<sup>a</sup> perfect. These<sup>13</sup> paintings are less beautiful than those.<sup>14</sup> My<sup>15</sup> brother is as rich as I.<sup>16</sup> My<sup>15</sup> father was the tallest of the family. The sounds of my<sup>15</sup> instrument are more beautiful than those.<sup>14</sup> London is larger than Paris. These<sup>13</sup> gentlemen<sup>17</sup> are very rich. The songs which<sup>18</sup> he sang were very pretty. We did not give any blue<sup>b</sup> ribbons to the youngest girl. She will pay this<sup>19</sup> sum<sup>b</sup> soon<sup>a</sup>. They (*m.*) gave their<sup>20</sup> old coats to the poor. These<sup>13</sup> gloves are less pretty than those.<sup>14</sup> This<sup>21</sup> painter is very young.

1 envoyé, sent 2 mon, my 3 ma, my 4 les vôtres, yours 5 votre, your, 6 mes, my 7 leurs, their 8 que, which 9 les miens, mine 10 des, any 11 will pay, paiera 12 his, ses 13 these, ces 14 those, ceux-là 15 my, mon 16 I, moi 17 gentlemen, messieurs 18 which, qu' 19 this, cette 20 their, leurs, 21 this, ce.

## Questions on Grammar.

1. How do adjectives form the plural?
2. How do adjectives ending in *eu* form the plural?
3. Give some adjectives ending in *al* which take *s* when used in the plural.
4. How many degrees of comparison are there in adjectives?
5. Give an example of an adjective used in the positive?
6. What does the comparative of an adjective indicate?
7. How are comparatives formed in French?
8. What does the superlative indicate?
9. How is the superlative absolute of an adjective formed in French?
10. How is the superlative relative formed in French?

## Conversation.

|                                                                                  |                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Where does the painter live ( <i>demeure</i> )?                                  | Où demeure le peintre?                                  |
| The painter lives in the new street.                                             | Le peintre demeure dans la nouvelle rue.                |
| Has the painter finished ( <i>fini</i> ) your ( <i>votre</i> ) portrait?         | Le peintre a-t-il fini votre portrait?                  |
| Yes, it is ( <i>c'est</i> ) a very good painting.                                | Oui, c'est un très bon tableau.                         |
| In which ( <i>quelle</i> ) room is your portrait?                                | Dans quelle chambre est votre portrait?                 |
| It is ( <i>il est</i> ) in my father's room.                                     | Il est dans la chambre de mon père.                     |
| When ( <i>quand</i> ) will you be in ( <i>à</i> ) London?                        | Quand serez-vous à Londres?                             |
| I shall be <sup>b</sup> there <sup>a</sup> ( <i>y</i> ) at the end of the month. | J'y serai à la fin du mois.                             |
| Will you be in Paris <sup>b</sup> soon <sup>a</sup> ?                            | Serez-vous bientôt à Paris?                             |
| I shall be there in twelve ( <i>douze</i> ) days and your brother in a month.    | J'y serai dans douze jours et votre frère dans un mois. |
| Are his ( <i>ses</i> ) ribbons blue or red?                                      | Ses rubans sont-ils bleus ou rouges?                    |
| They are blue, white ( <i>blancs</i> ) and red.                                  | Ils sont bleus, blancs et rouges.                       |
| He will pay ( <i>paiera</i> ) a large sum of money to my father.                 | Il paiera une grosse somme d'argent à mon père.         |
| How much will he pay?                                                            | Combien paiera-t-il?                                    |
| Two thousand ( <i>deux mille</i> ) francs.                                       | Deux mille francs.                                      |
| Is he richer than you?                                                           | Est-il plus riche que vous?                             |
| No, I am much ( <i>beaucoup</i> ) richer than he ( <i>lui</i> ).                 | Non, je suis beaucoup plus riche que lui.               |



## Reading Exercise No. 8.

Un homme, très riche mais aussi avare que riche,  
 . . . . . but . . . miserly . . .  
 désirant avoir son portrait, s'adressa à un artiste de  
 wishing . his — himself addressed . . . — .  
 talent et lui promit de le payer généreusement si le  
 — . him promised of him to pay generously if .  
 portrait était d'une ressemblance satisfaisante. Le peintre  
 — . . . . resemblance satisfactory . painter  
 se mit à l'ouvrage et, au bout de quelques mois, il avait  
 himself put . . . . . some . . . . .  
 achevé un tableau qui ne laissait rien à désirer, ni pour  
 finished . . . which „ left nothing . desire neither .  
 le fini du travail, ni pour la ressemblance qui était parfaite.  
 . finishing . . . nor . . . resemblance which . perfect  
 Mais l'original essaya d'obtenir une diminution sur le prix  
 but . — tried of to obtain . — on . .  
 convenu, et voyant que l'artiste était résolu à ne pas céder,  
 agreed . seeing . . . artist . resolute . „ . to yield  
 il lui déclara qu'il pouvait garder son tableau: car il se  
 . him declared . . . could keep his . for . to himself  
 disait que, ne pouvant le vendre à personne, le peintre  
 said . not being able it to sell . nobody . .  
 serait bien obligé de le lui donner meilleur marché. Que  
 . well obliged to it him . cheaper what  
 fit le peintre? Il fit encadrer le portrait, y mit une  
 did . painter . made frame . — on it put .  
 inscription: "je suis ici parce que je ne paie pas mes  
 — . . . here because . „ pay . my  
 dettes," et le plaça au-dessus de la porte de sa maison.  
 . it placed above . . . . his .  
 Or, l'original était connu de tout le monde et bientôt il  
 now . — . known . all . world . soon .  
 était devenu la risée de la ville entière. Alors le Croesus  
 . become . derision . . . . . entire Then . —  
 ne put résister au ridicule et se hâta de payer la somme  
 not could resist . — . himself hastened to pay . .  
 qu'il avait refusée auparavant.  
 which . . . refused before



Qualifying Adjectives (*concluded*).DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*concluded*).

There are three adjectives in French which form their comparatives and superlatives irregularly, viz:

|                |               |                 |               |                    |              |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|--------------|
| <i>bon</i>     | good          | <i>meilleur</i> | better        | <i>le meilleur</i> | the best     |
| <i>mauvais</i> | bad           | <i>pire</i>     | worse         | <i>le pire</i>     | the worst    |
| <i>petit</i>   | little, small | <i>moindre</i>  | less, smaller | <i>le moindre</i>  | the smallest |

The corresponding adverbs are also irregular in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives:

|             |        |              |        |                 |           |
|-------------|--------|--------------|--------|-----------------|-----------|
| <i>bien</i> | well   | <i>mieux</i> | better | <i>le mieux</i> | the best  |
| <i>mal</i>  | badly  | <i>pis</i>   | worse  | <i>le pis</i>   | the worst |
| <i>peu</i>  | little | <i>moins</i> | less   | <i>le moins</i> | the least |

REMARK 1.—The regular comparatives and superlatives of *mauvais*, *petit* and *mal* are also used.

Ex.: *ce pain-ci est plus mauvais que l'autre*, this bread is worse than the other

*ce livre est le plus petit*, this book is the smallest

*il écrit plus mal que moi*, he writes worse than I

2. It must be noticed that *meilleur* and *mieux* are both translated *better*; *pire* and *pis*, *petit* and *peu*, *moindre* and *moins* also translate the same English words *worse*, *little* and *less*. In order to know when he has to use either of these words, the student must refer to the definitions of the parts of speech. *Meilleur*, *pire*, *petit* and *moindre* are adjectives and consequently must be used when *better*, *worse*, *little* and *less* qualify nouns.

Ex.: *ce pain est meilleur que le vôtre*, this bread is better than yours  
*ce livre-ci est pire que celui-là*, this book is worse than that  
*cet endroit est plus petit que celui-là*, this place is smaller than that  
*mon chapeau est petit*, my hat is small

*Mieux*, *pis*, *peu* and *moins* are adverbs and will be used when *better*, *worse*, *little* and *less* determine verbs, adjectives or adverbs.

Ex.: *il lit mieux que moi*, he reads better than I

*il chante plus mal que son frère*, he sings worse than his brother

*il parle peu*, he speaks little

*nous voyageons moins souvent que vous*, we travel less often than you

## PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

The place of adjectives in French is generally after the nouns. However some adjectives, principally those which are of one or two syllables, like *bon*, *grand*, *beau*, *joli*, *petit*, *mauvais* are placed before the noun. As a rule, the longer word is placed last.

Future of the Verb *donner*, to give (*continued*).

je donn-erai, *I shall give*  
 tu donn-eras, *thou wilt give*  
 il donn-era, *he will give*  
 nous donn-erons, *we shall give*  
 vous donn-erez, *you will give*  
 ils donn-eront, *they will give*

donnerai-je, *shall I give*  
 donneras-tu, *wilt thou give*  
 donnera-t-il, *will he give*  
 donnerons-nous, *shall we give*  
 donnerez-vous, *will you give*  
 donneront-ils, *will they give*

bed, *lit m.*  
 business, *affaire f.*  
 care, *souci m.*  
 clerk, *commis m.*  
 climate, *climat m.*  
 contented, *content*  
 country, *pays m.*  
 dish, *plat m.*

grape, *raisin m.*  
 gun, *fusil m.*  
 joy, *joie f.*  
 joyful, *joyeux*  
 kind, *espèce f.*  
 laziness, *paresse f.*  
 milk, *lait m.*  
 o'clock, *heure f.*

parcel, *paquet m.*  
 reason, *raison f.*  
 salary, *salaire m.*  
 thing, *chose f.*  
 to eat, *manger*  
 to find, *trouver*  
 vice, *vice m.*  
 workman, *ouvrier m.*

## Exercise No. 9.

1. A better dish—the best milk—a worse climate—the worst weather—a smaller book—the least care—he speaks better—you sing the best—she dances badly—she sings worse—he sings the best—I walk little—we speak less—they (*m.*) walk the least—the best workmen—a better gun—the best dish—a smaller bed—I eat very little.

We shall give—will you give?—he will not give—I shall walk—shall we sing?—he will love—thou wilt give—shall I give?—we shall not give—will he speak?—will he give?—you will not give—I shall give—will you sing?—he will walk—I shall not give—will you walk?—you will give—will they (*f.*) give?—wilt thou give?—they (*m.*) will not give—she will not sing—he will give—they (*m.*) will give—shall we give?—thou wilt not give—we shall not speak.

2. Nous donnerons la meilleure plume à votre<sup>1</sup> fils. Il donnera la plus mauvaise pomme à son<sup>2</sup> frère. Il sera content de<sup>3</sup> la moindre chose. Il avait un<sup>4</sup> des meilleurs chevaux. Il est de la pire espèce. Il mange peu. Vous donnerez moins à votre<sup>1</sup> voisin. Il chante le mieux de tous<sup>5</sup> ses<sup>6</sup> amis. Cet<sup>7</sup> oiseau mange moins que le nôtre<sup>8</sup>. La paresse est le pire de tous<sup>5</sup> les vices. Cette<sup>9</sup> maison est plus petite que la vôtre<sup>10</sup>. Je donnerai le meilleur de mes<sup>11</sup> fusils à mon<sup>12</sup> cousin. Nous marcherons moins demain qu'aujourd'hui. Cet<sup>7</sup> enfant est très petit.

She will sing better to-morrow. He was better than his<sup>13</sup> brother. She spoke little of that<sup>14</sup> business. She will dance less in that<sup>14</sup> town. Will you speak a little with me<sup>15</sup>? She will not speak to your<sup>16</sup> cousin. I shall give less to my<sup>17</sup> new clerk. The apples are better in your<sup>16</sup> country. He will give his<sup>13</sup> best grapes to our<sup>19</sup> uncle. His<sup>13</sup> reasons are worse than ever<sup>20</sup>. His<sup>13</sup> bed is better than mine<sup>21</sup>. This<sup>22</sup> workman had the least salary. We shall eat little: the least thing will be sufficient<sup>23</sup>. This<sup>24</sup> parcel is very small. He gives less than I<sup>25</sup>. Give me<sup>26</sup> some better wine.

1 *your*, your 2 *son*, his 3 *de*, with 4 *un*, one 5 *tous*, all 6 *ses*, his 7 *cet*, this 8 *le nôtre*, ours 9 *cette*, this 10 *le, la vôtre*, yours 11 *mes*, my 12 *mon*, my 13 *his*, son 14 *that*, *cette* 15 *me*, *moi* 16 *your*, *votre* 17 *my*, *mon* 18 *his*, *ses* 19 *our*, *notre* 20 *ever*, *jamais* 21 *mine*, *le mien* 22 *this*, *ce* 23 *will be* sufficient, *suffira* 24 *this* *ce* 25 *I*, *moi* 26 *give me*, *donnez-moi*.

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What are the three French adjectives which form their comparatives and superlatives irregularly?
2. Give the comparatives of those three adjectives?
3. What are the three adverbs which are irregular in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives?
4. Give the superlative of those three adverbs?
5. What are the adjectives and adverbs of which the regular forms of comparatives and superlatives can also be used?
6. What are the English words which are both adjectives and adverbs and are translated by two different words in French?
7. When must *meilleur*, *pire*, *petit* and *moindre* be used?
8. When must *mieux*, *pis*, *peu* and *moins* be used?
9. What is generally the place of adjectives in French?
10. What are the adjectives which are placed before the nouns?

## Conversation.

Where did you find this parcel?

found this parcel in the street.

Where was it?

It was before (*devant*) the door of my (*mon*) father's house.

Was the money upon (*sur*) the bed?

No; it was upon the table.

Is your (*votre*) father's clerk contented with (*de*) his (*son*) salary?

Yes; he is very contented.

What (*qu'*) have you eaten at dinner (*dîner*)?

I have eaten some meat, some bread, apples and grapes.

Why (*pourquoi*) is the workman so (*si*) joyful?

Because he has earned (*gagné*) a good salary.

At what (*quelle*) o'clock will you eat this evening?

At six (*six*) o'clock, if (*si*) my father has (*est*) arrived (*arrivé*).

Will your brother be here (*ici*)?

I hope (*espère*) so (*que oui*).

Où avez-vous trouvé ce paquet?

J'ai trouvé ce paquet dans la rue.

Où était-il?

Il était devant la porte de la maison de mon père.

L'argent était-il sur le lit?

Non; il était sur la table.

Le commis de votre père est-il content de son salaire?

Oui; il est très content.

Qu'avez-vous mangé à dîner?

J'ai mangé de la viande, du pain, des pommes et des raisins.

Pourquoi l'ouvrier est-il si joyeux?

Parcequ'il a gagné un bon salaire.

A quelle heure mangerez-vous ce soir?

A six heures, si mon père est arrivé.

Votre frère sera-t-il ici?

J'espère que oui.

## Reading Exercise No. 9.

Un ouvrier avait deux fils : l'un d'eux était un enfant  
 . . . . . two . . . the one . them . . . .  
 bon et diligent qui se levait tous les matins à six heures ;  
 . . . — who himself raised all . . . at six .  
 l'autre, qui était paresseux, restait dans son lit jusqu'à  
 . other who . lazy remained . his . until  
 dix heures. Un matin l'enfant laborieux trouva devant  
 ten . . . . . — found before  
 la porte de la maison un paquet contenant dix écus ; et  
 . . . . . containing ten crowns .  
 naturellement il en fut très joyeux et apporta l'argent à  
 naturally . of it . . . . . brought . . . .  
 son père, qui partagea sa joie. Celui-ci alla directement  
 his . who shared his . this one went, directly  
 à la chambre de ses enfants et y trouva le paresseux qui  
 . . . . his . there found . lazy who  
 était encore couché. Il l'éveilla, lui montra l'argent et  
 . still laid down . him awoke him showed . money .  
 lui dit : "Regarde ce que ton frère a trouvé dans la rue.  
 him said look that which thy . found . . . .  
 Mais pourquoi est-il si heureux ? c'est parce qu'il se lève  
 but why . . so happy this is because . himself raises  
 chaque matin à six heures. Tu ne trouveras jamais rien  
 every . . six . . , wilt find never nothing  
 de semblable, puisque, à dix heures, tu es encore dans  
 of similar since . ten . . . still .  
 ton lit." Le jeune garçon qui n'était pas encore parfaite-  
 thy . . . . who , . . yet perfectly  
 ment réveillé, se frotta les yeux et répondit : "Vous  
 awoken to himself rubbed . . . answered .  
 avez tout à fait raison, mon père, et je ne vous contredirai  
 . altogether right my . . . , you shall contradict  
 pas. Mais, ne croyez-vous pas que celui qui a perdu le  
 . but , believe . . he who . lost .  
 paquet qui contenait son argent aurait bien mieux fait de  
 . which contained his . . much . done to  
 rester comme moi dans son lit. Il serait plus riche de  
 remain like me . his . . . . .  
 dix écus."  
 ten crowns



## Determinative Adjectives.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Numeral adjectives are of two kinds : the Cardinal Numeral adjectives and the Ordinal.

## CARDINAL NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Cardinal Numeral adjectives merely indicate the quantity; as *vingt hommes*, twenty men; *trente-six livres*, thirty-six books.

They are called Cardinal because they are the principal, those from which others are derived.

|                                |                                               |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>Un</i> , one              | 21 <i>Vingt et un</i> , twenty-one            |
| 2 <i>Deux</i> , two            | 22 <i>Vingt deux</i> , twenty-two             |
| 3 <i>Trois</i> , three         | 23 <i>Vingt trois</i> , twenty-three, &c.     |
| 4 <i>Quatre</i> , four         | 30 <i>Trente</i> , thirty                     |
| 5 <i>Cinq</i> , five           | 31 <i>Trente et un</i> , &c., thirty-one, &c. |
| 6 <i>Six</i> , six             | 40 <i>Quarante</i> , forty                    |
| 7 <i>Sept</i> , seven          | 50 <i>Cinquante</i> , fifty                   |
| 8 <i>Huit</i> , eight          | 60 <i>Soixante</i> , sixty                    |
| 9 <i>Neuf</i> , nine           | 70 <i>Soixante-dix</i> , seventy              |
| 10 <i>Dix</i> , ten            | 71 <i>Soixante et onze</i> , seventy-one      |
| 11 <i>Onze</i> , eleven        | 72 <i>Soixante-douze</i> , seventy-two &c.    |
| 12 <i>Douze</i> , twelve       | 80 <i>Quatre-vingt</i> , eighty               |
| 13 <i>Treize</i> , thirteen    | 81 <i>Quatre-vingt-un</i> , eighty-one, &c.   |
| 14 <i>Quatorze</i> , fourteen  | 90 <i>Quatre-vingt-dix</i> , ninety           |
| 15 <i>Quinze</i> , fifteen     | 91 <i>Quatre-vingt-onze</i> , ninety-one      |
| 16 <i>Seize</i> , sixteen      | 92 <i>Quatre-vingt-douze</i> , ninety-two &c  |
| 17 <i>Dix-sept</i> , seventeen | 100 <i>Cent</i> , one hundred                 |
| 18 <i>Dix-huit</i> , eighteen  | 101 <i>Cent-un</i> , one hundred and one, &c  |
| 19 <i>Dix-neuf</i> , nineteen  | 1000 <i>Mille</i> , one thousand              |
| 20 <i>Vingt</i> , twenty       | 1,000,000 <i>Un million</i> , one million     |

REMARKS—1. Cardinal numbers are invariable except *quatre-vingt*, eighty, and *cent*, hundred, multiplied by another number, when not followed by another number.—Ex. : *quatre-vingts hommes*, eighty men ; *trois cents soldats*, three hundred soldiers.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Cent et vingt* are invariable at the end of dates.

Ex. : *l'an mil huit cent*, the year 1800.

2. *Mille*, only takes an *s* in the plural when it means *miles*.

Ex. : *il y a trois milles d'ici*, it is three miles from here

3. *Million* and *milliard* are considered as nouns, and always take an *s* in the plural.—Ex. : *deux millions d'hommes*, two millions of men ; *cinq milliards de francs*, five milliards of francs.

4. *Mil* is used instead of *mille* in dates.

Ex. : *l'an mil-huit cent-quatre-vingt-deux*, the year 1882.

Conjugation of *donner*, to give

Je donn-erais(\*), *I should give*, &c. | Je ne donnerais pas, *I should not give*

(\*) See for the other persons the Conditional of *avoir* and *être* as the endings for that tense are identical in all verbs.



beast, *bête f.*  
 dead, *mort*  
 death, *mort f.*  
 English, *anglais*  
 faithful, *fidèle*  
 farm, *ferme f.*  
 farmer, *fermier m.*  
 fatigue, *fatigue f.*

fleet, *flotte f.*  
 for, *pour*  
 franc, *franc m.*  
 how, *comment*  
 grief, *douleur f.*  
 loss, *perte f.*  
 mile, *mille m.*  
 orchard, *verger m.*

ox, *bœuf m.*  
 sailor, *matelot m.*  
 sheep, *mouton m.*  
 ship, *navire m.*  
 stable, *écurie f.*  
 to ask, *demander*  
 tree, *arbre m.*  
 year, *an m.*

## Exercise No. 10.

1. Thirty-two horses—forty-five cows—fifty-six apples—sixty-nine pears—seventy-three years—eighty-five soldiers—ninety-four sheep—one hundred and two oxen—two hundred clerks—three hundred and five miles—four hundred and twenty three ships—five hundred and thirty-one francs—six hundred and seventy-five pounds—seven hundred and eighty sailors—eight hundred and ninety houses—nine hundred and forty-one trees—one thousand eight hundred and eighty-one.

We should give—I should not give—would you give?—I should sing—would he give?—I should give—we should not give—would they (*m.*) give?—thou wouldst not give—he would give—they (*f.*) would not give—should I give?—you would not give—you would give—he would speak—wouldst thou give?—she would walk—I would ask—thou wouldst give—they (*m.*) would give—thou wouldst not give—should we give?—we should like.

2. Nous donnerions dix mille-cinq cents francs pour cette<sup>1</sup> maison. Le matelot a voyagé<sup>2</sup> pendant<sup>3</sup> deux cent-trente et un jours. Notre<sup>4</sup> fermier a trois cent-cinquante-six moutons, cent-vingt bœufs, trente vaches et trois taureaux. Mon<sup>5</sup> ami a hérité de<sup>6</sup> deux cent mille francs à la mort de son père. La flotte anglaise était composée<sup>7</sup> de trente-deux navires. Il y a<sup>8</sup> cinquante arbres dans mon<sup>9</sup> petit verger. Sa douleur était grande à<sup>9</sup> l'occasion de la perte de son<sup>10</sup> fidèle ami.

He would give two thousand francs to his<sup>11</sup> nephew. My<sup>12</sup> farmer has two hundred and sixty beasts on<sup>9</sup> his<sup>13</sup> farm. We should ask: he would give fifty francs to our<sup>14</sup> brother. My<sup>15</sup> fatigue was greater than his<sup>16</sup>. I had made<sup>17</sup> thirty miles the same<sup>18</sup> day. How would you give this<sup>19</sup> letter to his<sup>20</sup> sister? I should like to<sup>21</sup> speak to your<sup>22</sup> professor. There are<sup>24</sup> three hundred and fifty houses in the street. The regiment is composed<sup>25</sup> of two thousand five hundred men. I gave two hundred francs for that<sup>26</sup> painting.

<sup>1</sup> *cette*, this    <sup>2</sup> *voyagé*, travelled    <sup>3</sup> *pendant*, during    <sup>4</sup> *notre*, our    <sup>5</sup> *mon*, my  
<sup>6</sup> *hérité de*, inherited    <sup>7</sup> *composée*, composed    <sup>8</sup> *il y a*, there are    <sup>9</sup> *à on*  
<sup>10</sup> *son*, his    <sup>11</sup> *his*, son    <sup>12</sup> *my*, mon    <sup>13</sup> *his*, ses    <sup>14</sup> *our*, notre    <sup>15</sup> *my*, ma  
<sup>16</sup> *his*, la sienne    <sup>17</sup> *made*, fait    <sup>18</sup> *same*, même    <sup>19</sup> *this*, cette    <sup>20</sup> *his*, sa  
<sup>21</sup> *to*, à    <sup>22</sup> *your*, votre    <sup>23</sup> *his*, ses    <sup>24</sup> *there are*, il-y-a    <sup>25</sup> *composed*, composé  
<sup>26</sup> *that*, ce

## Questions on Grammar.

1. How many kinds of numeral adjectives are there in French?
2. What do cardinal numeral adjectives indicate?
3. Why are cardinal numeral adjectives so called?
4. Give the first ten numbers in French?
5. Give the numbers from *eleven* to *twenty*?
6. Translate *thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty, ninety one hundred, one thousand*.
7. Translate *twenty-one, seventy-one, eighty-one, ninety-one*.
8. Translate *twenty-two, seventy-three, eighty-four, ninety-five*.
9. Which are the two cardinal numbers which take *s* in the plural, and when does that alteration take place?
10. Do *vingt* and *cent* ever take *s* in dates?
11. When does *mille* take an *s* in the plural?
12. How are *million* and *milliard* spelt in the plural?
13. When is *mil* used instead of *mille*?

---

 Conversation.

How many (*combien de*) beasts has your (*votre*) farmer on his farm.

He has more than (*de*) four hundred sheep, about (*environ*) twenty-three oxen and forty cows.

Is the bull dead?

Yes, it died (*est mort*) this (*ce*) morning at six o'clock.

How much (*combien*) had your father paid (*payé*) for this (*ce*) animal?

He had paid five hundred and sixty-three francs.

Is it not (*n'est-ce pas*) a great loss for your father?

Yes; but it was getting o'd.

What (*quel*) was its (*son*) age?

It was (*il avait*) nine years and eight months (old).

Where is your (*votre*) faithful friend?

He is in my (*mon*) father's orchard under (*sous*) the large tree.

Good bye.

Combien de bêtes votre fermier a-t-il à sa ferme?

Il a plus de quatre cents moutons, environ vingt-trois bœufs et quarante vaches.

Le taureau est-il mort?

Oui, il est mort ce matin, à six heures

Combien votre père avait-il payé pour cet animal?

Il avait payé cinq cent-soixante-trois francs.

N'est-ce pas une grande perte pour votre père?

Si; mais il devenait vieux.

Quel était son âge?

Il avait neuf ans et huit mois.

Où est votre ami fidèle?

Il est dans le verger de mon père, sous le grand arbre.

Adieu.

## Reading Exercise No. 10.

*Un* malheur n'arrive jamais seul. *Un* jeune homme  
 . misfortune . happens never . . .  
 de province demeurait à Paris pour étudier à l'université  
 . — lived in — to study . . —  
 quand il reçut un jour la visite d'un serviteur de son  
 when . received . . . . . servant . his  
 père. "Comment se portent-ils à la maison?" demanda  
 . . themselves carry . . . . .  
 l'étudiant. "Quelle nouvelle m'apportez-vous?" "Aucune,"  
 . student what . to me bring . none  
 répondit le serviteur, "si ce n'est celle de la mort du chat."  
 replied . servant if this . . that . . . . .  
 — "Comment, le chat est mort; et de quoi est morte la  
 . . . . . what . dead .  
 pauvre bête?" — "D'indigestion; pour avoir mangé trop  
 poor . . . . . eaten too much  
 de viande." — "Et qui donc lui avait donné cette viande?"  
 . . . . . who then to it . given this .  
 — "Personne, si ce n'est vos pauvres chevaux." — "Non  
 nobody if this . . your . . . . . ou  
 chevaux aussi sont-ils donc morts? Expliquez-vous."  
 . also are . then . . explain yours if  
 "Certainement; les pauvres animaux sont morts de faim  
 certainly . . . . .  
 pour avoir trop porté d'eau." — "Et à quoi cette eau était-  
 . . too much carried . . . to what this . .  
 elle destinée?" — "A éteindre l'incendie de votre maison." —  
 . destined to extinguish . fire . your .  
 "L'incendie de notre maison!" — "Oui, vraiment; par suite  
 . fire . our . . . . . indeed by consequence  
 de la négligence de la servante, qui avait oublié d'éteindre  
 . . . . . maidservant who . forgotten to put out  
 les torches." — "De quelles torches voulez-vous parler?" —  
 . — what — wish . . . . .  
 "De celles qui avaient servi aux funérailles de votre mère."  
 . those which . served . funeral . your .  
 — "Que dites-vous? ma mère est morte! et vous ne me le  
 what say . my . . . . . dead . . . . .  
 disiez pas immédiatement!"  
 said . immediately

Numeral Adjectives (*concluded*).

## ORDINAL NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Ordinal numeral adjectives are so called because they indicate the order or the rank of persons or things. They are formed in French by adding *ième* to the cardinal numbers; as, *troisième*, third formed from *trois*, three; *dixième*, tenth from *dix*, ten.

Except: *premier*, first and *second*, second.

*Unième* can only be used after *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, *quatre-vingt*, *cent* and *mille*. The *f* of *neuf*, nine, is changed into *v* in *neuvième*, ninth. The final *e* of cardinal numbers is suppressed in ordinal adjectives; as,—*quatrième*, fourth from *quatre*, four; *trentième*, thirtieth from *trente*, thirty; a *u* is added after the *q* of *cinq*, five: *cinquième*, fifth.

THE FOLLOWING IS A LIST OF ORDINAL NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

|                                                     |                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Premier</i> , -ère ( <i>f.</i> ) first           | <i>Seizième</i> , sixteenth                                            |
| <i>Deuxième</i> or <i>second</i> , -e ( <i>m.</i> ) | <i>Dix-septième</i> &c., seventeenth                                   |
| <i>Troisième</i> , third [second]                   | <i>Vingtième</i> , twentieth                                           |
| <i>Quatrième</i> , fourth                           | <i>Vingt-et-unième</i> &c., twenty-first                               |
| <i>Cinquième</i> , fifth                            | <i>Trentième</i> , thirtieth                                           |
| <i>Sixième</i> sixth                                | <i>Quarantième</i> , fortieth                                          |
| <i>Septième</i> , seventh                           | <i>Cinquantième</i> , fiftieth                                         |
| <i>Huitième</i> , eighth                            | <i>Centième</i> , hundredth                                            |
| <i>Neuvième</i> , ninth                             | <i>Cent-unième</i> , hundred and first                                 |
| <i>Dixième</i> tenth                                | <i>Deux-cent trente troisième</i> , two hundred and thirty-third       |
| <i>Onzième</i> , eleventh                           | <i>Millième</i> , thousandth                                           |
| <i>Douzième</i> , twelfth                           | <i>Mille deux cent-quatrième</i> , one thousand two hundred and fourth |
| <i>Treizième</i> , thirteenth                       | <i>Millionième</i> , millionth                                         |
| <i>Quatorzième</i> , fourteenth                     |                                                                        |
| <i>Quinzième</i> , fifteenth                        |                                                                        |

REMARKS 1.—The ordinal numbers which are used in English to indicate the day of the month, or the order of succession among kings of the same name in a country, are replaced in French by the cardinal numbers, except first which is translated *premier*.

Ex.: *Charles trois*, Charles the third; *Louis quatorze*, Louis the fourteenth; *Le trois Mars*, the third of March; *le trente et un Mai*, the thirty-first of May; *le premier Août*, the first of August; *Charles premier*, Charles the first.

2. Charles the fifth (Emperor of Germany) is translated *Charles Quint* and Sixtus the fifth (the pope) *Sixte Quint*.

Compound tenses of *donner*, to give.

|                                                                                        |                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| They are formed with the auxiliary <i>avoir</i> and the past participle <i>donné</i> . |                                                             |
| <i>J'ai donné</i> &c., <i>I have given</i>                                             | <i>Je n'ai pas donné</i> , <i>I have not given</i>          |
| <i>J'avais donné</i> &c., <i>I had given</i>                                           | <i>Je n'avais pas donné</i> , <i>I had not given</i>        |
| <i>J'aurai donné</i> &c., <i>I shall have given</i>                                    | <i>Je n'aurai pas donné</i> , <i>I shall not have given</i> |
| &c. &c. &c.                                                                            |                                                             |



|                                   |                             |                                        |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| birthday, <i>jour de nais-</i>    | modest, <i>modeste</i>      | February, <i>Février m.</i>            |
| by, <i>par</i> [sance <i>m.</i>   | pain, <i>douleur f.</i>     | March, <i>Mars m.</i>                  |
| carriage, <i>voiture f.</i>       | part, <i>partie f.</i>      | April, <i>Avril m.</i>                 |
| chapter, <i>chapitre m.</i>       | peasant, <i>paysan m.</i>   | May, <i>Mai m.</i>                     |
| Charles, <i>Charles m.</i>        | profound, <i>profond</i>    | June, <i>Juin m.</i>                   |
| happy, <i>heureux</i>             | sincere, <i>sincère</i>     | July, <i>Juillet m.</i>                |
| Henry, <i>Henri m.</i>            | volume, <i>volume m.</i>    | August, <i>Août m.</i> [ <i>m.</i>     |
| illness, <i>maladie f.</i>        | when, <i>quand, lorsque</i> | September, <i>Septembre</i>            |
| king, <i>roi m.</i>               | world, <i>monde m.</i>      | October, <i>Octobre m.</i> [ <i>m.</i> |
| line, <i>ligne f.</i> [ <i>m.</i> | year, <i>année f.</i>       | November, <i>Novembre</i>              |
| misfortune, <i>malheur</i>        | January, <i>Janvier m.</i>  | December, <i>Décembre m.</i>           |

### Exercise No. 11.

1. The second volume—the sixth house—the ninth chapter—the twelfth tree—the fifteenth letter—the nineteenth line—the twentieth year—the thirty-second carriage—the forty-fifth book—the fifty-first birthday—the sixteenth of May—the seventy-first regiment—the eightieth battalion—the ninety-third day—the hundredth anniversary—the thousandth part—the second of January—the third of March—the first of April—Charles the second—Henry the first.

He has given—we have spoken—they (*f.*) had walked—have you spoken?—they (*m.*) will not have sung—I shall have given—we should have spoken—had she walked?—they (*m.*) would have given—we shall have spoken—has he given?—he would not have given—shall we have spoken?—you had sung—would she have found—we had not found.—we had given—have you walked?—I had not given.

2. Ma<sup>1</sup> deuxième sœur était avec mon<sup>2</sup> frère à Paris. J'ai donné le premier volume à votre<sup>3</sup> cousin. Il était dans sa<sup>4</sup> quarante-septième année. J'avais trouvé votre<sup>3</sup> oncle dans la vingt-septième avenue. Le seizième chapitre de ce<sup>5</sup> livre est très bien écrit<sup>6</sup>. Vous trouverez cela<sup>7</sup> à la vingt-huitième ligne. La cinquième maison de cette<sup>8</sup> rue est très belle. Henri quatre a été un très grand roi de France. Je verrai<sup>9</sup> votre<sup>3</sup> mère le<sup>10</sup> trois Avril.

We had walked the first day. I shall see<sup>11</sup> his<sup>12</sup> aunt (on) the second of January. I like the tenth chapter of the book; but I do not like the(\*) eleventh. I was then<sup>13</sup> in my<sup>14</sup> fortieth year. I have served<sup>15</sup> in the ninety-ninth regiment. It is<sup>16</sup> her<sup>17</sup> thirty-first birthday. Have you read of<sup>18</sup> the death of Charles the first. I shall come<sup>19</sup> (on) the third of March. Four is the fifth part of twenty. He came<sup>20</sup> yesterday<sup>21</sup> for the third time<sup>22</sup>.

1 *ma*, my 2 *mon*, my 3 *votre*, your 4 *sa*, his 5 *ce*, this 6 *écrit*, written 7 *cela*, that 8 *cette*, this 9 *verrai*, shall see 10 *le*, on the 11 *shall see*, *verrai* 12 *his*, *sa* 13 *then*, *alors* 14 *my*, *ma* 15 *served*, *servi* 16 *it is*, *c'est* 17 *her*, *son* 18 *read of*, *lu* 19 *I shall come*, *je viendrai* 20 *he came*, *il est venu* 21 *yesterday*, *hier* 22 *time*, *fois (f.)*

(\*) The *e* of *le* is not elided before *once* and *onzième*.



## Questions on Grammar.

1. Why are ordinal numeral adjectives so called?
2. How are ordinal numbers formed from cardinal numbers in French?
3. Translate *first* and *second*, *twenty-first* and *thirty-second*.
4. Translate *fourth*, *fifth* and *ninth*.
5. Translate *third*, *sixth*, *seventh*, *eighth*, *tenth*, *eleventh*, *twelfth*, *thirteenth*, *seventeenth*, *nineteenth*.
6. Translate *twentieth*, *thirtieth*, *sixtieth*, *seventieth*, *seventy-first*, *seventy-third*, *seventy-seventh*, *eightieth*, *eighty-second*, *ninetieth*, *ninety-second*, *ninety-fourth*, *hundredth*, *thousandth*.
7. How are ordinal numbers used in English for dates translated into French?
8. What are the numeral adjectives which must be used in French after names of kings to indicate their order of succession?
9. Translate *Charles the first*; *the first of March*.
10. Translate *Charles the fifth* (*Emperor of Germany*).

## Conversation.

Have you not seen (*vu*) your (*votre*) brother Charles in his (*sa*) carriage?

No, I have not seen my (*mon*) brother Charles; but I have seen my brother Henry.

How old are (*quel âge ont*) your (*vos*) two brothers?

They are twins (*jumeaux*) and will be (*auront*) sixteen (*seize ans*) (on) the third of March.

And you; how old are you (*quel âge avez-vous*)?

I shall be (*j'aurai*) sixty-four years (on) the twenty-eighth of April next.

The peasant's grief seems (*semble*) very profound. What is the matter with him (*qu'a-t-il*)?

He lost (*perdu*) his daughter (on) the second of January.

Was he not very happy formerly (*auparavant*)?

Yes, he was (*c'était*) the happiest man in the (*du*) world.

Navez-vous pas vu votre frère Charles dans sa voiture?

Non, je n'ai pas vu mon frère Charles, mais j'ai vu mon frère Henri.

Quel âge ont vos deux frères?

Ils sont jumeaux et auront seize ans le trois Mars.

Et vous; quel âge avez-vous?

J'aurai soixante-quatre ans, le vingt-huit Avril prochain.

La douleur du paysan semble très profonde. Qu'a-t-il?

Il a perdu sa fille le deux Janvier.

N'était-il pas très heureux auparavant?

Si, c'était l'homme le plus heureux du monde.

## Reading Exercise No. 11.

*Un paysan se croyait certainement à l'abri des caprices*  
 . . . himself believed . . . certainly . . . shelter . . . —  
 de la fortune, lorsqu'un jour sa vache fut enlevée soudain  
 . . . — . . . his . . . carried away suddenly  
 par une maladie épidémique. Le pauvre homme se désolait  
 . . . — . . . himself desolated . . .  
 de ce malheur, quand il fut affligé d'un malheur bien  
 lated . this . . . . afflicted . . . . much  
 plus terrible encore: sa femme mourut. Il se disait qu'il  
 . . . — still . . . . died . . . himself said . . .  
 ne se consolerait jamais d'une perte semblable. Il reçut  
 „ himself would console never . . . . similar . . . received  
 alors la visite de tous les principaux habitants du village  
 then . . . . all . . . . —  
 qui venaient lui offrir leurs condoléances: mais presque  
 who came him to offer their condolences . . . nearly  
 tous, après avoir épuisé leurs meilleurs arguments, finis-  
 all after . . . exhausted their . . . — finished  
 saient en lui rappelant qu'on ne saurait rester seul dans  
 by him remembering . . . one not would know to remain . . .  
 ce monde, lorsqu'on est encore jeune et vigoureux. L'un  
 this . . . . one . . . still . . . . vigorous . . . one  
 avait plusieurs filles parmi lesquelles il pourrait choisir;  
 . . . several . . . among whom . . . could select  
 l'autre avait une sœur qui serait heureuse de devenir la  
 other . . . . who . . . . to become . . .  
 mère de ses enfants; celui-là, une parente qui dirigerait  
 . . . his . . . that one . . . relative who would direct  
 à merveille le ménage de notre veuf. Il les laissa par-  
 . . . marvel . . . household . . . our widower . . . them allowed . . .  
 ler; mais il faisait remarquer plus tard à l'un de ses amis  
 . . . . made observe later on . . . . his . . .  
 qu'il valait mieux dans ce pays-là perdre sa femme qu'une  
 . . . was worth . . . . that . . . there to lose his wife . . .  
 vache; car chacun lui avait offert de remplacer la première  
 for every one him . . . offered to replace . . . former  
 tandis que personne n'avait parlé de la dernière.”  
 while . . . nobody . . . . . latter

## Demonstrative Adjectives.

Demonstrative adjectives are so called because they point to a person or thing.

Demonstrative adjectives, which always precede nouns, must not be confounded with demonstrative pronouns which like any other pronouns stand inside of nouns. In French different words are used when adjectives or pronouns, to translate *this, that, these, those*.

The Demonstrative adjectives are as follows :

| Masc. Sing.                  | Fem. Sing.                 | Pl. of both Gend.          |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>ce, cet, this or that</i> | <i>cette, this or that</i> | <i>ces, these or those</i> |

REMARK I.—*Ce* is used before masculine nouns beginning with consonants and *cet* before masculine nouns beginning with vowels or *h* mute ; as,

*ce chien, this or that dog ; ce héros, this or that hero*  
*cet animal, this or that animal ; cet homme, this or that man*

II.—When it is necessary to make in French the same distinction which is made in English by using *this* or *that*, the adverbs *ci* or *là* are placed after the nouns which are preceded by *ce, cet, cette* or *ces* ; as,

*ce cheval-ci, this horse ; ce cheval-là, that horse*  
*cet homme-ci, this man ; cet homme-là, that man*  
*cette femme-ci, this woman ; cette femme-là, that woman*  
*ces maisons-ci, these houses ; ces maisons-là, those houses*

*Ci* refers to the person or thing nearer to the speaker, *là* to the farther.

The hyphen must always be placed between the nouns and the adverbs *ci* and *là*.

Conjugation of the verb *finir*, to finish.

Verbs ending in *ir* belong to the second conjugation of regular verbs.

*Present Indicative.*

je fin-is, *I finish*  
 tu fin-is, *thou finishest*  
 il fin-it, *he finishes*  
 nous fin-issons, *we finish*  
 vous fin-issez, *you finish*  
 ils fin-issent, *they finish*

finis-je, *do I finish*  
 finis-tu, *doest thou finish*  
 finit-il, *does he finish*  
 finissons-nous, *do we finish*  
 finissez-vous, *do you finish*  
 finissent-ils, *do they finish*

|                               |                             |                               |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| anger, <i>colère f.</i>       | herb, <i>herbe f.</i>       | messenger, <i>messager m.</i> |
| axe, <i>hache f.</i>          | history, <i>histoire f.</i> | name, <i>nom m.</i>           |
| bridge, <i>pont m.</i>        | hospital, <i>hôpital m.</i> | owl, <i>'hibou m.</i>         |
| clock, <i>horloge f.</i>      | hut, <i>'hutte f.</i>       | plate, <i>assiette f.</i>     |
| custom, <i>habitude f.</i>    | image, <i>image f.</i>      | shed, <i>'hangar m.</i>       |
| ear, <i>oreille f.</i>        | inkstand, <i>encrier m.</i> | tower, <i>tour f.</i>         |
| hamlet, <i>'hameau m. (*)</i> | island, <i>'île f.</i>      | to build, <i>bâtir</i>        |
| hatred, <i>'haine f.</i>      | lobster, <i>'homard m.</i>  | to grow, <i>grandir</i>       |
| hedge, <i>'haie f.</i>        | meadow, <i>'prairie f.</i>  | winter, <i>'hiver m.</i>      |

### Exercise No. 12.

1. This *or* that cat—this *or* that hamlet—this *or* that tree—this *or* that hospital—this *or* that table—this *or* that axe—this *or* that island—this *or* that history—these *or* those friends—these *or* those owls—these *or* those inkstands—these *or* those winters—these *or* those streets—these *or* those hedges—these *or* those images—these *or* those customs—this bridge—that shed—this bird—that hotel—this tower—that hatred—this water—that herb—these horses—those lobsters—these officers—those coats—these girls—those huts—these plates—those clocks.

We finish—does he finish?—I do not finish—I build—he does not finish—thou finishest—they (*f.*) do not finish—do I finish?—does she finish?—they (*m.*) finish—she does not finish—we build—thou dost not finish—do we finish?—I finish—dost thou finish?—we do not finish—you build—does he grow?—you finish—we grow—do you finish?—you do not finish—they (*m.*) build—he grows—he finishes.

2. Nous finissons cette leçon. Ils finissent ce pont. Bâissez-vous ces maisons? Elles grandissent beaucoup<sup>1</sup>. Ces chevaux-ci sont plus beaux que ces chevaux-là. Cette île-ci est plus grande que cette île-là. Nous avons acheté<sup>2</sup> cette table-ci et cette chaise-là pour notre<sup>3</sup> sœur. Cet habit est trop grand. Cette tour-là est plus vieille que cette tour-ci. Mettez<sup>4</sup> les homards sur ces assiettes-là.

This house is larger than that house. These boys and those girls will go<sup>5</sup> to the town. Give me<sup>6</sup> these plates. Those clocks are very good. He finishes this lesson. He is in this hospital with his<sup>7</sup> father. These hedges grow well. Put<sup>8</sup> the bread on the table. I like these customs. These flowers are beautiful. He builds a house in this street. This lobster is good; that lobster is bad. This hospital is large. This inkstand is small. These customs are very old.

1 beaucoup, much 2 acheté, bought 3 notre, our 4 mettez, put 5 will go. iront  
6 give me, donnez-moi 7 his, son 8 put, mettez

(\*) The apostrophe indicates that the *h* is aspirated. (See lesson 1).



## Questions on Grammar.

1. Why are demonstrative adjectives so called?
2. What is the difference between a demonstrative adjective and a demonstrative pronoun?
3. Is there any difference in English between demonstrative adjectives and demonstrative pronouns?
4. What are the demonstrative adjectives in French?
5. When is *cet* used before a masculine noun instead of *ce*?
6. What are the adverbs which are placed after French nouns preceded by *ce, cet, cette, ces*, in order to make a distinction between *this* and *that* or *these* and *those*?
7. What does *ci* refer to?
8. What does *là* refer to?
9. What is the sign which must always be placed between *ci* or *là* and the noun?

## Conversation.

|                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| What ( <i>quels</i> ) animals did you see ( <i>avez-vous vus</i> ) in the meadow?                                                         | Quels animaux avez-vous vus dans la prairie?                                                                            |
| I saw (have seen) two horses and ten cows in this meadow.                                                                                 | J'ai vu deux chevaux et dix vaches dans cette prairie.                                                                  |
| Was the peasant with his ( <i>son</i> ) horse in that meadow?                                                                             | Le paysan était-il avec son cheval dans cette prairie?                                                                  |
| Yes; he was <sup>b</sup> there <sup>a</sup> ( <i>y</i> ) with his horse and his ( <i>ses</i> ) cows.                                      | Oui; il y était avec son cheval et ses vaches.                                                                          |
| Have you sent ( <i>envoyé</i> ) a messenger to the master of this meadow?                                                                 | Avez-vous envoyé un messenger au maître de cette prairie?                                                               |
| Yes, I have sent the peasant's neighbour.                                                                                                 | Oui, j'ai envoyé le voisin du paysan.                                                                                   |
| What did the master say ( <i>dit</i> ) to this man?                                                                                       | Qu'a dit le maître à cet homme?                                                                                         |
| The master was very angry and said ( <i>dit</i> ) that the peasant would be punished ( <i>puni</i> ) for putting his cows in this meadow. | Le maître était dans une grande colère et a dit que le paysan serait puni pour avoir mis ses vaches dans cette prairie. |
| What did the peasant answer ( <i>répondit</i> ) to this menace?                                                                           | Que répondit le paysan à cette menace?                                                                                  |
| The peasant's answer was very insolent.                                                                                                   | La réponse du paysan fut très insolente.                                                                                |
| But what was his answer?                                                                                                                  | Mais quelle fut sa réponse?                                                                                             |
| He said that he would cut off ( <i>couperait</i> ) the master's ears.                                                                     | Il dit qu'il couperait les oreilles du maître.                                                                          |



## Reading Exercise No. 12.

*Un gentilhomme, qui possédait une grande propriété,*  
 nobleman who possessed a estate  
*remarquait depuis longtemps que des animaux étrangers*  
 remarked since long time . . . strange  
*étaient conduits dans ses pâturages et y faisaient un*  
 conducted in his pastures . there made .  
*dégât considérable. Il établit une surveillance et bientôt*  
 damage — . established . watch . soon  
*on vint lui dire le nom d'un paysan qu'on avait surpris*  
 they came him to say . . . whom they . surprised  
*au moment où il sortait avec son cheval de la prairie.*  
 — where . came out . his . . .  
*Le gentilhomme chargea l'un de ses serviteurs d'aller chez*  
 nobleman charged . . . his servants . to go to  
*lui et de le prévenir que la première fois que son cheval*  
 his house . . him to inform . . . time . his .  
*serait trouvé paissant dans le pré il lui ferait couper la*  
 . . grazing . . meadow . to him would make cut .  
*queue. Mais le paysan répondit au messager: "Je me*  
 tail . . . answered . . . myself  
*tiens pour averti: mais tu diras à ton maître que s'il fait*  
 hold . warned . . . wilt say . . . makes  
*couper la queue à mon cheval, je lui couperai les oreilles."*  
 cut off . tail . my . . . him shall cut . .  
*Le messager rapporta la réponse au gentilhomme qui*  
 . . reported . . . nobleman who  
*entra dans une violente colère; il envoya chercher le paysan*  
 entered . . . sent to fetch . .  
*et lui dit: "Comment oses-tu me faire transmettre une*  
 . him said How darest . to me make transmit .  
*réponse aussi insolente et me menacer?" — "Moi, vous*  
 . so . . . me to threaten I you  
*menacer, Monsieur;" répliqua le paysan.* "Vous me  
 to threaten . . . replied . . . me  
*permettez de vous faire observer que vous vous êtes trompé.*  
 will permit . . . to make observe . . . yourself . deceived  
*Il est vrai que j'ai dit que si Monsieur coupait la queue de*  
 . . . said . if the gentleman cut off . tail .  
*mon cheval, je lui couperais les oreilles; mais j'ai voulu*  
 my . . . him would cut off . . . . . wished  
*parler des oreilles de ce dernier*  
 . . . . . latter

## Possessive Adjectives.

Possessive adjectives are so called because they indicate possession. The following is a list of them.

| Sin. Masc. | Fem.      | Plu. of all Gen.           | Sin. Masc.   | Fem.         | Plu. of all Gen.     |
|------------|-----------|----------------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------------|
| <i>mon</i> | <i>ma</i> | <i>mes</i> , my            | <i>notre</i> | <i>notre</i> | <i>nos</i> , our     |
| <i>ton</i> | <i>ta</i> | <i>tes</i> , thy           | <i>votre</i> | <i>votre</i> | <i>vos</i> , your    |
| <i>son</i> | <i>sa</i> | <i>ses</i> , his, her, its | <i>leur</i>  | <i>leur</i>  | <i>leurs</i> , their |

REMARK 1.—*Mon*, *ton*, *son* are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa* before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute.

Ex.: *mon âme*, my soul; *ton histoire*, thy history; *son image*, his image.

II.—In French possessive adjectives of the third person take the gender of the noun which they determine, and not as in English, the gender of the possessor.

Ex.: *son frère*, her brother; *sa sœur*, his sister.

III.—Possessive adjectives as well as any other determinative adjectives must be repeated before every noun.

## Indefinite Adjectives.

Indefinite adjectives are so called because they determine nouns in an indefinite manner.

They are as follows:

|                                 |                                         |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>certain</i> , certain, some  | <i>chaque</i> , every, each             |
| <i>nul</i> , no                 | <i>même</i> , same                      |
| <i>tout</i> , every, all, whole | <i>quelque</i> , some, any              |
| <i>aucun</i> , not any, not one | <i>plusieurs</i> , several              |
| <i>un tel</i> , such a          | <i>un...quelconque</i> , any...whatever |
| <i>quel</i> , which, what       | <i>différents</i> , different           |
| <i>maint</i> , many a           | <i>divers</i> , diverse, various        |

REMARK I.—*Nul*, *aucun* and *chaque* are never used in the plural: therefore, the noun that follows them must be also in the singular. Ex.: *Je n'ai aucun ami*, I have no friends.

If it were necessary to translate the noun in the plural, *no* would be translated *pas de*. Ex.: *Je n'ai pas de maisons*, I have no houses.

II.—*Plusieurs*, *différents*, and *divers* are never used in the singular; *plusieurs* does not change in the feminine.

III.—*Un quelconque* any ... whatever, becomes in the plural *des ... quelconques*.

IV.—The plural of *tout* is *tous* for the masculine, and *toutes* for the feminine. *Tout* means *every* when no article or determinative adjective is placed before the noun. It means *the whole* when the noun, being preceded by an article or determinative adjective, is in the singular. Ex.: *Tout homme*, every man; *toute la ville*, the whole town; *tous mes amis*, all my friends.

|                                    |                                      |                            |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| after, <i>après</i>                | fault, <i>faute f.</i>               | nation, <i>nation f.</i>   |
| arm, <i>bras m.</i>                | floor, <i>étage m.</i>               | needle, <i>aiguille f.</i> |
| army, <i>armée f.</i>              | fork, <i>fourchette f.</i>           | rule, <i>règle f.</i>      |
| battle, <i>bataille f.</i>         | head, <i>tête f.</i>                 | soul, <i>âme f.</i>        |
| cannon-ball, <i>boulet m.</i>      | interesting, <i>intéres-</i>         | subject, <i>sujet m.</i>   |
| carpenter, <i>charpentier</i>      | leg, <i>jambe f.</i> [ <i>sant</i> ] | queen, <i>reine f.</i>     |
| city, <i>cité f.</i> [ <i>m.</i> ] | member, <i>membre m.</i>             | wood, <i>bois m.</i>       |
| difficulty, <i>difficulté f.</i>   | mouth, <i>bouche f.</i>              | wound, <i>blessure f.</i>  |

### Exercise No. 13.

1. My book—my sister—my soul—my arms—thy brother—thy aunt—thy friend (*f.*)—thy feet—his pencil—her dog—its head—his pen—her house—its mouth—her needle—his eyes—her hands—its legs—our father—our army—our members—our boots—your coat—your dress—your bed—your rooms—their uncle—their aunt—their children—their faults—certain men—certain rules—certain friends—certain women—no boy—no girl—no towns—no villages—every tree—every city—the whole nation—all the words—all my sisters—such book—such letter—such knives—such forks—which dish—which plate—which kings—which queens—many a man—many a daughter—many soldiers—many flowers—each volume—each page—the same floor—the same house—the same gloves—the same streets—some friend—some cousin (*f.*)—some men—some ladies—several hamlets—several cities—any book whatever—any plant whatever—any hats whatever—any persons whatever—different subjects—different reasons—~~diverse~~ climates—diverse rivers.

(\*) We finished—did I finish?—you did not finish—we built—did we finish?—he finished—I did not finish—did he build?—we did not finish—I built—I finished—did they finish?—they (*m.*) built—did you finish?—thou didst not finish—you finished—we did not build—did he build?—didst thou finish?—she did not finish—thou finishedst—they (*m.*) finished—you built—they (*f.*) did not finish—did he finish?

2. Nous aimons votre famille. Leur histoire est intéressante. Il a maint ami dans notre ville. Il finissait sa leçon. J'ai été dans différents villages. Il habite<sup>1</sup> dans la même rue que<sup>2</sup> moi<sup>3</sup>. Ses yeux sont bleus. Sa bouche est petite. Ses mains sont blanches. Nous n'avons pas de chambres dans notre hôtel. Nos gants sont plus beaux que ceux<sup>4</sup> de notre cousin.

The houses of our village are large. The whole book is interesting. What lesson have you learnt<sup>5</sup>? All the dishes were very good. Show me your hat. I have some friends in this town. I find certain rules very difficult.

(\*) Exercise on the imperfect of *finir*, to end (see Supplement, page 11).

1 *habite*, lives 2 *que*, as 3 *moi*, I 4 *ceux*, those 5 *learnt*, *apprise*

## Questions on Grammar.

1. Why are possessive adjectives so called?
2. Give the masculine singular of possessive adjectives?
3. Give the feminine singular of possessive adjectives?
4. Give the plural of possessive adjectives?
5. How are *my, thy, his, her, its* translated before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute?
6. Do possessive adjectives of the third person agree in gender with the possessed object or with the possessor?
7. What are the words which must be repeated before every noun?
8. Why are indefinite adjectives so called?
9. Which are the indefinite adjectives that are never used in the plural?
10. What indefinite adjective is never used in the singular?
11. What is the plural masculine of *tout*?
12. When does *tout* mean *whole*; when *every*?

## Conversation.

Who (*qui*) are the soldiers who  
(*qui*) are on the second floor?

They are (*ce sont*) my cousins.

What is the colour of their coats?

They are blue.

Do they belong ()  
to the English<sup>b</sup> army<sup>a</sup>?

No; they are French (*Français*).

Who (*qui*) has made (*fait*) this  
table?

The carpenter.

Is the wood good?

Yes; it is very good.

Do you find any difficulty whatever  
in this grammar (*grammaire*)?

No, I find this grammar very easy  
(*facile*); the rules are explained  
(*expliquées*) with clearness  
(*clarté*) and simplicity.

How many (*Combien de*) mistakes  
had you in your lesson?

Twelve.

Have you learnt (*appris*) any fo-  
reign language?

Yes; I have learned all European  
languages.

Qui sont les soldats qui sont au  
second étage?

Ce sont mes cousins.

Quelle est la couleur de leurs  
habits?

Ils sont bleus.

Appartiennent-ils à l'armée an-  
glaise?

Non; ils sont Français.

Qui a fait cette table?

Le charpentier.

Le bois est-il bon?

Oui; il est très bon.

Trouvez-vous une difficulté quel-  
conque dans cette grammaire?

Non; je trouve cette grammaire  
très facile; les règles sont ex-  
pliquées avec clarté et simpli-  
cité.

Combien de fautes aviez-vous dans  
votre devoir?

Douze.

Avez-vous appris quelque langue  
étrangère?

Oui; j'ai appris toutes les langues  
européennes.



## Reading Exercise No. 13.

*Un capitaine* avait perdu une *jambe* dans une *bataille*  
captain lost

C'était un très bon officier, et il était très aimé des soldats  
He . . . . .

et très estimé de son général. Cependant ce général le  
. . . esteemed . . . . . However . . . . . him

considérant comme incapable de servir à l'avenir, lui écrivit  
considering as . . . . . to serve . . . future him wrote

pour le prévenir qu'il allait lui faire obtenir une pension.  
. . him to inform . . . was going him to make obtain . . . . .

Mais le capitaine en fut très affligé: et un mois après,  
. . . captain of it was . . . afflicted . . . . .

lorsque sa blessure fut guérie, il se fit faire une jambe de  
. . . . . cured . to himself made to make . . . . .

bois et alla chez le général pour lui demander de modifier  
. . . . . went to . . . . . him to ask . . . . .

sa décision: "Je peux aussi bien marcher," lui dit-il, "avec  
. . . . . can as well . . . . . to him said he

cette jambe artificielle que je le faisais avec ma jambe  
. . . . . artificial as . . . it did . . . . .

naturelle. D'ailleurs, si je vais au combat, c'est pour me  
natural Moreover if . . . go to the . . . it . . . . .

battre et non pour me sauver." Le général consentit après  
fight . . not . . myself to save . . . . . consented . . . . .

beaucoup d'hésitation et le capitaine rejoignit son régiment.  
. . . . . captain rejoined . . . . .

Peu de temps après, ce régiment fut engagé dans une  
Little . . . . . engaged . . . . .

bataille et notre officier se conduisait avec un courage  
. . . . . himself conducted . . . . .

héroïque, lorsqu'un boulet lui coupa sa jambe de bois; il  
heroical . . . . . ball to him cut . . . . .

fut renversé et les soldats qui se trouvaient près de lui,  
was thrown down . . . . . who themselves . . . . . near . . him

appelèrent un chirurgien. "Taisez-vous donc," leur dit  
called . . . . . surgeon Be silent then to them said

alors le capitaine, "ce n'est pas un chirurgien qu'il me  
then . . captain it . . . . . surgeon that . to me

faudrait; envoyez-moi un charpentier."  
would be necessary send me



## The Pronoun.

There are in French six classes of Pronouns, viz: *Personal, Demonstrative, Possessive, Relative, Interrogative and Indefinite.*

### Personal Pronouns.

They are so called because they are used to designate persons. There are three persons: the 1st person who speaks, the 2nd to whom one speaks, and the 3rd of whom one speaks.

Personal pronouns are *conjunctive*, that is to say used in connection with the verb, or *disjunctive* used separately from the verb.

*Conjunctive* pronouns are always placed before the verb; *disjunctive*, which may be used without a verb, are, when used with a verb, placed after it.

Personal pronouns are as follows:

### Conjunctive Pronouns.

|       | 1st Person.                  | 2nd Person.          | Mas.                  | 3rd Person.           | Fem. |
|-------|------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------|
| Sing. | { Nom. \| <i>je</i> , I | \| <i>tu</i> , thou | \| <i>il</i> , he | \| <i>elle</i> , she     |      |
|       | { Acc. \| <i>me</i> , me | \| <i>te</i> , thee | \| <i>le</i> , him | \| <i>la</i> , her       |      |
|       | { Dat. \| <i>me</i> , to me | \| <i>te</i> , to thee | \| <i>lui</i> , to him | \| <i>lui</i> , to her   |      |
| Plur. | { Nom. \| <i>nous</i> , we | \| <i>vous</i> , you | \| <i>ils</i> , they | \| <i>elles</i> , they   |      |
|       | { Acc. \| <i>nous</i> , us | \| <i>vous</i> , you | \| <i>les</i> , them | \| <i>les</i> , them     |      |
|       | { Dat. \| <i>nous</i> , of us | \| <i>vous</i> , to you | \| <i>leur</i> , to them | \| <i>leur</i> , to them |      |

### Disjunctive Pronouns.

|       | 1st Person.          | 2nd Person.             | Mas.                    | 3rd Person.               | Fem. |
|-------|----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|------|
| Sing. | <i>moi</i> , I, me | \| <i>toi</i> , thou, thee | \| <i>lui</i> , he, him | \| <i>elle</i> , she, her    |      |
| Plur. | <i>nous</i> , we, us | \| <i>vous</i> , you | \| <i>eux</i> , they, them | \| <i>elles</i> , they, them |      |

There are besides four more personal pronouns of the third person, viz: *se, soi, en, y.*

*Se*, himself, herself, themselves, one's self, is conjunctive and always precedes the verb.

Ex.: *il se flatte*, he flatters himself; *ils se trompent*, they deceive themselves (they make a mistake).

*Soi*, one's self, is disjunctive and used after the verb.

Ex.: *ne penser qu'à soi*, to think only of one's self.

*En* generally translates *of him, of her, of it, of them* and is principally used in speaking of things.

Ex.: *nous en parlons*, we speak of it.

*Y* generally translates *to it, to them* and can only be used in speaking of things.

Ex.: *il y réfère souvent*, he often refers to it.

RULE.—Personal pronouns, when objects of verbs, always precede them in French.

Ex.: *il me connaît*, he knows me; *nous les verrons*, we shall see them.

EXCEPTION.—Personal pronouns follow the verb in the Imperative and disjunctive pronouns are used, except for pronouns of the 3rd person.—*Donnez-moi*, give me; *dépêche-toi*, hasten; *parlez-lui*, speak to her; *dites-leur*, say to them.

|                                 |                             |                                        |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| afternoon, <i>après-midi f.</i> | mind, <i>esprit m.</i>      | terrace, <i>terrasse f.</i>            |
| always, <i>toujours</i>         | new, <i>nouveau</i>         | to deceive, <i>décevoir</i>            |
| baker, <i>boulangier m.</i>     | often, <i>souvent</i>       | to-morrow, <i>demain</i>               |
| butcher, <i>boucher m.</i>      | park, <i>parc m.</i>        | to leap, <i>sauter</i>                 |
| cheap, <i>bon marché</i>        | pleasure, <i>plaisir m.</i> | to meet, <i>rencontrer</i>             |
| difficult, <i>difficile</i>     | ready, <i>prêt</i>          | to supply, <i>fournir</i>              |
| grocer, <i>épicer m.</i>        | shop, <i>magasin m.</i>     | upon, <i>sur</i> [ <i>croisée f.</i> ] |
| joiner, <i>menuisier m.</i>     | strength, <i>force f.</i>   | window, <i>fenêtre f.</i>              |

### Exercise No. 14.

1. I like him.—Thou knowest<sup>1</sup> them.—He liked me.—We shall speak to you.—You would speak to us.—They (*m.*) will give the book to them.—He knows<sup>2</sup> me.—She spoke to me.—They (*f.*) knew<sup>3</sup> us.—They spoke to us.—I like thee.—I speak to thee.—He knew<sup>4</sup> you.—He will speak to you.—I met him.—We spoke to him.—We meet them.—You speak to them.—I like her.—I shall write<sup>5</sup> to her.—He was with me.—He will be with us.—He spoke of thee.—Shall I dance with you?—It<sup>6</sup> is he.—We spoke with them (*m.*).—It<sup>6</sup> was she.—I came<sup>7</sup> with them (*f.*).

(†) We receive—do I receive?—he does not receive—we deceive—I do not receive—I receive—she does not receive—you do not deceive—does he receive?—dost thou receive?—he receives—we do not receive—they (*f.*) do not deceive—you do not receive—he deceives—you receive—do you receive?—I deceive—they (*m.*) deceive—do we receive?—thou receivest—they (*m.*) do not receive—thou dost not receive—do they (*f.*) receive?—they (*m.*) receive—you deceive.

2. Ils nous reçoivent toujours avec un nouveau plaisir. Nous sommes prêts à les recevoir. Je l'ai vu<sup>8</sup> à la fenêtre. C'est lui qui<sup>10</sup> me reçoit. Je le rencontrerai dans le parc cette après-midi. Nous les avons achetés<sup>11</sup> dans le magasin de votre frère. Je les ai vus dans le jardin. Nous les avons donnés<sup>12</sup> à votre sœur. Je lui parlerai demain. Ils reçoivent leurs amis avec affabilité. Les recevez-vous souvent? Ils déçoivent notre père. Nous le finirons demain matin.

I have given them to the carpenter. The butcher sells<sup>13</sup> them cheap. Our baker supplies them. I have given it (*m.*) to the grocer. The joiner has made<sup>14</sup> these windows for them (*m.*). We meet them very often. His friend receives him always in his beautiful garden. We like you. They will give that new book to us. We give these apples to you. I like them.

1 knowest, *connais* 2 knows, *connait* 3 knew, *connaissaient* 4 knew, *connaissait*  
 5 shall write, *écrirai* 6 it, *c'* 7 came, *viens*  
 8 *vu*, seen 9 *c'*, it 10 *qui*, who 11 *achetés*, bought 12 *donnés*, given  
 13 sells, *vend* 14 made, *fait*

(†) See the Present Indicative of *recevoir* 3rd conjugation (Supplement, page 12).

## Questions on Grammar.

1. How many classes of pronouns are there in French?
2. Why are personal pronouns so called?
3. What are the three persons?
4. How many kinds of personal pronouns are there; what are they?
5. What is the place of conjunctive and disjunctive personal pronouns?
6. Give the personal pronouns of the 1st person?
7. Give those of the 2nd person?
8. Give those of the 3rd person?
9. What is the meaning of the pronouns *se* and *soi* and what are their respective places?
10. What is the meaning of *en* and *y*?
11. What is the place of personal pronouns when objects of the verb?
12. When are they placed after the verb?

## Conversation.

When will the baker come (*viendra*)?

The baker will come this afternoon.

Is the bread which he sells good?

Yes, it is good and cheap.

Is the new grocer's shop open (*ouvert*)?

No, the carpenters and joiners have not yet (*pas encore*) finished their work.

When do you think that everything will be ready?

It will be difficult to get everything ready (to prepare everything) before to-morrow.

Have you been in the park this afternoon?

No, the wind blew (*soufflait*) very strongly.

Have you heard (*entendu dire*) anything about the (*au sujet de la*) storm?

Yes; they say (*on dit*) that many panes of glass have been broken (*cassés*).

Quand viendra le boulanger?

Le boulanger viendra cette après-midi.

Le pain qu'il vend est-il bon?

Oui, il est bon et bon marché.

Le nouveau magasin d'épicerie est-il ouvert?

Non, les charpentiers et les menuisiers n'ont pas encore fini leur travail.

Quand pensez-vous que tout soit prêt?

Il sera difficile de tout préparer avant demain.

Avez-vous été dans le parc cette après-midi?

Non, le vent soufflait très fort.

Avez-vous entendu dire quelque chose au sujet de la tempête?

Oui; on dit que beaucoup de carreaux ont été cassés.

## Reading Exercise No. 14.

*On raconte l'anecdote suivante au sujet de Thomas*  
 One relates . . . following . . . subject . . .  
*More, Lord Chancelier d'Angleterre. Au commencement*  
 More — Chancellor . . . England . . .  
*de sa carrière, il habitait une maison sur la terrasse de*  
 . . . career . . . inhabited . . .  
*laquelle il se promenait souvent : un jour qu'il se livrait*  
 which . . . walked . . . that . . . gave up  
*à cette récréation, un fou que l'on gardait dans la maison*  
 . . . — . . . lunatic whom,, one kept . . .  
*voisine échappa à la surveillance de ses gardiens et sauta*  
 next escaped . . . — . . . keepers . . .  
*de la fenêtre sur la terrasse. Apercevant le chancelier*  
 from . . . Perceiving . . . chancellor  
*il courut vers lui et le prenant par le bras : "Vous*  
 . . . ran towards . . . taking . . .  
*sauterez dans la rue," lui dit-il d'une voix furieuse, ' ou je*  
 . . . said . . .  
*vous y précipiterai."* Le chancelier le regarda et vit que  
 . . . into it shall precipitate . . . chancellor . . . regarded . . . saw . . .  
*c'était un homme d'une force bien supérieure à la sienne*  
 this . . . very . . . his  
*et qu'il y aurait folie à chercher à se défendre. Mais il*  
 . . . there would be madness . . . try . . . one's self to defend . . .  
*ne perdit pas sa présence d'esprit. "Je suis prêt," dit-il*  
 ,, lost . . . — . . . said . . .  
*"à faire ce que vous me demandez, mais permettez-moi de*  
 . . . do that which . . . ask . . . allow . . .  
*vous faire observer que cela ne présente aucune difficulté.*  
 . . . make observe . . . that ,, presents . . . —  
*Il serait beaucoup plus difficile de sauter de la rue sur*  
 . . . difficult . . .  
*cette terrasse, et c'est ce que je vous propose de faire."*  
 . . . it . . . that which . . . propose . . . to do  
*Le fou réfléchit un instant d'un air soupçonneux, puis*  
 . . . lunatic reflected . . . — . . . suspicious . . . then  
*éclata de rire et consentit à la proposition. Le chancelier*  
 burst of to laugh . . . consented . . . — . . . chancellor  
*s'empressa d'en profiter et échappa de cette manière à ce*  
 . . . hastened . . . to profit . . . escaped . . . manner . . .  
*pressant danger*  
 pressing —



Personal Pronouns (*concluded*).

REMARKS. 1.—Personal pronouns when preceded by prepositions follow the verb. Disjunctive pronouns are used then.

*Je parle de vous.* I speak of *you*. *Il vint avec moi.* He came with *me*.

2. When the verb has two personal pronouns of different persons as complements, one in the accusative case (direct object) and the other in the dative (indirect object), they are both placed before the verb, in the order of priority of persons, that is to say, the pronouns of the 1st and 2nd persons before those of the 3rd.

*Il me le dit.* He says *it* to *me*. *Je te le donne.* I give *it* to *thee*.

3. If the two pronouns were of the 3rd person, the direct object would be placed before the indirect object.

*Je le lui envoie.* I send *it* to *him*. *Nous les leur donnons.* We give *them* to *them*.

4. If the verb be in the imperative the direct object always precedes the indirect object.

*Donnez-le moi.* Give *it* to *me*. *Prêtez-le leur.* Lend *it* to *them*.

5. When the verb being in the imperative is accompanied by a negation the pronouns precede the verb and are placed respectively, as explained before (R. 2 and 3).

*Né me le donnez pas.* Do not give *it* to *me*.

*Né le leur prêtez pas.* Do not lend *it* to *them*.

6. *Se*, which generally translates *himself, herself, itself, themselves, one's self*, also translates *each other, one another*, when placed in English after reciprocal verbs(\*) in the 3rd person plural.

*Ils s'aiment tendrement.* They love *each other* tenderly.

*Ils s'écriront.* They will write to *each other*.

7. *En* which generally translates *of him, of her, of it, of them*, also translates the same personal pronouns, preceded by other prepositions when these prepositions ought to be translated in French by the preposition *de*.

*J'en suis content.* I am satisfied with *it*.

*Son succès en dépend.* His success depends upon *it*.

8. *En* also translates *some or any* when placed after a verb.

*J'en ai.* I have *some*. *Je n'en ai pas.* I have *not any*.

9. *En* is sometimes an adverb of place and translates *from thence*.

*J'en arrive.* I arrive from *thence*.

10. *En* is a preposition when preceding a noun or a present participle.

*En France.* In France. *En lisant.* By reading.

11. *Y* which generally translates *to it, to them*, also translates the same pronouns preceded by other prepositions, when these prepositions ought to be translated by the preposition *à*.

*J'y pense.* I think of *it*. *Il y demeure.* He lives in *it*.

12. *Y* is often an adverb of place and translates *there*.

*Il y est.* He is *there*.

13. *En* and *y* occur sometimes together, *y*, adverb always preceding *en*, pronoun, which is always placed immediately before the verb.

*Il y en a.* He has *some there*.

(\*) Verbs which imply an idea of reciprocity as, *se saluer*, to salute one another, *se haïr*, to hate each other, &c.



among, *parmi*  
to advise, *conseiller*  
bank, *bord m.*  
betrothed, *fiancée f.*  
to burn, *brûler*  
to call, *appeler*  
to commence, *commencer*  
despair, *désespérer m.*  
dinner, *dîner m.*

eve, *veille f.*  
to fall, *tomber*  
fish, *poisson m.*  
finger, *doigt m.*  
flesh, *chair f.*  
girl, *fille f.*  
guest, *convive m.*  
incredible, *incroyable*  
to lend, *prêter*

lip, *lèvre f.*  
place, *endroit m.*  
relation, *parent m.*  
research, *recherche f.*  
ring, *bague f.*  
to send, *envoyer.*  
sign, *signe m.*  
strange, *étrange*  
token, *gage m.*

### Exercise No. 15.

1. We speak of you.—I will come<sup>1</sup> with them (*m.*).—You will be there without me.—He gives it to me.—He lends it to us.—I shall give it to thee.—We shall lend them to you.—I give it to him.—We shall give it to her.—I shall lend it to them (*m.*).—I should lend them to them (*f.*).—Give them to us.—Lend them to him.—Do not give them to us.—Do not send them to him.—He burns himself.—She will burn herself.—They (*m.*) would burn themselves.—They (*f.*) burned themselves.—They (*m.*) write<sup>2</sup> to each other.—They (*f.*) hated<sup>3</sup> one another.—He speaks of him.—We shall speak of her.—He would speak of it.—We spoke of them.—He struck<sup>4</sup> his dog with it.—You will have some.—He had not any.—He has arrived<sup>5</sup> from thence.—They are in town.—You will learn<sup>6</sup> it by speaking.—He alluded<sup>7</sup> to it.—My hat hangs<sup>8</sup> from it.—We were there.—We have some there.

(\*)2. Je le lui dirai<sup>9</sup> demain. Nous vous le donnerions avec plaisir. Donnez-le lui avec son nouveau livre. Ne le leur prêtez pas si vous ne voulez<sup>10</sup> pas le perdre<sup>11</sup>. Ils se prêtent de l'argent. J'en reçois souvent des lettres. J'en ferai<sup>12</sup> un paquet pour votre frère. Où est votre ami? Il est en France avec sa mère. Il apprend<sup>13</sup> beaucoup en lisant<sup>14</sup> ces livres. Il y va<sup>15</sup> aujourd'hui avec ses cousins. Y en avez-vous?

We shall send<sup>16</sup> him some. Give it to him and he will give it to me to-morrow afternoon. We shall lend them to you. I have some flowers; have you any? Where does he go<sup>17</sup>? Do you receive any letters from them? Have you any friends there? No<sup>18</sup>, I have not any there. Do not say<sup>19</sup> it to them. I have not any relations in France, but I have some here. Do they write<sup>20</sup> often to each other? They write to one another every month. Will you give it to them?

1 will come, *viendrai* 2 write, *écrivent* 3 hated, *haïssaient* 4 struck, *frappa*  
5 has arrived, *est arrivé* 6 will learn, *apprendrez* 7 alluded, *faisait allusion*  
8 hangs, *est pendu* 9 dirai, shall say 10 voulez, wish 11 perdre, to lose  
12 ferai, shall make 13 apprend, learns 14 lisant, reading 15 va, goes  
16 shall send, *enverrons* 17 does he go, *va-t-il* 18 no, *non* 19 say, *dites*  
20 do they write, *écrivent-ils*

(\*) As the exercises of this lesson necessitate the use of several verbs, we have thought preferable not to give here any special exercise on a new tense of the verb *recevoir*.

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What is the place of personal pronouns when preceded by prepositions?
2. What are the respective places of the two personal pronouns, one being direct object and the other indirect object of the verb, when they are of different persons?
3. What are their places when they are both of the 3rd person?
4. What are their places when the verb is in the Imperative?
5. How are they placed when the verb being in the Imperative is accompanied by a negation?
6. What is the meaning of *se* before reciprocal verbs?
7. Does *en* always translate personal pronouns of the third person preceded by the preposition *of*?
8. What are the other meanings of *en*?
9. Does *y* always translate personal pronouns of the 3rd person preceded by the preposition *to*?
10. What is the other meaning of *y*?
11. What are the respective places of *y* and *en* when occurring together before the verb?

---

 Conversation.

- |                                                                                                       |                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| You have a fine dog; who gave it to you?                                                              | Vous avez un beau chien; qui vous l'a donné?                            |
| My cousin Charles gave it to me; but I shall return it to him.                                        | Mon cousin Charles me l'a donné; mais je le lui rendrai.                |
| Have you also some birds?                                                                             | Avez-vous aussi des oiseaux?                                            |
| Yes, I have some.                                                                                     | Oui, j'en ai.                                                           |
| How many have you (of them)?                                                                          | Combien en avez-vous?                                                   |
| I have six (of them).                                                                                 | J'en ai six.                                                            |
| Have you been in the garden? they are there.                                                          | Avez-vous été dans le jardin? ils y sont.                               |
| No, I have not been there.                                                                            | Non, je n'y ai pas été.                                                 |
| You have two canaries: will you ( <i>voulez-vous</i> ) give me one (of them)?                         | Vous avez deux canaris: voulez-vous m'en donner un?                     |
| With pleasure; but you will not give it to anybody.                                                   | Avec plaisir; mais vous ne le donnerez à personne.                      |
| No; if my best friend should ask ( <i>demandait</i> ) me (for) it, I would not give it to him.        | Non; si mon meilleur ami me le demandait, je ne le lui donnerais pas.   |
| You told ( <i>avez dit</i> ) me that you had some friends in Paris: have you still any of them there? | Vous m'avez dit que vous aviez des amis à Paris: y en avez-vous encore. |
| Yes, I have still two of them there.                                                                  | Oui, j'y en ai encore deux.                                             |

## Reading Exercise No. 15.

C'était à la fin du dîner, au moment où la conver-  
 sation s'anime et où les anecdotes les plus étranges, et les  
 plus incroyables éclosent sur les lèvres et souvent dans  
 l'imagination des convives. Mon oncle, fit signe qu'il  
 voulait parler. "Il y a quelques années," commença-t-il,  
 un de mes amis était à la veille de se marier; parmi les  
 présents qu'il avait faits à sa fiancée se trouvait une  
 bague d'un certain prix, et cette jeune personne la portait  
 au doigt en gage de leur engagement: lorsque, se promenant  
 un jour sur les bords de la rivière, elle se pencha pour  
 cueillir un nénuphar et la bague, qui était un peu trop  
 grande, glissa de son doigt et tomba dans l'eau. La jeune  
 fille était au désespoir: on fit, mais en vain, des recherches  
 à l'endroit où le bijou avait disparu. Ses parents et ses  
 amis lui conseillaient de rompre son engagement, effrayés  
 de ce qu'ils appelaient un mauvais présage. Elle persista  
 néanmoins. Le mariage eut lieu. Mais au repas de noces,  
 un énorme poisson ayant été servi, quelle fut la satisfaction  
 générale lorsqu'en le découpant, on y trouva ..... "La  
 bague," s'écrièrent tous les auditeurs à l'unisson! "La  
 chair la plus délicate et de très petites arêtes."

## Demonstrative Pronouns.

Demonstrative pronouns are used to point to persons or things which have just been named before or will be named immediately after the verb.

Demonstrative pronouns are as follows :

|                                  |       |
|----------------------------------|-------|
| <i>Ce, ceci, celui-ci, celui</i> | this  |
| <i>Ce, cela, celui-là, celui</i> | that  |
| <i>Ceux-ci, ceux</i>             | these |
| <i>Ceux-là, ceux</i>             | those |

REMARKS. 1.—*Ce*, pronoun is the same word as *ce*, demonstrative adjective (See Lesson 12). But, as a pronoun, *ce* is invariable, instead of assuming different forms in the feminine and plural. It translates indifferently *this, that, these, or those.*

*C'est ma sœur, this is my sister.*

*Ce sont mes frères, these are my brothers.*

*Ce* can only be used before the verb *être*, or the relative pronouns *qui, que, dont.*

*Ce sera la première fois, this will be the first time.*

*Dites-moi ce que vous pensez, tell me (that which) what you think.*

*Ce*, translates the personal pronouns, *he, she, it, they* before the auxiliary to *be*, when this verb is followed by a noun, (\*)pronoun verb in the infinitive, or adverb.

*C'est bien, it is right. Ce sont mes frères, they are my brothers*

*C'est mon ami, he is my friend. C'est moi, it is I.*

*Ce* is also used to translate *it* and *they* when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, when this adjective refers to an idea mentioned precedingly, but not to a noun.

*Apprenez à nager, c'est très utile, learn how to swim, it is very useful.*

II.—*Ceci*, this, and *cela* that, are formed from the same demonstrative pronoun *ce*, to which the adverbs *ci*, here, and *là*, there, have been added, in the same way as they are to nouns, preceded by demonstrative adjectives (See page 64).

*Ceci me plaît plus que cela, this pleases me more than that.*

*Je vous donnerai ceci ; mais vous me donnerez cela, I will give you this, but you will give me that.*

*Ceci* and *cela* can only be used in speaking of things or referring to whole sentences. *This* and *that* used in a general sense as complements of verbs are always translated *ceci* and *cela*.

*Je ferai plutôt ceci que cela, I will rather do this than that.*

---

(\*) However personal pronouns are used when the noun which follows the verb *être* is preceded by the indefinite article, which is not translated ; as,  
He is a doctor. *Il est médecin.*



|                               |                                |                            |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| to announce, <i>annoncer</i>  | happiness, <i>bonheur m.</i>   | postman, <i>facteur m.</i> |
| better, <i>meilleur</i>       | industrious, <i>laborieux</i>  | sight, <i>vue f.</i>       |
| convenient, <i>commode</i>    | more, <i>plus</i>              | still, <i>encore</i>       |
| to cost, <i>coûter</i>        | never, <i>jamais</i>           | than, <i>que</i>           |
| dear, <i>cher</i>             | night, <i>nuit f.</i>          | to think, <i>penser</i>    |
| easy, <i>facile</i>           | to occupy, <i>occuper</i>      | time, <i>fois f.</i>       |
| French, <i>français [f.]</i>  | only, <i>seulement</i>         | tongue, <i>langue f.</i>   |
| governess, <i>gouvernante</i> | to perceive, <i>apercevoir</i> | to work, <i>travailler</i> |

### Exercise No. 16.

1. This is my brother.—This is my sister.—These are my nephews.—Those are my nieces.—This will be difficult.—That would be very dear.—This was very convenient.—This is what (that which<sup>1</sup>) I think.—He is my friend.—She is my neighbour.—It is a good dog.—They are my cousins (*m.*).—It is well.—It is you.—This is better than that.—Do<sup>2</sup> this.—Do that.—I like this and you like that.—He gives me that.—This pleases<sup>3</sup> you.

(\*) They (*f.*) received—you received—did I receive?—he did not receive—I perceived—did you receive?—I received—we did not receive—we perceived—they did not perceive—she perceived—did he receive?—he received—didst thou receive?—you did not receive—she received—I did not receive—you perceived—we received—she did not receive—did we receive?—did they (*m.*) receive?—they (*f.*) did not receive—thou receivedst—did I perceive?—thou didst not receive—They (*m.*) perceived—did they (*f.*) receive?—he did not perceive—they (*m.*) received.

2. C'est mon père. C'est ma mère. Ce sont des soldats. C'est lui. C'est une femme heureuse. Ce sont des enfants laborieux. Ce n'est pas ce que<sup>4</sup> vous m'avez dit<sup>5</sup>. Ceci me plaît plus que cela. Ceci est facile; cela est difficile. Donnez-moi cela. Ceci coûte plus cher<sup>6</sup> que cela. Il donne ceci à mon frère et cela à ma sœur. Je recevais cela chaque jour. Vous receviez ceci. C'est moi. Est-ce vous? Ce n'est pas mon ami. Était-ce son frère? Recevez cela.

He is an officer in the French army. She was a governess in my cousin's family. This is a good book. This is what (that which) you gave me the other day. I received this and you received that. That costs twenty-two pounds. I have given that to the postman. I give you this and that. Do what (that which) you have promised.<sup>7</sup> This will be the first time. She was a very good woman. It is a pretty sight. Those are my boots. I have said<sup>8</sup> that to the soldier. What<sup>9</sup> do you take<sup>10</sup>: this or that? This is a very convenient<sup>b</sup> house<sup>a</sup>. She is a pretty girl.

1 which, *que* 2 do, *faites* 3 pleases, *plait*

4 *que*, which 5 *dit*, said 6 *plus cher*, dearer

7 promised, *promis* 8 said, *dit* 9 what, *que* 10 do you take, *prenez-vous*

(\*) See the Imperfect of the verb *recevoir*, to receive (Supplement, p.p. 12, 18 & 19).



## Questions on Grammar.

1. What are demonstrative pronouns?
2. Give the four pronouns which translate *this*?
3. Give the four pronouns which translate *that*?
4. How do you translate *these*?
5. How do you translate *those*?
6. What is the difference between *ce* adjective and *ce* pronoun?
7. Before what words can *ce* be used?
8. When does *ce* translate *he, she, it, they*?
9. When does *ce* translate *it* and *they*, the verb *être* being followed by an adjective?
10. What is the derivation of *ceci*?
11. When can *ceci* be used to translate *this*, after a verb?

## Conversation.

|                                                                           |                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| How do you find this?                                                     | Comment trouvez-vous ceci?                                  |
| I find this better than that.                                             | Je trouve ceci meilleur que cela.                           |
| How much does this cost?                                                  | Combien coûte ceci?                                         |
| This costs three pounds.                                                  | Ceci coûte trois livres sterling.                           |
| What is the price of that?                                                | Quel est le prix de cela?                                   |
| That is worth ( <i>vaut</i> ) thirty pounds.                              | Cela vaut trente livres sterling.                           |
| Give me this.                                                             | Donnez-moi ceci.                                            |
| No, I shall give you that.                                                | Non, je vous donnerai cela.                                 |
| Is it cheap?                                                              | Est-ce bon marché?                                          |
| No, it is dearer than the other.                                          | Non, c'est plus cher que l'autre.                           |
| Who ( <i>qui</i> ) received (has received) this?                          | Qui a reçu ceci?                                            |
| It is the gentleman who occupies the rooms on the first floor.            | C'est le monsieur qui occupe les chambres du premier étage. |
| Who is the most industrious, your brother or you?                         | Qui est le plus laborieux: votre frère ou vous?             |
| (It is) my brother.                                                       | C'est mon frère.                                            |
| Tell me ( <i>dites-moi</i> ) if the governess finds her rooms convenient. | Dites-moi si l'institutrice trouve ses chambres commodes.   |
| I do not know ( <i>je ne sais pas</i> ) (that).                           | Je ne sais pas cela.                                        |
| Here is ( <i>voici</i> ) the postman.                                     | Voici le facteur.                                           |
| For whom are the letters?                                                 | Pour qui sont les lettres?                                  |
| This is for my father; those are for my cousin.                           | Celle-ci est pour mon père; celles-là sont pour mon cousin. |

## Reading Exercise No. 16.

Lord Macartney avait occupé une position honorifique  
honorary  
 dans l'armée et il se vantait non seulement de n'avoir  
boasted  
 jamais rien demandé, mais encore d'avoir refusé les faveurs  
anything  
 qui lui avaient été offertes. Il ne connaissait pas, disait-  
which offered „ knew said  
 il, de plus grand bonheur que celui d'être indépendant et  
any independent  
 de faire ce qui lui plaisait. Le roi, ayant été instruit de  
to do which pleased informed  
 cela, voulut voir si cette opinion était sincère. Un jour  
wished to see  
 donc il le prit à part et lui demanda mystérieusement s'il  
then took aside mysteriously  
 savait l'espagnol. "Non, Sire," répondit Macartney, mais  
knew Spanish answered  
 je l'apprendrai immédiatement, si cela fait plaisir à votre  
shall learn immediately does  
 majesté." "Oui, vraiment," répliqua le roi, "je vous le  
replied  
 conseille, et vous aurez à vous en féliciter." Macartney  
advise yourself forit to congratulate  
 conclut de cette simple conversation que le roi avait l'in-  
concluded simple  
 tention de lui confier quelque importante mission diplo-  
entrust important  
 matique. Il se mit à travailler jour et nuit, et trois mois  
himself put  
 après il annonçait au roi qu'il savait parfaitement la langue  
perfectly  
 espagnole. "Tant mieux," répondit le roi, "cela vous  
So much the better  
 permettra de lire Don Quichotte dans l'original."  
will allow Quixoto

The Demonstrative Pronoun (*concluded*).

III.—*Celui-ci*, this, is derived from *ce*, this, *lui*, he and *ci*, here. It is used in speaking of persons or things every time it is necessary to indicate that the person or thing pointed to is of the masculine gender and singular number, and is nearer to the speaker than another person or thing; *celui-là* (that-he-there) being used to point to the farther.

Vous voyez ces deux chevaux : *celui-ci* est plus cher que *celui-là*. You see these two horses : *this one* is dearer than *that*.

*Celui-ci* and *celui-là* are often translated *the latter* and *the former*.

Mon père et mon frère sont partis ; *celui-là* va à Paris et *celui-ci* va à Rome. My father and brother have departed ; *the former* goes to Paris and *the latter* goes to Rome.

*Ceux-ci*, these, and *ceux-là*, those, derived from *ce-eux-ci* or *là* refer to a masculine plural noun.

Avez-vous vu les officiers et les soldats ; *ceux-là* ont de plus beaux uniformes que *ceux-ci* ? Have you seen the officers and soldiers ; *those* have finer uniforms than *these*.

*Celles-ci*, these, or *celles-là*, those, *ce*, *elles*, *ci* or *là* point to a feminine plural noun.

De ces fleurs, *celles-ci* sont plus belles que *celles-là*. Of these flowers *these* are more beautiful than *those*.

IV.—*Celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, derived respectively from *ce-lui*, *ce-elle*, *ce-eux*, *ce-elles* are used in the same manner as *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, &c., but before relative pronouns and prepositions only, the adverbs *ci* and *là* being no longer necessary to point more accurately.

J'aime cette maison, mais je préfère *celle* de mon père. I like this house, but I prefer *that* of my father (my father's).

Ces livres sont intéressants ; mais je préfère *ceux* que vous m'avez donnés hier. These books are interesting, but I prefer *those* which you gave me yesterday.

*Celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles* translate indifferently *this* or *that*, and *these* or *those*.

They often translate *the one* or *the ones* and the personal pronouns *he*, *she*, *him*, *it*, *they*, *them* before relative pronouns.

Ce n'est pas *celui* que je pensais. It is not *the one* I thought.

Je connais *celui* qui a dit cela. I know *him* who said that.

|                             |                                 |                            |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| author, <i>auteur m.</i>    | to deceive, <i>décevoir</i>     | polite, <i>poli</i>        |
| bill, <i>note f.</i>        | to flatter, <i>flatter</i>      | rare, <i>rare</i>          |
| to buy, <i>acheter</i>      | grammar, <i>grammaire f.</i>    | soup, <i>soupe f.</i>      |
| cake, <i>gâteau m.</i>      | grandfather, <i>grand-père</i>  | spacious, <i>spacieux</i>  |
| clear, <i>clair</i>         | to inhabit, <i>habiter [m.]</i> | stream, <i>ruisseau m.</i> |
| coin, <i>pièce f.</i>       | learned, <i>instruit</i>        | to study, <i>étudier</i>   |
| cold, <i>froid</i>          | object, <i>objet m.</i>         | tailor, <i>tailleur m.</i> |
| to compose, <i>composer</i> | piece, <i>pièce f.</i>          | warm, <i>chaud</i>         |
|                             |                                 | yesterday, <i>hier</i>     |

### Exercise No. 17.

1. I like this horse; but I do not like that.—This one is good: that one is bad.—Give me this book and I shall give you that.—I understand<sup>1</sup> this rule, but I do not understand that.—These houses are more spacious than those.—My pen is worse than this.—Your garden is prettier than that.—These birds are rarer than those.—This book is not my father's (that of my father).—These gloves are my grandfather's (those of my grandfather).—This wine is that which<sup>2</sup> I bought (have bought) this morning. I like him who is a good son.

(\*) We shall receive—I shall not receive—shall I receive?—they (*f.*) will not receive—will he receive?—I shall receive—will you not receive?—he will not receive—they (*m.*) will receive—we shall not receive—he will receive—they (*m.*) will not receive—wilt thou receive?—she will not receive—shall we receive?—you will receive—I will deceive—will you receive?—shall we not deceive?—shall I not receive?—she will receive—thou wilt receive—you will not receive—they (*f.*) will receive—thou wilt not receive.

2. De ces deux jeunes filles, celle-ci est plus instruite que celle-là. Ces grammaires-ci sont meilleures que celles-là. Ces messieurs-ci sont plus polis que ceux-là. Ce ruisseau-ci est plus clair que celui-là. Cette eau-ci est plus froide que celle-là. Cette soupe-ci est plus chaude que celle-là. Ce vin-ci est bon, mais celui de mon père est meilleur. J'ai vu<sup>3</sup> le chien de votre frère, mais je n'ai pas vu celui de son ami. J'aime cette couleur-ci mais je n'aime pas celle de la robe de votre cousine.

He who studies every day will soon become<sup>4</sup> learned. These boots are not the ones I bought the other day. That glass is larger than your friend's (that of your friend). Give me these coins and I will give you those. I have received<sup>5</sup> my tailor's bill, I shall receive my shoemaker's<sup>6</sup> this morning<sup>a</sup>. We have received your cousin's visit, we shall receive that of his friend this afternoon. We like this house, we do not like that. These chairs are better than those. This gentleman writes<sup>6</sup> quicker than that one. This ink is clearer than that.

<sup>1</sup> understand, *comprends*    <sup>2</sup> which, *que*

<sup>3</sup> *vu*, seen

<sup>4</sup> will become, *deviendra*    <sup>5</sup> received, *reçu*    <sup>6</sup> writes, *écrit*

(<sup>a</sup>) See Future of *recevoir*, and the conjugation of verbs interrogatively and negatively (Supplement, p. p. 12, 18 & 19).

## Questions on Grammar.

1. From what words is *celui-ci* derived?
2. When is *celui-ci* used to translate *this*?
3. Give the etymology of *celui-là*?
4. What is the feminine of *celui-ci* and *celui-là*?
5. What is the plural masculine of *celui-ci*; from what is it derived?
6. Give the plural feminine of *celui-là* and its etymology?
7. When are *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, used instead of *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*?
8. How are *the one who* (or *he who*) translated?
9. How do you translate *he who*?

## Conversation.

- |                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Which stuff will you take ( <i>prenez-vous</i> ) this one or that?                                              | Quelle étoffe prendrez-vous; celle-ci ou celle-là?                                                      |
| I shall take ( <i>je prendrai</i> ) this one; but I think that one is better, only it is too dear for me.       | Je prendrai celle-ci, mais je pense que celle-là est meilleure; seulement elle est trop chère pour moi. |
| Take ( <i>prenez</i> ) that one: it will last ( <i>durera</i> ) longer ( <i>plus longtemps</i> ).               | Prenez celle-là: elle durera plus longtemps.                                                            |
| Is it not the one which ( <i>que</i> ) you have sold ( <i>vendue</i> ) to my friend Mrs. ... ( <i>Madame</i> )? | N'est-ce pas celle que vous avez vendue à mon amie, Madame...?                                          |
| No it is that which ( <i>que</i> ) I showed ( <i>ai montrée</i> ) you in the other room.                        | Non c'est celle que je vous ai montrée dans l'autre chambre.                                            |
| What ( <i>quel</i> ) is the price of that?                                                                      | Quel est le prix de celle-là?                                                                           |
| That costs two francs and fifty centimes a ( <i>le</i> ) metre ( <i>mètre</i> ).                                | Celle-là coûte deux francs cinquante centimes le mètre?                                                 |
| Are these gloves those which ( <i>que</i> ) my sister saw (has seen) ( <i>vus</i> ) yesterday?                  | Ces gants sont-ils ceux que ma sœur a vus hier?                                                         |
| No, Miss ( <i>Mademoiselle</i> ), they are not the same.                                                        | Non, Mademoiselle; ce ne sont pas les mêmes.                                                            |
| Is this parcel mine ( <i>le mien</i> )?                                                                         | Ce paquet-ci est-il le mien?                                                                            |
| No, it is Mrs.'s... (that of Mrs....).                                                                          | Non, c'est celui de Madame ...                                                                          |
| Will you send ( <i>enverrez</i> ) that to my hotel?                                                             | Enverrez-vous celui-là à mon hôtel?                                                                     |
| Yes, Madam, with the greatest pleasure.                                                                         | Oui, Madame, avec le plus grand plaisir.                                                                |



## Reading Exercise No. 17.

*Un* poète avait *un* jour composé une pièce de vers  
 . poet . . . . . verses  
 sur les gâteaux que faisait *un* pâtissier renommé de la ville  
 . . . which made . . . pastry-cook renowned . . . .  
 qu'il habitait. Le pâtissier, quoiqu'il ne cultivât pas  
 which . inhabited . . . though . „ cultivated .  
 beaucoup les Muses, fut cependant flatté dans son orgueil,  
 . . . — . however . . . . .  
 à la réception d'un exemplaire de cette poésie: il voulut  
 . . . — . . . copy . . . poetry . wished  
 en témoigner sa satisfaction à l'auteur et crut qu'il ne  
 forit to show . . . — . . . believed . . . no  
 pouvait mieux faire que de lui envoyer un des objets qui  
 could better do than . . . to send . . . which  
 avaient éveillé son inspiration. Le poète reçut d'abord  
 . awaken . . . — . . . received at first  
 cet envoi avec plaisir et se mit à déguster le chef-d'œuvre  
 . message . . . himself put . taste . master-piece  
 appétissant; mais quelle ne fut pas son humiliation en  
 relishing . what „ . . . . . on  
 découvrant que le pâtissier s'était servi de la pièce de vers  
 discovering . . . . . had made use . . . — : .  
 elle-même pour le faire cuire au four. Il lui écrivit donc  
 itself for . to make cook in the . . . . . wrote then  
 une lettre indignée, où il l'accusait du crime de lèse-poésie  
 . . . indignant where . . . . . — . offence against poetry  
 “De quoi vous plaignez-vous?” lui répondit le pâtissier;  
 . what yourself complain . . . . . answered . . . .  
 “Je n'ai fait qu'imiter vos procédés. Vous aviez fait une  
 „ . done but to imitate . proceedings . . . . . made .  
 poésie sur mes gâteaux et, moi, j'ai fait un gâteau sur  
 . . . . .  
 votre poésie.”

## EIGHTEENTH LESSON.

## Dix-huitième Leçon.

## Possessive Pronouns.

Possessive Pronouns are those which express possession. They are as follows :

| SINGULAR.       |                  | PLURAL.           |                    |                |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| Masc.           | Fem.             | Masc.             | Fem.               |                |
| <i>le mien</i>  | <i>la mienne</i> | <i>les miens</i>  | <i>les miennes</i> | mine           |
| <i>le tien</i>  | <i>la tienne</i> | <i>les tiens</i>  | <i>les tiennes</i> | thine          |
| <i>le sien</i>  | <i>la sienne</i> | <i>les siens</i>  | <i>les siennes</i> | his, hers, its |
| <i>le nôtre</i> | <i>la nôtre</i>  | <i>les nôtres</i> | <i>les nôtres</i>  | ours           |
| <i>le vôtre</i> | <i>la vôtre</i>  | <i>les vôtres</i> | <i>les vôtres</i>  | yours          |
| <i>le leur</i>  | <i>la leur</i>   | <i>les leurs</i>  | <i>les leurs</i>   | theirs         |

REMARKS. I.—It must be noticed that the *o* of *nôtre* and *vôtre*, when pronouns, has the circumflex accent, which does not exist in *notre* and *votre*, possessive adjectives.

II.—The words *nôtre*, *vôtre* and *leur* do not change in the feminine.

III.—The rule given in Lesson 13 for possessive adjectives of the the third person must also be applied to possessive pronouns ; thus,

*ce livre et le sien*, translates as well this book and *his*, as this book and *hers*.

To avoid the lack of precision which may result from it, when it is necessary to indicate to whom an object belongs, possession is expressed by the verb *être*, to be, followed by the preposition *à* and the disjunctive personal pronouns.

*Etre* is in such cases the translation of the English verb *to belong*.

Ce livre est *à lui*, this book is *his* or belongs *to him*.

Ce livre est *à elle*, this book is *hers* or belongs *to her*.

Cette maison est *à moi*, this house is *mine* or belongs *to me*.

Ces chevaux sont *à nous*, these horses are *ours* or belong *to us*.

IV.—*Le mien*, *le tien*, *le sien*, &c., are generally used instead of *à moi*, *à toi*, *à lui* or *à elle*, when it is necessary to make a distinction between different objects of the same kind.

Ce chapeau-ci est *le mien*, celui-là est *le vôtre*. This hat is *mine*, that one is *yours*.

Cette maison-là est *la leur*, celle-ci est *la nôtre*. That house is *theirs*, this one is *ours*.

to address, *adresser*  
 already, *déjà*  
 boat *bateau m.*  
 to dare, *oser*  
 deep, *profond*  
 demand, *demande f.*  
 to desire, *désirer*  
 dictionary, *dictionnaire m.*

face, *figure f.*  
 fine, *beau*  
 to frighten, *effrayer*  
 jewel, *bijou m.*  
 key, *clef f.*  
 to lend, *prêter*  
 Miss, *Mademoiselle f.*  
 now, *maintenant*

to oblige, *obliger*  
 project, *projet m.*  
 refusal, *refus m.*  
 to refuse, *refuser*  
 sigh, *soupir m.*  
 spoon, *cuiller f.*  
 umbrella, *parapluie m.*  
 young lady, *demoiselle f.*

### Exercise No. 18.

1. This dog is mine,—that flower is thine,—these shoes are his,—these boots are hers,—these keys are ours,—those rooms are yours,—these children are theirs,—that fork is mine,—this knife is thine,—this spoon is his,—these jewels are ours,—those plates are yours,—these dishes are theirs,—this hat belongs to me,—that coat belongs to thee,—this stick belongs to him,—that dress belongs to her,—the large house belongs to us,—the small garden belongs to you,—the fine carriage belongs to them (*m.*),—that residence belongs to them (*f.*).

(\*) We should receive—should I receive?—thou wouldst not receive—would he receive?—I should receive—would you receive?—they would receive—they (*m.*) would not receive—you would receive—should we receive?—should we not receive?—thou wouldst receive—would they (*m.*) receive?—I should deceive—wouldst thou receive?—he would not receive—we should not deceive—he would receive—would she receive?

2. Cet enfant-ci est le mien. Ce chat est-il à vous? Je recevrais sa lettre aujourd'hui; quand recevrait-il la mienne? J'ai reçu<sup>1</sup> leur visite ce matin, je recevrai la sienne cette après-midi; quand recevrai-je la vôtre. Cette pendule est à moi. Ces gants-ci sont-ils les vôtres? ceux-ci sont les miens. Cette montre est-elle à vous? Vous avez reçu vos robes, quand recevrons-nous les nôtres? Ces livres sont à eux. Ces albums<sup>2</sup> sont à elles.

I have read<sup>3</sup> your lesson<sup>4</sup>, I shall read<sup>5</sup> his now. Give me your book and I will give you mine. This boat belongs to me, that one belongs to them (*m.*). Is this gun yours or is it mine? This umbrella is mine, that one is hers. He lent me his horse and I lent him mine. This dictionary belongs to me. If I received your friend, would you receive mine? Your shoemaker is good; ours is very bad. I gave (have given) him his hat, he gave me mine.

<sup>1</sup> reçu, received    <sup>2</sup> albums, albums

<sup>3</sup> read, lu    <sup>4</sup> lesson, devoir    <sup>5</sup> shall read, lirai

(\*) See the Conditional of *recevoir*, and the conjugation of verbs used negatively and interrogatively (Supplement, p. 12, 18 & 19).

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What are possessive pronouns?
2. What are the possessive pronouns which translate *mine*?
3. What are those which translate *thine*?
4. Translate *his, hers, its*.
5. Translate *ours*.
6. Translate *yours*.
7. Translate *theirs*.
8. Translate *this pen is his* and *this pen is hers*.
9. What is the way to translate *his* and *hers* by different expressions?
10. When must *le mien, le tien, &c.* be used instead of *à moi, à toi, &c.*

## Conversation.

|                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Whose ( <i>à qui</i> ) are these umbrellas?                                                                            | A qui sont ces parapluies?                                                                       |
| The white one is mine, the brown is theirs, and I think that the green is yours.                                       | Le blanc est le mien; le brun est le leur et je pense que le vert est le vôtre.                  |
| Give me mine if you please.                                                                                            | Donnez-moi le mien, s'il vous plaît.                                                             |
| Here it is.                                                                                                            | Le voici.                                                                                        |
| Of these horses which ( <i>lequel</i> ) do you prefer, his or mine?                                                    | De ces chevaux, le quel préférez-vous le sien ou le mien?                                        |
| I prefer yours.                                                                                                        | Je préfère le vôtre.                                                                             |
| To whom ( <i>à qui</i> ) does this book belong?                                                                        | A qui est ce livre.                                                                              |
| It belongs to me.                                                                                                      | Il est à moi.                                                                                    |
| Which ( <i>quelle</i> ) is the pen that belongs to you, this or that?                                                  | Quelle est la plume qui est à vous: celle-ci ou celle-là?                                        |
| This is mine, that is your cousin's.                                                                                   | Celle-ci est la mienne: celle-là est à votre cousin.                                             |
| Do these dogs belong to them?                                                                                          | Ces chiens sont-ils à eux?                                                                       |
| No, they belong to us; they were theirs, but they gave them to us a few weeks ago ( <i>il y a quelques semaines</i> ). | Non, ils sont à nous: ils étaient à eux, mais ils nous les ont donnés, il y a quelques semaines. |
| When will you go ( <i>irez-vous</i> ) to their country-house ( <i>maison de campagne</i> )?                            | Quand irez-vous à leur maison de campagne?                                                       |
| We shall not go to theirs but to ours.                                                                                 | Nous n'irons pas à la leur, mais à la nôtre.                                                     |
| Is this overcoat yours, or is it mine?                                                                                 | Ce pardessus est-il le vôtre, ou est-ce le mien?                                                 |
| It is mine; yours is in the ante-room.                                                                                 | C'est le mien; le vôtre est dans l'antichambre.                                                  |

## Reading Exercise No. 18.

*Un jeune garçon d'environ douze ans* accosta *un jour*  
 . . . . . about . . . . . accosted . . .  
 une demoiselle qui passait dans une des rues les plus  
 . . . . . who was passing . . . . .  
 fréquentées de Paris avec sa gouvernante, et lui demanda  
 frequented . . . . .  
 de lui donner un franc comme aumône. "Comment," lui  
 . . . . . as alms . . . . .  
 dit la jeune fille, "osez-vous adresser une telle demande  
 said . . . . .  
 aux passants?" "Je vous en prie, Mademoiselle," ré-  
 . . . . . passers by . . . . . of it beg . . . . .  
 pondit le jeune garçon, "ne me refusez pas ce que je vous  
 answered . . . . . which . . . . .  
 demande; votre refus m'obligerait à prendre une terrible  
 . . . . . to take . . . . .  
 résolution." Et comme il n'obtenait pas ce qu'il désirait,  
 . . . . . obtained . . . . . which . . . . .  
 il s'éloigna avec un profond soupir. La jeune fille, effrayée  
 . . . . . went away . . . . .  
 de la consternation qui était peinte sur son visage, craignit  
 . . . . . which . . . . . painted . . . . . feared  
 qu'il ne pensât à accomplir quelque funeste projet, et ne  
 . . . . . might think . . . . . accomplish . . . . . fatal . . . . .  
 voulant pas avoir à se reprocher d'avoir été la cause  
 wishing . . . . . to reproach . . . . .  
 indirecte d'un malheur, elle fit rappeler le mendiant et lui  
 . . . . . made recall . . . . . beggar . . . . .  
 donna les vingt sous qu'il sollicitait. Puis elle voulut  
 . . . . . half pence . . . . . solicited . . . . . Then . . . . . wished  
 savoir quelle était l'extrême résolution à laquelle il faisait  
 to know what . . . . . which . . . . . made  
 allusion quelques minutes auparavant. "Oh! Mademoi-  
 . . . . . before . . . . .  
 selle," répondit-il, "je me voyais déjà obligé de travailler."  
 answered . . . . . myself was already . . . . .



## Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

Relative pronouns are those which relate to other words which precede and are called their antecedents. They are as follows :

|            |                                               |                          |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Invariable | <i>Qui</i>                                    | who, which, that, whom   |
|            | <i>Que</i>                                    | whom, which, that, what  |
|            | <i>Quoi</i>                                   | what                     |
|            | <i>Dont</i>                                   | whose, of whom, of which |
| Variable   | <i>Quel, quelle, quels, quelles</i>           | whoever, whatever        |
|            | <i>Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles</i> | which, what              |

Interrogative pronouns are those which are used at the beginning of an interrogative sentence. They have no antecedents.

They are as follows :

|            |                                               |                  |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Invariable | <i>Qui</i>                                    | who, whom, which |
|            | <i>Que</i>                                    | what             |
|            | <i>Quoi</i>                                   | what             |
| Variable   | <i>Quel, quelle, quels, quelles</i>           | which, what      |
|            | <i>Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles</i> | which, what      |

REMARKS. I.—*Whom* is translated by *qui* at the beginning of interrogative sentences and after prepositions:—*Qui connaissez vous ? whom do you know ?*

*Le monsieur avec qui vous êtes venu. The gentleman with whom you came.*

In ordinary sentences *qui* translates indifferently *who* or *which*.

*L'homme qui est là. The man who is there.*

*Le livre qui est intéressant. The book which is interesting.*

II.—*Que* translates *whom* or *which* in the middle of sentences, and *what* at the beginning of interrogative sentences.

*L'homme que je connais. The man whom I know.*

*Le livre que je lis. The book which I read.*

*Que dites vous ? What do you say ?*

III.—*Quoi* can only be used by itself or after prepositions.

*Quoi ? what ? De quoi parlez-vous ? of what do you speak ?*

IV.—*Dont* translates *whose, of whom, of which* in the middle of sentences, but can never be used at the beginning.

*L'enfant dont vous êtes le père. The child whose father you are.*

V.—*Quel, quelle, &c.*, translate *which* or *what* in referring to nouns which are placed after the verb *to be*.

*Quelle est cette fleur ? what is this flower ?*

Placed before *que* it is used in the sense of *whoever, whatever*.

*Quel qu'il soit je le verrai. Whoever he may be I shall see him.*

VI.—*Lequel, laquelle, &c.*, translate *which* or *what* in referring to nouns already mentioned or before nouns from which they are separated by *de*.

*Voici deux fleurs, laquelle préférez-vous ? Here are two flowers, which do you prefer ? Lequel de ces deux livres ? Which of these two books ?*

VII.—*Duquel, auquel, desquels, auxquels, &c.*, translate *of which, to which, &c.*, and must be used instead of *de qui, à qui, &c.*, which can never be used in speaking of *animals* or *things*.

*Le chien duquel je parle, the dog of which I speak.*

branch, *branche f.*  
 to bring, *apporter*  
 to build, *bâtir*  
 castle *château m.*  
 to hear, *entendre*  
 to hope, *espérer*  
 hunger, *faim f.*  
 loaf, *miche, pain f.*

merchant, *marchand m.*  
 mountain, *montagne f.*  
 music, *musique f.*  
 narrow, *étroit*  
 nearly, *presque*  
 player, *joueur m.*  
 portrait, *portrait m.*  
 to publish, *publier*

pupil, *élève m.*  
 to seek, *chercher*  
 spot, *endroit m.*  
 taste, *goût m.*  
 to wait, *attendre*  
 why, *pourquoi*  
 without, *sans*  
 wolf, *loup m.*

### Exercise No. 19.

1. Who is there?—The child who is in the room.—The book which is on the table.—The horse that is in the street.—Whom do you like?—The cousin whom you like.—The bird which you sell.—The dog that I saw<sup>1</sup>.—What do you like?—What?—Of what do you speak?—The merchant whose son he is (of whom he is the son).—The master from whom he brings a letter.—The grammar of which we speak.—What is your name?—Of these two flowers, which do you give me?—Which (*m. p.*) do you like?—Which (*f. p.*) do you buy?

(\*) We sell—do I sell(†)?—he does not sell—they (*m.*) do not sell—do they (*m.*) sell?—does he sell?—I sell—we hear—they (*f.*) wait—do you hear?—I do not hear—I do not sell—he sells—dost thou sell?—we do not sell—thou sellest—you do not sell—they (*m.*) hear—you sell—I hear—he does not wait—they (*f.*) sell—do we sell?—she does not sell—she sells—do they (*f.*) sell?—I wait—you hear—does she sell?—thou dost not sell—they (*m.*) sell—do you sell?

2. De qui avez-vous reçu cette lettre? Qui est dans la chambre? Lequel achèterez-vous? De quoi? Que dites<sup>2</sup>-vous? A qui parlez-vous? Dans quoi mettrez<sup>3</sup>-vous cela? Lequel de ces habits donnez-vous à ces pauvres enfants? Quel est votre chapeau? Le lit qui est dans ma chambre est très large; celui que vous avez est très étroit. Le château dont vous voyez les tours est celui qui a été bâti l'année<sup>b</sup> dernière<sup>a</sup>. De qui vient cette lettre? Sur lequel étiez-vous? Les amis que vous avez sont très fidèles. Desquels? Auxquelles avez-vous écrit<sup>4</sup>? Que vendez-vous? Qui recevrez-vous aujourd'hui?

In which (*f. s.*) is your book? What is that? Whom have you seen<sup>5</sup> this afternoon? I have seen the gentleman whom you know<sup>6</sup>. What do you sell? Who speaks? I have the portrait which has been published (the) last<sup>b</sup> week<sup>a</sup>. The boys who are in the room are my brother's pupils. The apples which you sell are not good. I hear your sister's voice who speaks in the other room. (For) Whom do you wait? I wait (for) the lady who wrote<sup>7</sup> to me the other day.

1 I saw, *je vis* 2 dites, say 3 mettez, will put 4 écrit, written

5 seen, *vu* 6 know, *connaissez* 7 wrote, *a écrit*

(\*) See the Present Indicative of *rendre*, to render (Supplement, page 13).

(†) *Est-ce que je vends.*

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What are relative pronouns?
2. What are interrogative pronouns?
3. Which are the invariable relative pronouns?
4. Which are the variable interrogative pronouns?
5. When does *qui* translate *whom*?
6. When does *que* translate *what*?
7. When does *quoi* translate *what*?
8. When can *dont* be used to translate *whose, of whom, of which*?
9. When does *quel* translate *which* or *what*?
10. When is *lequel* used to translate *which* or *what*?
11. When must *lequel, laquelle, duquel, &c.*, be used instead of *qui, que, dont*?

## Conversation.

Which of these gentlemen is your brother?

It is he who is before the table.

What is he doing (*fait-il*)?

He is reading (*lit*) the book which you lent him the other day.

What is this gentleman's name?

I do not know (*ne sais pas*); ask (to) the gentleman who is standing (*debout*) near (*près de*) the window.

Of what are they speaking (*parlent-ils*)?

They speak of the news which is contained (*contenue*) in to-day's papers (*les journaux d'aujourd'hui*)?

What is this news?

The large bell which has been cast (*fondue*) for St. Paul's cathedral arrived (is arrived) yesterday morning.

What do they say (*dit-on*) about (*à propos de*) politics?

It is said (*on dit*) that we shall have war with Egypt and that Turkey will be our ally.

Lequel de ces Messieurs est votre frère?

C'est celui qui est devant la table?

Que fait-il?

Il lit le livre que vous lui avez prêté l'autre jour.

Quel est le nom de ce monsieur?

Je ne sais pas; demandez au monsieur qui est debout près de la fenêtre.

De quoi parlent-ils?

Ils parlent de la nouvelle qui est contenue dans les journaux d'aujourd'hui.

Quelle est cette nouvelle?

La grosse cloche qui a été fondue pour la cathédrale de Saint-Paul est arrivée hier matin.

Que dit-on à propos de politique?

On dit que nous aurons la guerre avec l'Egypte et que la Turquie sera notre alliée.

## Reading Exercise No. 19.

Un joueur de cornemuse traversant un jour les montagnes  
 . . . . . bagpipe crossing . . . . .  
 de l'Ulster en Irlande, rencontra un loup affamé. L'endroit  
 . . . . . Ireland . . . . . hungry . . . . .  
 était entièrement désert; il n'y avait aucune habitation à  
 . . . . . entirely — . . . there was no dwelling . . . . .  
 proximité, où le pauvre ménétrier pût essayer de chercher  
 — . . . . . minstrel could try . . . . .  
 refuge, ni même aucun arbre sur les branches duquel il  
 — nor even . . . . . — of which . . . . .  
 pût grimper. Que faire pour se tirer d'un danger aussi  
 . . . . . climb What to do . . . himself to get out of . . . so  
 pressant? Le malheureux se rappela qu'il avait dans sa  
 pressing . . . . . remembered . . . . .  
 valise une miche de pain presque tout entière et un petit  
 wallet . . . . . quite entire . . . . .  
 morceau de viande. Peut-être pourrait-il assouvir la faim  
 piece . . . . . could . . . to satiate . . . . .  
 de l'animal en lui abandonnant ces provisions: il les lui  
 . . . — in . . . abandoning . . . — . . . . .  
 jeta morceau par morceau; mais hélas! sans en obtenir le  
 threw piece . . . . . alas . . . from it to obtain . . . . .  
 résultat qu'il avait espéré. Il fallait donc avoir recours  
 . . . . . hoped . . . was necessary then . . . recourse  
 à un autre moyen, et il n'imagina rien de mieux que d'avoir  
 . . . another expedient . . . „ imagined . . . better . . . . .  
 recours à sa cornemuse. Quel ne fut pas son contentement,  
 . . . . . „ . . . . . satisfaction  
 quand, aux premiers sons qu'il en tira, le loup se mit à  
 . . . . . from it drew . . . . . put . . . . .  
 s'enfuir dans la direction des montagnes avec plus de ra-  
 fly . . . . . — . . . . .  
 pidité qu'il n'en était venu quelques instants auparavant.  
 — . . . „ from them . . . come . . . — before  
 “Coquin,” s'écria le pauvre ménétrier, “pourquoi n'ai-je  
 Rascal exclaimed . . . . . minstrel . . . . .  
 pas connu tes goûts plus tôt; tu peux être certain que je  
 known . . . . . canst . . . . .  
 t'aurais donné le dessert avant le souper.”  
 . . . given . . . before supper.



## Indefinite Pronouns.

Indefinite pronouns are those which refer to persons or things in an indefinite manner.

The following is a list of them :

*quelqu'un; quelqu'une (f)*, some one, somebody, anybody  
*quelques-uns, quelques-unes*, some ones, some, any, a few  
*chacun, chacune*, each one, every one  
*aucun, aucune*, no one, none  
*nul*, no one, none  
*l'un, l'une*, the one  
*l'autre*, the other  
*l'un l'autre, l'une autre*, each other, one another  
*l'un et l'autre, l'une et l'autre*, both  
*l'un ou l'autre, l'une ou l'autre*, either  
*ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre*, neither  
*(\*) l'un à l'autre, l'une à l'autre*, to one another, to each other  
*un autre, une autre*, another  
*autrui, d'autres*, others  
*tout le monde*, everybody  
*personne*, nobody  
*tout*, everything  
*tous*, all  
*rien*, nothing  
*quelque chose*, something  
*quiconque*, whoever  
*le même, la même*, the same  
*on*, one, they, people

REMARKS. 1.—*L'un, l'autre, l'un l'autre, l'une l'autre, &c.* become in the plural *les uns, les autres, les uns les autres, les unes les autres, &c.*

II.—*Chacun, aucun, tout le monde, autrui, personne, quiconque, rien*, are never used in the plural.

III.—*Aucun, ni l'un ni l'autre, personne, rien*, require the verb to be preceded by the particle *ne*.

*Personne ne me connaît.* Nobody knows me.

*Je n'ai rien.* I have nothing.

IV.—*L'un l'autre, l'un à l'autre*, expressing reciprocity always require the verb to be in the plural and preceded by *se*.

*Ils se haïssent l'un l'autre.* They hate one another.

*Ils s'écrivirent l'un à l'autre.* They wrote to each other.

---

(\*) It can be seen that the preposition is placed in French between *l'un* and *l'autre* instead of being placed before each other or one another as in English.

*l'un avec l'autre*, with one another; *l'un pour l'autre*, for each other.



to astonish, *étonner*  
bullet, *balle f.*  
convent, *couvent m.*  
to dare, *oser*  
to detest, *détester*  
discontented, *mécontent*  
during, *pendant*  
forest, *forêt f.*

to happen, *arriver*  
hole, *trou m.*  
life, *vie f.*  
manner, *manière f.*  
monk, *moine m.*  
pistole, *pistolet m.*  
pocket, *poche f.*  
purse, *bourse f.*

robber, *voleur m.*  
rude, *grossier*  
satisfied, *content*  
to send, *envoyer*  
theatre, *théâtre m.*  
throat, *gorge f.*  
traveller, *voyageur m.*  
useless, *inutile*

### Exercise No. 20.

1. Somebody is in the room.—Some are good, others are bad.—Everyone has it.—No one knows<sup>1</sup> me.—This one is mine, the other is yours.—They like each other.—Both are here.—I shall see<sup>2</sup> either.—Neither is here.—They have sent<sup>3</sup> a letter to each other.—Another will have it.—Everybody knows him. — I know<sup>4</sup> nobody. — He has everything.—All wait in the other room.—He has nothing.—Something will happen.—Whoever knows him likes him.—This (*m.*) is not the same.

(\*) We sold—did he sell?—he did not sell—I waited—did we hear?—he waited—I sold—you did not sell—he heard—I heard—did we sell?—they (*f.*) sold—he sold—I did sell—they (*m.*) did not sell—did I wait?—I did not sell—they (*m.*) heard—you sold—did you sell?—We did not sell—thou didst sell—did I hear?—they (*m.*) sold—thou didst not sell—did we wait?—did I sell?—did you wait?—thou soldst—did they (*f.*) sell?

2. J'ai vu<sup>5</sup> quelqu'un qui m'a demandé votre nom. Comment osez-vous parler d'autrui d'une<sup>6</sup> manière<sup>a</sup> si grossière<sup>b</sup>? Les uns sont contents, les autres sont mécontents. Il a quelque chose dans sa main. Tous sont là. Il a tout perdu<sup>7</sup>. Tout le monde le connaissait<sup>8</sup> dans cette ville. Ni l'un ni l'autre ne vendent cette marchandise. L'un et l'autre danseront ce soir. Chacun est étonné. Ce cheval n'est pas le même. Rien ne m'étonne. Ils ne vendaient rien.

Both have lost<sup>7</sup> their fortunes. Nobody was with them at the theatre. I have them all. Some like him; others detest him. Neither has bought his house. He has given me something for you. They detest one another. Everyone bought it. I shall have either. I heard nobody. They heard nothing. Nobody is in the house. Nothing is impossible to him. I know<sup>4</sup> the one, but I do not know the other

1 knows, *connait* 2 shall see, *verrai* 3 have sent, *se sont envoyés* 4 I know, *connais* 5 *vu*, seen 6 *d'*, in 7 *perdu*, lost 8 *connaissait*, knew

(\*) See the Imperfect of *rendre*, to render (Supplement, page 13).

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What are indefinite pronouns?
2. Translate *somebody, everybody, nobody*.
3. Translate *something, nothing, everything*.
4. Translate *either, neither, both, each other*.
5. Translate *the other, the same, others*.
6. What is the plural of *l'un et l'autre*?
7. What indefinite pronouns are never used in the plural?
8. What indefinite pronouns require the verb to be preceded by *ne*?
9. What personal pronoun must be placed before the verb preceded or followed by *l'un l'autre* and *l'un à l'autre*?

## Conversation.

Is somebody there?

Nobody is in the room.

Have you seen the one or the other?

I have seen both.

Did they give you anything?

No, they gave me nothing.

Is that the same book?

No, it is not the same.

Did you speak (*vous êtes-vous parlé*) to one another?

No, I spoke to nobody.

Do you know either?

No, I know neither.

Do you know anybody in the town?

No, I know nobody.

Will they come (*viendront*) with each other?

Yes, I expect them both.

My compliments to everybody.

I thank you.

Will you see (*verrez-vous*) your cousins there?

Yes, I shall see them all.

Take (*prenez*) this parcel and I will take (*prendrai*) the other.

I have it.

Quelqu'un est-il là?

Personne n'est dans la chambre.

Avez-vous vu l'un ou l'autre?

J'ai vu l'un et l'autre.

Vous ont-ils donné quelque chose

Non, ils ne m'ont rien donné.

Est-ce le même livre?

Non, ce n'est pas le même.

Vous êtes-vous parlé l'un à l'autre?

Non, je n'ai parlé à personne.

Connaissez-vous l'un ou l'autre?

Non, je ne connais ni l'un ni l'autre.

Connaissez-vous quelqu'un dans la ville?

Non, je ne connais personne.

Viendront-ils l'un avec l'autre?

Oui, je les attends l'un et l'autre.

Mes compliments à tout le monde.

Je vous remercie.

Y verrez-vous vos cousins?

Oui, je les verrai tous.

Prenez ce paquet et je prendrai l'autre.

Je l'ai.

## Reading Exercise No. 20.

Le frère quêteur d'un couvent des environs de Paris  
 . . . collector . . . neighbourhood . . .  
 revenait après avoir fait sa tournée dans plusieurs villages  
 came back . . . made . . . round . . .  
 voisins, et rapportait les aumônes qu'il avait recueillies  
 neighbouring . . . brought back . . . alms . . . gathered  
 pendant la journée. En traversant une forêt, il fut ren-  
 . . . day . . . crossing . . .  
 contré par un voleur qui lui demanda la bourse ou la vie.  
 . . .  
 Le moine vit bien que la résistance serait inutile et remit  
 . . . saw . . . . . delivered up  
 au voleur une trentaine de livres; mais il lui demanda  
 . . . about thirty . . .  
 comme faveur de décharger un pistolet qu'il avait à la main,  
 as . . . unload . . .  
 dans l'un des pans de sa robe, afin de prouver au prieur  
 . . . flaps . . . in order to prove . . .  
 qu'il avait été attaqué et qu'il avait fait quelque résistance.  
 . . . attacked . . . made . . .  
 Le bandit fit ce qu'on lui demandait, mais le moine ne  
 . . . did . . .  
 voyant pas le trou de la balle, s'étonna de cette circonstance.  
 seeing not . . . bullet . . . astonished . . . circumstance  
 Le bandit se mit à rire et avoua tout franchement qu'il ne  
 . . . put . . . laugh . . . avowed quite frankly . . .  
 mettait jamais de balles dans ses pistolets et qu'il ne les  
 put . . .  
 employait que comme moyens d'intimidation. Cette con-  
 employed but . . . ways . . .  
 fession lui coûta cher; car le moine, qui était d'une force  
 . . . cost . . . for . . .  
 remarquable, se jeta sur lui, le prit à la gorge et le terrassa;  
 remarkable . . . threw . . . took . . . flung down  
 puis ayant cherché dans ses poches, il en retira non seule-  
 then . . . sought . . . from it pulled out . . .  
 ment les trente livres qu'il lui avait remises auparavant  
 . . . delivered . . . before  
 mais l'argent qu'il avait dérobé à d'autres voyageurs. Le  
 . . . robbed . . .  
 moine ne se fit aucun scrupule de s'en emparer et rentra  
 . . . made . . . scruple . . . of it to take possession . . . returned  
 triomphant dans son couvent.  
 triumphant . . .

Indefinite Pronouns (*concluded*).

The pronoun *on* is of a very frequent use in the French language; it is used in speaking of persons and translates the English expressions, *one, we, they, people*.

*On* attend. *They* wait.

*On* travaille dans la rue. *People* work in the street.

*On* is always of the singular number. Accordingly the verb that follows must be in the singular, as may be seen from the preceding example.

*On* is of the masculine gender, and accordingly all adjectives which refer to it must be of the same gender. However, these adjectives ought to be in the feminine if the sense clearly indicated that the pronoun *on* referred to a female.

*On* est toujours fière de sa beauté. *One* is always proud of one's beauty.

*On* est heureuse quand *on* est aimée de son mari. *One* is happy when *one* is loved by *one's* husband.

*On* is often used, with an active verb, to translate a passive verb.

*On* croit qu'il viendra. *It is believed* that he will come.

*On* dit que sa mère est morte. *It is said* that his mother is dead.

*On* me dit. *I am* told.

*On* leur disait. *They* were told.

When *on* is immediately preceded by the conjunctions *et*, and, *si*, if, *que*, that, *ou*, or, and the adverb *où*, where, the euphonic letter *l'* must be placed between the conjunction and the pronoun *on*.

*On* connaît et *l'on* aime cet homme. *People* know and like this man.

Si *l'on* m'interroge, je répondrai. If I am interrogated, I shall answer.

Je crois que *l'on* vient. I think that *somebody* is coming.

*On* ne vas pas où *l'on* veut. *One* does not go where *one* wishes.

However this *l'* ought to be omitted if *on* were followed by a word beginning with an *l*.

*On* le connaît et *on* l'aime. *People* know and like him.

Si *on* le savait. If *people* knew it.

Je ne crois pas qu'*on* le trouve. I do not believe it will be found.

Il est où *on* l'a mis. It is where it has been put.



|                              |                                   |                              |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| to accept, <i>accepter</i>   | to imitate, <i>imiter</i>         | physician, <i>médecin m.</i> |
| act, <i>acte m.</i>          | judgment, <i>jugement m.</i>      | to publish, <i>publier</i>   |
| to arrive, <i>arriver</i>    | magnificent, <i>magnifique</i>    | to recount, <i>raconter</i>  |
| care, <i>soin m.</i>         | to mix, <i>mêler [m.]</i>         | repast, <i>repas m.</i>      |
| dessert, <i>dessert m.</i>   | monastery, <i>monastère</i>       | Spain, <i>Espagne f.</i>     |
| effect, <i>effet m.</i>      | necessary, <i>nécessaire</i>      | Spaniard, <i>espagnol</i>    |
| example, <i>exemple m.</i>   | patriotism, <i>patriotisme m.</i> | trumpet, <i>trompette f.</i> |
| fanaticism, <i>fanatisme</i> |                                   | wall, <i>mur m.</i>          |
| hour, <i>heure f. [m.]</i>   |                                   | war, <i>guerre f.</i>        |

### Exercise No. 21.

1. One thinks.—We wait.—They say<sup>1</sup>.—People think.—One works.—One hopes.—They recount—People refuse.—One likes.—One hears.—They give.—People find.—One eats.—One dares.—They desire.—People ask.—It is believed.—It is thought.—I am asked.—He is deceived.—He was obliged.—They speak to him and they say that his brother is ill.—If people knew<sup>2</sup> it.—I think that they will refuse this.—Do you know<sup>3</sup> where one finds that.

(\*) I shall sell—we shall not sell—shall we sell?—they (*m.*) will not sell—will she hear?—he will sell—I shall wait—will they sell?—I shall hear—you will not sell—we shall hear—thou wilt sell—you will wait—will you sell?—wilt thou sell?—I shall not sell—they (*f.*) will not sell—you will sell—thou wilt not sell—they (*f.*) will sell—he will not sell—will he sell?—we shall sell—shall I sell?—we shall wait—she will not sell—they (*m.*) will sell.

2. On vendra la maison demain matin. On entend sa voix dans la chambre de votre mère. On raconte que votre ami est<sup>4</sup> arrivé. On l'imite. On dit que (la) guerre a été déclarée entre<sup>5</sup> les deux pays. On me déçoit. On pense que je suis très riche. On arrive à Paris en quatre heures. Je pense que l'on est heureux d'avoir un ami<sup>6</sup> fidèle<sup>a</sup>. On serait content si l'on avait tout ce que l'on désire. Savez-vous<sup>7</sup> où l'on publie ce livre. Je crois<sup>8</sup> qu'on le publie ici. Il croit tout ce qu'on lui dit. Si on l'avait vu<sup>9</sup> on lui aurait dit cela.

They will sell it. They thought that he was an honest man. It is said that he will arrive to-morrow morning. It is believed that he will be dead before the end of the week. I am told that he is very ill. It is said that he will leave<sup>10</sup> this afternoon. People like him and believe that his patriotism will be rewarded<sup>11</sup>. People say that this magnificent monastery was (has been) built by the kings of Spain. It is necessary that people should arrive at seven o'clock. If people accepted his invitation he would be very satisfied. Where do they sell that?

1 say, dit 2 knew, savait 3 do you know, savez-vous 4 est, has 5 déclarée entre, declared between 6 d', to 7 savez-vous, do you know 8 crois, believe 9 vu, seen 10 will leave, partira 11 rewarded, récompensé

(\*) See the Future of *rendre* (Supplement, page 11).



### Questions on Grammar.

1. What is the meaning of the pronoun *on*?
2. What is the number of the pronoun *on*?
3. What is its gender?
4. Is *on* sometimes of the feminine gender?
5. How are passive verbs often translated in French?
6. What are the conjunctions which require the euphonic letter *l'* to be placed between them and the pronoun *on*?
7. When must that euphonic letter be dispensed with?

### Conversation.

Where do they sell these hats?

They are sold in the High Street (*grand'rue*) number thirty-two.

Do they sell them dear?

No; they are sold (at) twelve francs fifty centimes.

What do they say?

They say that the Queen will arrive in (à) London to-morrow afternoon.

Is it known at what time (*heure*) she will arrive?

People say that she will be here at two o'clock in (of) the afternoon.

Is it believed that people will be admitted in the station?

I am told that people will not be admitted on the platform.

Is it known if the prince will be there?

It is said that he will be there with the princess.

Do you believe what they say?

I never believe too easily what is reported in some newspapers.

Is it believed that this difficult question will soon be resolved by the government?

They think so (that yes).

Où vend-on ces chapeaux?

On les vend dans la grand'rue numéro trente-deux.

Les vend-on cher?

Non; on les vend douze francs cinquante centimes.

Que dit-on?

On dit que la reine arrivera à Londres demain après-midi.

Sait-on à quelle heure elle arrivera?

On dit qu'elle sera ici à deux heures de l'après-midi.

Croit-on que l'on sera admis dans la station?

On me dit que l'on ne sera pas admis sur le quai.

Sait-on si le prince sera là?

On dit qu'il y sera avec la princesse.

Croyez-vous ce que l'on dit?

Je ne crois jamais trop facilement ce qui est rapporté dans certains journaux.

Croit-on que cette question difficile sera bientôt résolue par le gouvernement?

On croit que oui.

## Reading Exercise No. 21.

Pendant les guerres de Napoléon premier en Espagne, le fanatisme et le patriotisme des habitants les portèrent<sup>1</sup> souvent aux actes les plus désespérés.<sup>2</sup> On raconte qu'un général de l'armée du roi Jérôme,<sup>3</sup> étant<sup>4</sup> arrivé un jour sous les murs du monastère de Figuières,<sup>5</sup> envoya un officier au prieur pour lui demander de fournir à ses soldats les vivres<sup>6</sup> qui leur étaient nécessaires. Le prieur répondit<sup>7</sup> que les soldats seraient bien reçus dans la ville, et qu'il donnerait lui-même<sup>8</sup> l'hospitalité au général et à son état-major.<sup>9</sup> Bientôt après, en effet,<sup>10</sup> un repas magnifique était servi ;<sup>11</sup> toutefois<sup>12</sup> le général, sachant<sup>13</sup> combien il était nécessaire de se méfier<sup>14</sup> des Espagnols,<sup>15</sup> crut<sup>16</sup> prudent d'engager le prieur et deux de ses moines à s'asseoir<sup>17</sup> à la table du festin.<sup>18</sup> L'invitation fut acceptée sans hésitation, et les religieux<sup>19</sup> burent<sup>20</sup> et mangèrent copieusement<sup>21</sup> pour donner l'exemple aux officiers français, qui les imitèrent sans la moindre appréhension. Mais au dessert, le prieur se leva<sup>22</sup> et, d'<sup>23</sup>une voix qui fit<sup>24</sup> sur les invités<sup>25</sup> l'effet de la trompette du jugement dernier, il leur annonça qu'un poison mortel<sup>26</sup> avait été mêlé au vin et aux aliments et qu'ils n'avaient pas une heure à vivre.<sup>27</sup> En effet, malgré<sup>28</sup> les soins qui leur furent prodigués<sup>29</sup> par les médecins de l'armée, appelés en toute hâte,<sup>30</sup> au bout<sup>31</sup> de quelques instants, ils expiraient,<sup>32</sup> aussi bien que<sup>33</sup> le prieur et les deux moines, dans des souffrances épouvantables.<sup>34</sup>

1 portèrent, *carried*. 2 désespérés, *desperate*. 3 roi Jérôme, *king Jerome of (Westphalia)*. 4 étant, *having*. 5 Figuières, *Figueiras*. 6 vivres, *provisions*. 7 répondit, *answered*. 8 lui-même, *himself*. 9 état-major, *staff*. 10 en effet, *indeed*. 11 servi, *served*. 12 toutefois, *however*. 13 sachant, *knowing*. 14 se méfier, *distrust*. 15 Espagnols, *Spaniards*. 16 crut, *believed*. 17 s'asseoir, *to sit down*. 18 la table du festin, *the convivial table*. 19 religieux, *monks*. 20 burent, *drank*. 21 copieusement, *copiously*. 22 se leva, *rose*. 23 d', *in*. 24 fit, *did*. 25 invités, *guests*. 26 poison mortel, *deadly poison*. 27 à vivre, *to live*. 28 malgré, *in spite of*. 29 leur furent prodigués, *lavished upon them*. 30 appelés en toute hâte, *called with all haste*. 31 au bout de, *at the end of*. 32 expiraient, *expired*. 33 aussi bien que, *as well as*. 34 dans des souffrances épouvantables, *in a dreadful agony*.

## Verbs.

As we have devoted the whole of the Supplement to verbs, we shall only give here a few general hints, which will be easily understood by the student, if he refer to the table given on the last page of the above mentioned part.

1. All verbs, whatever may be the conjugation to which they belong, whether they be regular or irregular, end in the same manner in the Imperfect of the Indicative (*ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient*), in the Future (*rai, ras, ra, rons, rez, ront*), and Conditional (*rais, rait, rions, riez, raient*).

2. The first person singular, if not ending with a vowel (*e* or *ai*) always ends with an *s* (very few verbs with an *x*).

3. The second person singular always ends with *s* (few verbs with *x*).

4. The third person singular when not ending with a vowel (*e* or *a*) always ends with *t* (few verbs with *d*, one with *c*).

5. The first person plural ends in *es* or *ons*.

6. The second person plural ends in *es* or *ez* (always *ez* when the first person plural ends in *ons* except *vous dites, vous faites*.)

7. The third person plural ends always in *nt*.

8. The 1st and 2nd person plural of the present of the Subjunctive are generally the same as the 1st and 2nd person plural of the Imperfect of the Indicative (few irregular verbs excepted).

9. The endings of the Past definite are always *s* (1st conjugation excepted) *s, t, mes, tes, rent*.

10. The endings of the Present of the Subjunctive are always *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent* (few irregular verbs excepted).

11. The endings of the Imperfect of the Subjunctive are always *sse, sses, t, ssions, ssiez, ssent*.

12. There is always a circumflex accent on the vowel in the ending of the 1st and 2nd persons plural of the Past definite and 3rd person singular of the Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

13. The Verbs of the 1st conjugation (*er*) are by far the most numerous, and are all regular but *aller*, to go; *envoyer*, to send, and their compounds.

14. There are only seven regular verbs belonging to the 3rd conjugation (*oir*), viz: *percevoir*, to perceive, *apercevoir*, to perceive, *concevoir*, to conceive, *décevoir*, to deceive, *devoir*, to owe, *redevoir*, to owe still, *recevoir*, to receive.

15. The Imperative has no 1st person in the singular. Many grammarians give a 3rd person singular and plural of the same tense, but these persons belong really to the present of the Subjunctive, and are not formed from the present of the Indicative. This is the reason why we only give the 2nd person singular, 1st and 2nd person plural, which are formed according to the rules of formation. See pages 4, 5 of Supplement.

to accost, *accoster*  
 to add, *ajouter*  
 at once, *aussitôt*  
 to beg, *prier*  
 to brand, *flétrir*  
 celebrated, *célèbre*  
 church, *église f.*  
 to congratulate, *féliciter*  
 congratulation, *félicitation f.* [*pointer*]  
 to disappoint, *désap-*

to doubt, *doute*  
 eloquent, *éloquent*  
 even, *même*  
 future, *avenir m.*  
 mistake, *erreur f.*  
 to owe, *devoir*  
 preacher, *prédicateur m.*  
 priest, *prêtre m.*  
 profit, *profit m.*  
 to punish, *punir*

to quit, *quitter*  
 reasoning, *raisonnement m.*  
 to remain, *rester*  
 to render, *rendre*  
 short, *court*  
 to stop, *arrêter* [*m.*]  
 thanks, *remerciements*  
 to threaten, *menacer*  
 usurer, *usurier m.*  
 usury, *usure f.*

## Exercise No. 22.

(On the tenses of the verbs which have already been used in the preceding exercises.)

1. Je féliciterai, — nous punirions, — je dois, — il rend, — ne félicitez-vous pas? — nous devons, — nous désappointerons, — donnez-vous? — Je rends, — ils puniraient, — vous finirez, — il reçoit, — il ajoutera, — vous rendez, — il imite? — nous ne chantons pas, — ils finissent, — vous recevez, — nous menacerons, — ils rendent, — vous flétrissez, — nous recevions, — nous rendons, — je vends, — ils resteraient, — nous quittons, — ils devraient, — ils flétriront, — vous recevrez, — nous vendons, — tu vends, — ils aimaient, — nous bâtissons, — ils vendaient, — elles recevaient, — ils doivent, — il vend, — vous parliez, — ne donneraient-ils pas? — ils bâtitissent, — nous vendrons, — vous devez, — nous flétrissions, — ils dansent, — finiraient-ils? — vous flétrirez, — je reçois, — je vendrai, — recevrez-vous? — vous chantez, — ils marchent, — nous recevons, — il vendra, — ils bâtiront, — il doit, — tu rendras, — nous donnerons, — ils punissaient, — vous devrez, — nous ne donnons pas, — vous finissez, — nous rendrons.

2. He sings, — you would love, — we finish, — they (*m.*) receive, — we sold, — they (*m.*) finish, — I give, — he receives, — you did not sell, — I should build, — he would punish, — you walked, — I finish, — did they wait? — I receive, — you punish, — we received, — you sold, — they (*m.*) love, — you owe, — I shall sell, — he received, — I branded, — we should finish, — we congratulate, — he sold, — they (*m.*) would threaten, — we branded, — I received, — he disappoints, — we beg, — he punished, — you owed, — I shall not hear, — I sold, — I added, — he would build, — I shall receive, — we punished, — they (*f.*) finished, — you threatened, — we should receive, — will you wait? — he will owe, — they (*m.*) wait, — we shall commence, — you finished, — I shall finish, — we shall receive, — you hear, — he congratulated, — you imitated, — we should finish, — I should receive, — you will punish, — he would brand, — I shall sing, — you will receive, — he does not sell, — he would owe, — we shall punish, — do we render? — we shall dance, — they (*f.*) will owe, — we should receive, — you will finish, — he sells, — they (*m.*) will speak, — we should commence, — they (*m.*) will build, — you would receive, — I sell.



## Questions on Grammar.

1. Which are the three tenses which always end in the same manner whatever may be the conjugation, whether regular or irregular?
2. What is generally the last letter of the 1st person singular?
3. What is always the last letter of the 2nd person singular?
4. What is the last letter of the 3rd person, when not a vowel?
5. What are the two endings which may be found in the 1st person plural?
6. What are the two endings of the 2nd person plural?
7. How does the 3rd person plural always end?
8. Which are the two tenses in which the 1st and 2nd plural are always the same (with very few exceptions)?
9. What are the endings of the Past Definite?
10. What are the endings of the Present of the Subjunctive?
11. What are the endings of the Imperfect of the Subjunctive?
12. In what tenses and persons is the circumflex accent to be always found on the vowel of the ending?
13. Which is the conjugation which includes the greatest number of verbs in French?
14. What are the only regular verbs of the 3rd conjugation?
15. How many persons are there in the Imperative?

## Conversation.

What is the most important part of speech in all languages?

(It is) the verb.

Can French verbs terminate in the Infinitive in any manner whatever?

No; they can only end in four ways, viz: *er, ir, oir, re*.

What is indicated by the ending of the infinitive of a verb?

The conjugation to which it belongs. What is to be done after ascertaining to what conjugation a verb belongs?

It must be ascertained whether it be regular or irregular.

How can you ascertain that?

By looking at the tables of irregular verbs, Part 14.

Verbs which are not given, nor composed with any of those which are given therein, are regular.

Quelle est la partie du discours la plus importante dans toutes les langues?

C'est le verbe.

Les verbes français peuvent-ils se terminer à l'infinitif d'une manière quelconque?

Non; ils ne peuvent se terminer que de quatre manières, c'est à dire en *er, ir, oir* or *re*.

Qu'indique la termination de l'infinitif d'un verbe?

A quelle conjugaison il appartient. Que faut-il faire après s'être assuré de la conjugaison à laquelle appartient un verbe?

Il faut s'assurer s'il est régulier ou irrégulier.

Comment pouvez-vous trouver cela?

En regardant les tableaux des verbes irréguliers, dans la 14ème livraison.

Les verbes qui n'y sont pas donnés ou qui ne sont composés avec aucun de ceux qui y sont donnés, sont réguliers.



## Reading Exercise No. 22.

Un prédicateur célèbre, ayant un jour fait<sup>1</sup> un magnifique sermon dans lequel il avait flétri de la manière la plus éloquente le vice détestable de l'usure, se préparait<sup>2</sup> à quitter l'église, lorsqu'il fut accosté par un usurier, qu'il connaissait<sup>3</sup> parfaitement de<sup>4</sup> réputation. Le prêtre, voyant<sup>5</sup> qu'il cherchait<sup>6</sup> à lui parler, se félicitait intérieurement<sup>7</sup> de l'effet de ses paroles, et s'attendait à ce<sup>8</sup> qu'il allait<sup>9</sup> lui annoncer sa conversion. Il commençait même à le féliciter de sa démarche<sup>10</sup> et de ses meilleures intentions pour l'avenir, lorsque<sup>11</sup> l'usurier l'arrêta court. "Je crains<sup>12</sup>," lui dit-il<sup>13</sup>, "que vous ne fassiez<sup>14</sup> erreur: j'ai trouvé en vérité<sup>15</sup> que vous aviez admirablement parlé, et je reconnais<sup>16</sup> toute la force de vos arguments; je vous prie d'agréer<sup>17</sup> mes sincères félicitations, j'ajouterai même, mes remerciements: car je ne doute pas que tous ceux de mes confrères<sup>18</sup> qui se trouvaient à l'église n'aient été<sup>19</sup> profondément<sup>20</sup> émus<sup>21</sup> par votre sermon, et effrayés des châtiments<sup>22</sup> dont vous nous menacez, et qu'ils n'abandonnent<sup>23</sup> aussitôt une si infâme<sup>24</sup> profession. De cette façon<sup>25</sup> je resterai seul à faire l'usure<sup>26</sup>; je ferai<sup>27</sup> des profits considérables, je deviendrai<sup>28</sup> excessivement<sup>29</sup> riche et c'est à vous, ou plutôt<sup>30</sup> à votre sermon, que je devrai tout ce bonheur-là." Le pauvre prédicateur était bien<sup>31</sup> désappointé et il se demanda si peut-être chacun des usuriers n'avait pas fait<sup>32</sup> le même raisonnement.

1 *fait*, made, 2 *se préparait*, was preparing himself, 3 *connaissait*, knew, 4 *de*, by, 5 *voyant*, seeing, 6 *cherchait*, was endeavouring, 7 *intérieurement*, internally, 8 *s'attendait à ce*, expected, 9 *allait*, was going, 10 *de sa démarche*, for his step, 11 *lorsque*, when, 12 *je crains*, I fear, 13 *dit-il*, said he, 14 *fassiez*, make, 15 *en vérité*, indeed, 16 *reconnais*, acknowledge, 17 *d'agréer*, to accept, 18 *confrères*, colleagues, 19 *n'aient été*, have been, 20 *profondément*, deeply, 21 *émus*, moved, 22 *des châtiments*, by the chastisements, 23 *qu'ils n'abandonnent*, that they will abandon, 24 *une si infâme*, such an infamous, 25 *de cette façon*, in this manner, 26 *faire l'usure*, to be an usurer, 27 *ferai*, shall make, 28 *deviendrai*, shall become, 29 *excessivement*, exceedingly, 30 *plutôt*, rather, 31 *bien*, very much, 32 *fait*, made.

## Adverbs.

The adverb is a word used to modify the sense of a verb, and also of an adjective, participle or another adverb.

In French they follow the verb in simple tenses, and in compound tenses are placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

*Il parle souvent.* He often speaks. *J'ai bien dormi.* I have slept well.

Adverbs may be divided into ten classes, viz.: adverbs of manner, time, place, order, quantity, comparison, affirmation, negation, doubt and interrogation.

### Adverbs of Manner.

Adverbs of manner express how things are done.

They are formed from qualifying adjectives by the addition of *ment*. Three cases arise in this formation.

**RULE. 1.**—If the adjective end with a vowel, *ment* is added to the masculine.—*Joli*, pretty, *joliment*, prettily; *aisé*, easy, *aisément*, easily; *honnête*, honest, *honnêtement*, honestly.

**EXCEPTIONS.**—*Follement*, foolishly; *mollement*, softly; *nouvellement*, newly; *bellement*, gently; *gaiement*, gaily, are formed from the feminine adjectives, *folle*, *molle*, *nouvelle*, *belle*, *gaie*.

**2.**—If the adjective end with a consonant, *ment* is added to the feminine.—*Heureux*, happy, *heureusement*, happily; *long*, long, *longuement*, long or longly; *doux*, sweet, *doucement*, sweetly.

**3.**—Adjectives ending in *ant* and *ent* form their adverbs by changing *nt* into *mmment*:

*Prudent*, prudent, *prudemment*, prudently; *constant*, constant, *constamment*, constantly; *innocent*, innocent, *innocemment*, innocently.

**EXCEPTIONS.**—*Lent*, slow, and *présent*, present, *véhément*, vehement, form their adverbs regularly, *lentement*, slowly; *présentement*, presently, *véhémentement*, vehemently. The adverb formed from *gentil*, nice, is *gentiment*.

**REMARKS. 1.**—The following adverbs take an acute accent on the *e* which precedes *ment*, when no such accent exists in the adjectives themselves.—*Aveuglément*, blindly (from *aveugle*); *commodément*, conveniently (from *commode*); *communément*, commonly (from *commun*); *conformément*, conformingly (from *conforme*); *énormément*, enormously (from *énorme*); *expressément*, expressly (from *exprès*); *importunément*, importunately (from *importun*); *obscurément*, obscurely (from *obscur*); *opiniâtrément*, obstinately (from *opiniâtre*); *précisément*, precisely (from *précis*); *profondément*, profoundly (from *profond*); *profusément*, profusely (from *profus*); *impunément*, with impunity (from *impuni*).

**2.**—*Bien*, well, *mal*, badly, *pis*, worse, *mieux*, better, must also be considered as adverbs of manner.

address, *adresse f.*  
 advice, *conseil m.*  
 attentive, *attentif*  
 cheapness, *bon marché*  
*m.*  
 to counsel, *conseiller*  
 desert, *désert m.*  
 despatch, *dépêche f.*  
 to forward, *expédier*  
 full, *plein*

to hang, *suspendre*  
 to hide, *cacher*  
 immediate, *immédiat*  
 legible, *lisible*  
 march, *marche f.*  
 name, *nom m.*  
 other, *autre*  
 to pass, *passer*  
 pole, *poteau m.*

to recommence, *recom-*  
*mencer*  
 to refresh, *rafraîchir*  
 road, *route f.*  
 sand, *sable m.*  
 suffering, *souffrance f.*  
 telegraph, *télégraphem.*  
 wire, *fil (de fer) m.*  
 way, *moyen m.*

## Exercise No. 23.

*Form the Adverbs from the following Adjectives.*

1. Facile—petit—diligent—savant—fou—triste—haut—vrai—profond—commun—lent—énorme—hardi—unique—délicat—franc—large—précis—impérieux—apparent—gentil—beau—raisonnable—démessuré—élégant—importun—chaud—innocent—aveugle—présent—mou—exprès—loyal—timide—remarquable—malheureux—gai—galant—délicieux—nouveau—fréquent—proportionné—imprudent—opiniâtre—religieux—nécessaire—égal—comique—intelligent—ingénu—propre—décent—clair—mortel—véhément—impuni.

(\*) Would he sell?—I should hear—should we wait?—he would sell—they would not wait—they (*m.*) would hear—should I sell?—they (*m.*) would sell—would he not sell?—we should sell—should I not sell?—should we sell?—thou wouldst sell—you would hear—would they (*f.*) sell?—you would wait—would they (*m.*) sell?—he would hear—I should sell—would you not sell?—we should hear—would I wait?—would you sell?—wouldst thou sell?—you would sell—would she sell?—should we not sell?

2. Vous travaillez laborieusement. Il travaille bien et ses parents sont contents de<sup>1</sup> sa conduite. Il parle très éloquentement et tout le monde l'écoute<sup>2</sup> attentivement. Il parlait très froidement. Il apprend<sup>3</sup> aisément cette langue. Le temps passe rapidement. Je le vois<sup>4</sup> rarement. Ils sont<sup>5</sup> arrivés en ville et j'attends impatiemment le<sup>6</sup> résultat de leur visite. Nous l'aimons sincèrement. Il parle parfaitement la langue française. On trouve principalement cette fleur dans les pays froids.

The postman rarely comes<sup>7</sup> at eight o'clock. I wait (for) his answer impatiently. I am greatly astonished. That page is badly written,<sup>8</sup> you will recommence it immediately. I shall pass rapidly to the principal rules; I think that you will easily understand<sup>9</sup> them. That would certainly happen. He imitates his friend very well.

1 *de*, with 2 *l'écoute*, listens to him 3 *apprend*, learns 4 *vois*, see 5 *sont*, have  
 6 *le*, for the 7 *comes*, *vient* 8 *written*, *écrite* 9 *will understand*, *comprendrez*.

\* See the conditional of *rendre*.

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What is an adverb?
2. What is the place of adverbs in French?
3. How many classes of adverbs are there? what are they?
4. How do adverbs of manner end in French?
5. How are adverbs derived from adjectives ending with a vowel?
6. How are adverbs derived from adjectives ending with a consonant?
7. How are adverbs of manner derived from adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent*?
8. Give some adjectives ending with vowels which do not follow this rule?
9. Give some adverbs which take an acute accent on the *e* before *ment*?
10. Give some adverbs of manner which do not end in *ment*?

## Conversation.

Who (*qui est-ce qui*) spoke so elegantly?

It (*is*) was the deputy who has been elected (*élu*) lately.

He speaks very slowly and distinctly. Do you hear him frequently?

No, I go to the house [of parliament] (*chambre*) very rarely.

Did you arrive (*êtes vous arrivé*) safely at the end of your journey?

Yes, thank you (*merci*); unhappily I found my sister dangerously ill, and I had only (the) time to run immediately to the doctor's.

Does he come (*vient*) exactly at the time you expect him?

Usually he comes very punctually.

Do you pay him regularly every week?

Yes, I generally pay him every Saturday evening.

Do you think really that he is in want of money?

I think so.

Qui est-ce qui a parlé si élégamment?

C'est le député qui a été élu dernièrement.

Il parle très lentement et très distinctement. L'entendez-vous fréquemment?

Non, je vais très rarement à la chambre.

Etes-vous arrivé sain et sauf au terme de votre voyage?

Oui, merci; malheureusement j'ai trouvé ma sœur dangereusement malade, et je n'ai eu que le temps de courir immédiatement chez le docteur.

Vient-il exactement à l'heure à laquelle vous l'attendez?

Ordinairement il vient très ponctuellement.

Le payez vous régulièrement chaque semaine?

Oui, je le paie généralement chaque samedi soir.

Croyez-vous réellement qu'il ait besoin d'argent?

Je le crois.



## Reading Exercise No. 23.

On raconte qu'un paysan, dont le fils servait<sup>1</sup> dans un régiment en garnison<sup>2</sup> en Algérie,<sup>3</sup> reçut<sup>4</sup> un jour de lui une lettre dans laquelle il lui disait,<sup>5</sup> entre<sup>6</sup> autres choses, que ses souliers avaient été brûlés par le sable pendant les longues marches qu'il avait faites<sup>7</sup> dans le désert ; il finissait sa lettre en priant<sup>8</sup> son père de lui en envoyer une autre paire le plus tôt possible.<sup>9</sup> Nicolas,<sup>10</sup> c'était le nom du paysan, plein de compassion pour les fatigues et les souffrances de son fils, commanda<sup>11</sup> immédiatement une paire de souliers au cordonnier de son village. Mais quand ils furent faits,<sup>12</sup> il ne savait<sup>13</sup> de<sup>14</sup> quelle manière les lui envoyer, et il demandait conseil à tous ses amis. L'un d'eux, voulant<sup>15</sup> se moquer de<sup>16</sup> sa simplicité, lui conseilla de les lui expédier par le télégraphe, lui disant<sup>17</sup> qu'il n'aurait qu'<sup>18</sup>à les pendre au fil de fer qu'il voyait<sup>19</sup> soutenu<sup>20</sup> par des poteaux tout le long de<sup>21</sup> la route, et que la première dépêche, qui passerait à destination de l'Algérie, les transporterait<sup>22</sup> jusqu'à<sup>23</sup> Constantine, où se trouvait<sup>24</sup> alors son fils. La simplicité et le bon marché de ce moyen séduisirent<sup>25</sup> le paysan. Il mit<sup>26</sup> une adresse bien lisible, qu'avait écrite<sup>27</sup> le maître d'école,<sup>28</sup> sur les souliers ; y cacha deux pièces de cinq francs, pour que<sup>29</sup> son fils pût<sup>30</sup> se rafraîchir à sa santé et, étant sorti<sup>31</sup> du village, suspendit<sup>32</sup> les souliers au fil télégraphique, puis<sup>33</sup> retourna à son travail.

(To be continued.)

1 *servait*, served, 2 *garnison*, garrison, 3 *Algérie*, Algeria, 4 *reçut*, received, 5 *disait*, said, 6 *entre*, among, 7 *faites*, made, 8 *priant*, begging, 9 *le plus tôt possible*, as soon as possible, 10 *Nicolas*, Nicholas, 11 *commanda*, ordered, 12 *furent faits*, were made, 13 *savait*, knew, 14 *de*, in, 15 *voulant*, wishing, 16 *se moquer de*, laugh at, 17 *disant*, saying, 18 *ne...que*, only, 19 *voyait*, saw, 20 *soutenu*, supported, 21 *tout le long de*, all along, 22 *transporterait*, would transport them, 23 *jusqu'à*, as far as, 24 *se trouvait*, 'was, 25 *séduisirent*, seduced, 26 *mit*, put, 27 *écrite*, written, 28 *maître d'école*, school-master, 29 *pour que*, in order that, 30 *pût*, could, 31 *étant sorti*, having gone out, 32 *suspendit*, hung, 33 *puis*, then.



## TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

*Vingt-quatrième Leçon.*

## Adverbs of Time.

These adverbs are :

for the present :—*aujourd'hui*, to-day ; *maintenant*, now ; *à présent*, now ;  
for the future :—*demain*, to-morrow ; *après-demain*, the day after to-  
morrow ; *bientôt*, soon ; *avant peu*, shortly ; *désormais*, henceforth ;  
for the past :—*hier*, yesterday ; *avant-hier*, the day before yesterday ;  
*autrefois*, formerly ; *jadis*, formerly ; *depuis peu*, lately.

Other adverbs of time do not refer to any special time ; as,  
*de bonne heure*, early ; *tôt*, soon ; *tard*, late ; *déjà*, already ; *encore*, still,  
yet ; *souvent*, often ; *longtemps*, for a long time ; *toujours*, always ;  
*jamais*, never ; *tantôt*, sometimes ; *quelquefois*, sometimes, &c.

## Adverbs of Place.

The principal adverbs of place are :

*où*, where ; *d'où*, from whence ; *ici*, here ; *là*, *y*, there ; *devant*, before ;  
*derrière*, behind ; *dessus*, upon ; *dessous*, underneath ; *en haut*, above,  
upstairs ; *en bas*, below, downstairs ; *dedans*, *au dedans*, inside, within ;  
*dehors*, *au dehors*, outside, without ; *loin*, far ; *près*, near ; *partout*,  
everywhere ; *auprès*, near ; *ensemble*, together ; *au dessus*, over ; *au  
dessous*, beneath, &c.

## Adverbs of Order.

They are generally formed from ordinal adjectives by adding  
*ment* to the feminine :

*premierement*, firstly ; *secondement*, secondly ; *cinquièmement*, fifthly, &c.

There are also :—*d'abord*, at first ; *auparavant*, before ; *puis*,  
*ensuite*, then ; *enfin*, at last ; *alors*, then ; *après*, after, &c.

## Adverbs of Quantity.

The principal are :—*beaucoup*, much, many ; *peu*, little ; *un peu*,  
a little, rather ; *assez*, enough ; *trop*, too, too-much ; *bien*, *fort*, *très*,  
very ; *tout à fait*, quite ; *au moins*, at least ; *au plus*, at the most ;  
*en outre*, besides ; *cher*, dear ; *bon marché*, cheap ; *environ*, about ;  
*seulement*, only ; *ne... que*, but, only, &c.

## Adverbs of Comparison.

The principal are :—*plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; *aussi*, as ; *comme*,  
as ; *si*, so ; *autant*, as much ; *tant*, so much ; *de même*, likewise ;  
*d'avantage*, more ; *le plus*, the most ; *le moins*, the least ; *presque*,  
almost ; *à peu près*, nearly ; *que*, than, as, &c.

## Adverbs of Affirmation, Negation and Doubt.

Adverbs of affirmation are :—*oui*, yes ; *si*, yes (in answer to a  
negative question) ; *certes*, certainly ; *vraiment*, indeed ; *volontiers*,  
willingly ; *assurément*, assuredly ; *sans doute*, without doubt ;  
*d'accord*, granted, &c.

Adverbs of negation are :—*non*, no ; *ne... pas*, not ; *point*, *pas du  
tout*, not at all ; *nullement*, by no means ; *cependant*, *toutefois*, however.

Adverbs of doubt are :—*peut-être*, perhaps ; *probablement*, likely.

## Adverbs of Interrogation.

The principal are :—*comment*, how ; *combien*, how much ; *combien  
de temps*, how long ; *quand*, when ; *pourquoi*, why ; *où*, where, &c.

|                                                    |                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| beggar, <i>mendiant m.</i>                         | to go out, <i>sortir</i>         | to pay, <i>payer</i>          |
| to communicate, <i>communiquer</i> [ <i>buer</i> ] | to grant, <i>accorder</i>        | plant, <i>plante f.</i>       |
| to contribute, <i>contribuer</i>                   | hardly, <i>à peine</i>           | prison, <i>prison f.</i>      |
| creditor, <i>créancier m.</i>                      | idea, <i>idée f.</i>             | to resist, <i>résister</i>    |
| daily, <i>journalier</i>                           | to lead, <i>conduire</i>         | sad, <i>triste</i>            |
| debtor, <i>débiteur m.</i>                         | to lock up, <i>enfermer</i>      | to send back, <i>renvoyer</i> |
| to desire, <i>désirer</i>                          | maintenance, <i>entretien m.</i> | sorrow, <i>chagrin m.</i>     |
| expense, <i>dépense f.</i>                         | marvellous, <i>merveilleux</i>   | tedious, <i>ennuyeux</i>      |
|                                                    |                                  | term, <i>terme m.</i>         |

### Exercise No. 24.

1. My brother (has<sup>1</sup>) arrived the day before yesterday.—Formerly he was an officer.—I have seen<sup>2</sup> him very little lately.—It is still early, I thought that it was later.—I have been in France for a long time.—I was here and he was there.—Put<sup>3</sup> this (*m.*) before, and I shall put<sup>4</sup> that behind.—We were upstairs and they were downstairs.—It is very far.—You will find it everywhere.—He is outside.—They are together.—I did not like him at first.—You will speak before; I shall speak then.—He arrived<sup>5</sup> at last.—I like him (very) much.—It is rather dear.—You ask too much for it (of it).—This costs more.—It is nearly two o'clock.—Do you like it? Yes.—Do you not see<sup>6</sup> it? Yes.—I shall speak to him willingly.—I do not like him at all.—He will be here, perhaps, in two months.—How do you say<sup>7</sup> that?

(\*) We loved—I punished—you received—we rendered—did I receive?—I loved—I did not love—he punished—did we not render?—they (*f.*) received—they (*m.*) rendered—he loved—thou renderedst—we punished—thou receivedst—I received—did you not love?—you loved—did you love?—I did not receive—you rendered—did I render?—They (*m.*) loved—he received—they (*m.*) punished—thou punishedst—we received—I rendered—we did not receive—thou lovedst—you punished.

2. Avez-vous déjà fini le livre que vous avez commencé avant-hier? Non; je le finirai demain. Était-il dessus ou dessous? Il était dehors. Comment appelez-vous cette fleur? Aimez-vous cette plante? Non, je ne l'aime pas. Ce chapeau n'est-il pas à votre goût?—Si, je l'aime beaucoup. Pourquoi venez<sup>8</sup>-vous si tard. Il m'a été impossible de venir plus tôt. Trouvez-vous qu'ils vendent cela trop cher?—Un peu. Où irez<sup>9</sup>-vous d'abord?

Formerly he was very rich; now he is very poor. Sometimes he spoke to me. It is your cousin Charles who speaks best. He works more. My father will be here to-morrow, and we shall be there the day after to-morrow. I do not like him so much as his brother. He is very rich, and he is also very generous. I meet him sometimes in the park.

1 has, *est* 2 I have seen, *j'ai vu* 3 put, *mettez* 4 shall put, *mettrai* 5 arrived, *arriva* 6 do see, *voyez* 7 do say, *dites* 8 venez, *come* 9 irez, *will go*

(\*) See the past definite of the four Conjugations (Supplement, p. 10 to 13).

## Questions on Grammar.

1. Give the principal adverbs of time?
2. What are the principal adverbs of place?
3. How are adverbs of order generally formed?
4. Translate *much, as much, so much, how much.*
5. Give the adverbs of comparison mostly used.
6. What is the difference between *si* and *oui*?
7. Give some adverbs of negation?
8. Translate *how, enough, too, about.*

## Conversation.

When will you be here?

I shall be here to-morrow early.

When will you start?

(In) the evening as late as I can  
(*pourrai*).

How far will you go (*irez*)?

I shall go (*irai*) as far as the rail-  
way goes (*va*).

How long will you be absent?

About two or three weeks, only.

How will you come back (*revien-  
drez*)?

I do not know (*sais*) yet; but I  
think I shall come back by the  
steamboat.

When will you write (*écrirez*) to  
me?

I shall write to you as soon as  
(*que*) I know (*saurai*) exactly  
the day of my return to London.

Do you want me to do (*avez-vous  
besoin que je fasse*) anything for  
you here?

I thank you (very) much indeed;  
I think I will accept your kind  
offer.

I shall do very willingly every-  
thing I can (*ce que je pourrai*).

Good bye.

Quand serez-vous ici?

Je serai ici demain de bonne heure.

Quand partirez-vous?

Le soir, aussi tard que je pourrai.

Jusqu'où irez-vous?

J'irai aussi loin que le chemin de  
fer va.

Combien de temps serez-vous ab-  
sent?

Environ deux ou trois semaines,  
seulement.

Comment reviendrez-vous?

Je ne sais pas encore; mais je  
pense que je reviendrai par le  
bateau à vapeur.

Quand m'écrirez-vous?

Je vous écrirai aussitôt que je  
saurai exactement le jour de  
mon retour à Londres.

Avez-vous besoin que je fasse ici  
quelque chose pour vous?

Je vous remercie beaucoup, vrai-  
ment; je pense que j'accepterai  
votre offre obligeante.

Je ferai très volontiers tout ce que  
je pourrai.

Adieu!

## Reading Exercise No. 24.

(continued from No. 23.)

Mais il était à peine parti,<sup>1</sup> qu'<sup>2</sup> un mendiant qui avait vu<sup>3</sup> de loin<sup>4</sup> ce qui se passait,<sup>5</sup> accourut,<sup>6</sup> s'empara<sup>7</sup> des souliers neufs et les remplaça par<sup>8</sup> les siens qui étaient dans la plus piteuse<sup>9</sup> condition. Une heure après, Nicolas, ne pouvant<sup>10</sup> résister au désir de savoir<sup>11</sup> si la dépêche était déjà passée<sup>12</sup>, revint<sup>13</sup>, et voyant<sup>14</sup> les vieux souliers à la place<sup>15</sup> des neufs : "Quelle merveilleuse rapidité," s'écria-t-il<sup>16</sup>; et, décrochant<sup>17</sup> les vieux souliers, il alla les montrer à ses amis, disant<sup>18</sup> que c'étaient ceux que son fils lui avait renvoyés<sup>19</sup> par la même voie<sup>20</sup>.

Un débiteur ayant été enfermé en prison pour dettes fit<sup>21</sup> un jour appeler son créancier. "Monsieur," lui dit-il<sup>22</sup>, "sans vouloir<sup>23</sup> parler de la vie triste et ennuyeuse que je mène ici, je ne puis<sup>24</sup> penser sans un profond chagrin à<sup>25</sup> la dépense journalière que vous faites<sup>26</sup> ici inutilement à cause de moi<sup>27</sup>, et j'ai voulu<sup>28</sup> vous communiquer une idée qui m'était venue<sup>29</sup>. Vous avez à payer deux francs par jour<sup>30</sup>, pour ma détention dans cette prison. Faites<sup>31</sup> m'en sortir : donnez-moi ensuite un franc par jour et vous inscrirez<sup>32</sup> l'autre franc journallement<sup>33</sup> à mon avoir<sup>34</sup>. De<sup>35</sup> cette manière, vous me délivrerez<sup>36</sup> de ma captivité, vous contribuerez à mon entretien et vous arriverez<sup>37</sup> après un certain temps à éteindre<sup>38</sup> le capital que je vous dois." Le créancier comprit<sup>39</sup> que son débiteur avait raison<sup>40</sup>, et le fit mettre<sup>41</sup> aussitôt en liberté : on ne sait pas<sup>42</sup> toutefois s'il lui accorda la pension qu'il lui demandait, ni combien de temps<sup>43</sup> il la lui paya.

1 était parti, *had gone*, 2 qu', *when*, 3 vu, *seen*, 4 de loin, *in the distance*, 5 se passait, *was passing*, 6 accourut, *ran*, 7 s'empara, *took possession*, 8 les remplaça par, *put in their place*, 9 piteuse, *pitiful*, 10 ne pouvant, *not being able*, 11 savoir, *knowing*, 12 passée, *passed*, 13 revint, *came back*, 14 voyant, *seeing*, 15 à la place, *in the place*, 16 s'écria-t-il, *he exclaimed*, 17 décrochant, *unhanging*, 18 disant, *saying*, 19 renvoyés, *sent back*, 20 voie, *conveyance*.

21 fit appeler, *sent for*, 22 dit-il, *he said*, 23 vouloir, *wishing*, 24 je ne puis, *I cannot*, 25 à, *of*, 26 faites, *make*, 27 à cause de moi, *on my account*, 28 voulu, *wished*, 29 était venue, *had come*, 30 par jour, *a day*, 31 faites, *cause*, 32 inscrirez, *will put down*, 33 journallement, *daily*, 34 avoir, *credit*, 35 de, *in*, 36 délivrerez, *will free*, 37 vous arriverez ... à, *you will succeed ... in*, 38 éteindre, *to pay off*, 39 comprit, *understood*, 40 avait raison, *was right*, 41 fit mettre, *caused to be put*, 42 on ne sait pas, *it is not known*, 43 combien de temps, *how long*.



## PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are words placed before nouns, pronouns or verbs (in the Infinitive) to indicate the relations of these words with other words which precede. They can be divided into nine classes, viz: *place, order, union, separation, opposition, purpose, cause, means and specification*. (This division we give here for reference only).

Prepositions of place are: *dans*, into, in; *en*, in; *hors*, out; *devant*, before; *derrière*, behind; *sur*, on, upon; *sous*, under; *parmi*, among; *entre*, between; *vers*, towards.

Prepositions of order are: *avant*, before; *après*, after; *depuis*, since; *jusqu'à*, as far as, till.

Prepositions of union are: *avec*, with; *durant*, during; *pendant*, during, for; *outré*, besides; *selon*, according to; *suivant*, according to.

Prepositions of separation are: *sans*, without; *excepté*, except; *hormis*, save.

Prepositions of opposition are: *contre*, against; *malgré*, in spite of; *nonobstant*, notwithstanding.

Prepositions of purpose are: *envers*, towards; *touchant*, about; *pour*, for.

Prepositions of cause and means are: *par*, by; *moyennant*, by means of; *attendu*, considering.

Prepositions of specification are: *à*, to; *de*, of; *en*, in.

REMARKS 1.—Besides these prepositions, which may be called simple, there are many others, composed mostly with the preposition *à*, a noun or an adverb, and the preposition *de*.

This is a list of some of these expressions:

|                                               |                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>à cause de</i> , on account of             | <i>au dessous de</i> , under                   |
| <i>à côté de</i> , by                         | <i>au dessus de</i> , over                     |
| <i>à fleur de</i> , level with                | <i>au devant de</i> , before                   |
| <i>à force de</i> , by dint of                | <i>au derrière de</i> , behind                 |
| <i>à l'égard de</i> , with regard to, towards | <i>au lieu de</i> , instead of                 |
| <i>à l'insu de</i> , unknown to               | <i>au milieu de</i> , amidst, in the middle of |
| <i>à raison de</i> , at the rate of           | <i>au moyen de</i> , by means of               |
| <i>à rebours de</i> , contrary to             | <i>au niveau de</i> , even with                |
| <i>à travers de</i> , through                 | <i>auprès de</i> , near                        |
| <i>au delà de</i> , on that side, beyond      | <i>autour de</i> , around                      |
| <i>au dedans de</i> , within                  | <i>au travers de</i> , through, &c.            |
| <i>au dehors de</i> , without                 |                                                |

2.—There are some other prepositions composed in a similar manner but without the preposition *à*; as,

|                                  |                              |                                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>en deça de</i> , on this side | <i>hors de</i> , out of      | <i>vis à vis de</i> , opposite to, &c. |
| <i>en dépit de</i> , in spite of | <i>le long de</i> , along by | <i>tout près de</i> , close to         |
| <i>faute de</i> , for want of    | <i>près de</i> , near        | <i>proche de</i> , near                |

3.—There are four prepositions which have *à* instead of *de*; viz: *jusqu'à*, as far as; *conformément à*, according to; *quant à*, as to; *par rapport à*, with regard to.

4.—Prepositions in French are always followed by the Infinitive.—*Je suis curieux de le voir*. I am curious of seeing it.

EXCEPTION.—The preposition *en* which before verbs generally translates *by*, is the only one which governs the present participle.

*Vous l'apprendrez en parlant*. You will learn it *by speaking*.



|                                 |                                   |                                 |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| back, <i>dos m.</i>             | fruit, <i>fruit m.</i>            | to publish, <i>publier</i>      |
| ban, <i>ban m.</i>              | grapes, <i>raisin m.</i>          | to relish, <i>savourer</i>      |
| bunch, <i>grappe f.</i>         | impediment, <i>empêchement m.</i> | to resist, <i>résister</i>      |
| church, <i>église f.</i>        | to live, <i>demeurer</i>          | to return, <i>retourner</i>     |
| consent, <i>consentement m.</i> | marriage, <i>mariage m.</i>       | severe, <i>sévère</i>           |
| critical, <i>critique</i>       | natural, <i>naturel</i>           | to succeed, <i>réussir</i>      |
| to cross, <i>traverser</i>      | nor, <i>ni</i>                    | temptation, <i>tentation f.</i> |
| cupboard, <i>buffet m.</i>      | to pardon, <i>pardonner</i>       | to travel, <i>voyager</i>       |
|                                 |                                   | unhappy, <i>malheureux</i>      |

### Exercise No. 25.

1. He is in the street.—She was before the door.—His house is between the church and your cousin's house.—We walked (*imperfect*\*) towards Paris.—The cat is under the table.—The grapes are on the cupboard.—You will speak before him.—We shall walk as far as the town.—They were (*imp.*) with us.—I like them all, except your friend. They were (*imp.*) without money.—He has done<sup>1</sup> that in spite of me. This parcel is for your sister.—I have spoken to your aunt of this business. He was (*imp.*) by me.—The water was (*imp.*) nearly level with the street. He learns by dint of application.—We walked (*past definite*) at the rate of four miles an<sup>2</sup> hour.—His garden is on that side of the river.—I found (*p. d.*) him under a tree.—He will be here instead of his brother.—We shall walk around the garden.—The street was (*imp.*) built along the river.—He lives close to the church.—His house is opposite to ours.

(†) Receive (*s.*)—do not love—render (*p.*)—speak (*s.*)—let us render—let us sing—love (*s.*)—do not speak—let us walk—do not receive—love (*p.*)—let us cross—punish (*s.*)—let us finish—build (*s.*)—let us resist—do not punish—resist (*p.*)—render (*s.*)—do not sing—pardon (*s.*)—receive (*p.*)—finish (*s.*)—let us pardon—cross (*p.*)—let us receive—build (*p.*)—let us punish—do not render—punish (*p.*)—speak (*p.*)—let us love.

2. Mon oncle est venu au devant de<sup>3</sup> moi. Son mariage a été conclu<sup>4</sup> malgré mes objections. J'ai acheté ces fruits près de l'église. Il a chanté au lieu de son cousin. On ne peut<sup>5</sup> rien apprendre<sup>6</sup> sans travailler. Nous sommes venus<sup>7</sup> en marchant le long de la rivière. Ce village est situé en deçà de la montagne. Il a résisté en dépit de la tentation. Le buffet était entre les deux fenêtres.

My brother was (*imp.*) with me in the garden all the afternoon. He does not succeed for want of application. Sit down<sup>8</sup> close to me. Pay him that money at the rate of ten francs a<sup>9</sup> month. Walk about<sup>10</sup> two hours and you will arrive on that side of the mountain.

1 done, *fait* 2 an, *par* 3 est venu au devant de, has come to meet 4 conclu, concluded 5 peut, can 6 apprendre, to learn 7 sommes venus, have come 8 sit down, *asseyez-vous* 9 a, *par* 10 about, *environ*

(\*) As the past definite has been given in the preceding lesson, we shall now indicate when the English past will have to be translated either by the past definite or by the Imperfect.

(†) See for the Imperative of the four conjugations (Supplement, p. p. 10 to 13).

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What are prepositions?
2. Into how many classes can prepositions be divided?
3. Give the principal prepositions of place.
4. Translate *before* and *after* as prepositions of order.
5. What are the principal prepositions of union and separation?
6. Translate *against*, *in spite of*.
7. Give the principal prepositions of purpose, cause and means.
8. What are the prepositions of specification?
9. Translate *on account of*, *unknown to*, *contrary to*.
10. Give some compound prepositions, which do not begin with the preposition *à*.
11. What is the preposition which is the last word of nearly every compound preposition?
12. What are the four compound prepositions which end with *à* instead of *de*?
13. What mood do prepositions govern in French?
14. What is the only preposition which governs the present participle?

## Conversation.

In what room do you live?

I live in the room of the second floor between yours and my brother's.

Can you see (*pouvez-vous voir*) far beyond the wall of the garden?

I can see (*je peux voir*) the park and all the houses built along the river.

How long will you stay with them?

Till the end of the month.

How did you learn (*avez-vous appris*) French so well?

By dint of perseverance, by means of a good grammar and by taking advantage of every opportunity I found to speak it.

How long did you learn it?

I learned it (*ai appris*) for two years and a half?

Dans quelle chambre demeurez-vous?

Je demeure dans la chambre du deuxième étage, entre la vôtre et celle de mon frère.

Pouvez-vous voir loin au delà du mur du jardin?

Je peux voir le parc et toutes les maisons bâties le long de la rivière.

Combien de temps resterez-vous avec eux?

Jusqu'à la fin du mois.

Comment avez-vous si bien appris le français?

A force de persévérance, au moyen d'une bonne grammaire et en profitant de toutes les occasions que je trouvais de le parler.

Combien de temps l'avez-vous appris?

Je l'ai appris pendant deux ans et demi.

## Reading Exercise No. 25.

Un écolier<sup>1</sup> revenait<sup>2</sup> de l'église, où il avait entendu<sup>3</sup> publier des bans de mariage. En traversant le réfectoire il vit<sup>4</sup> sur le buffet des raisins magnifiques, et ne pouvant<sup>5</sup> résister à la tentation il en prit<sup>6</sup> un; puis se rappelant<sup>7</sup> la manière dont<sup>8</sup> les bans avaient été publiés, et ne se croyant<sup>9</sup> vu<sup>10</sup>, ni entendu<sup>11</sup> de personne, il dit: "Il y a<sup>12</sup> promesse de mariage entre cette grappe de raisin et ma bouche: toute personne qui connaîtrait<sup>13</sup> quelque empêchement à ce futur mariage est tenue<sup>14</sup> de le faire savoir<sup>15</sup> avant la célébration." Alors il savoura le fruit qui, très bon naturellement, avait en outre l'attrait<sup>16</sup> du fruit défendu<sup>17</sup>. Malheureusement le directeur l'avait aperçu<sup>18</sup> et entendu à travers une fenêtre entr'ouverte<sup>19</sup> et quelques instants après il le faisait venir<sup>20</sup> dans son cabinet<sup>21</sup>, et sans autre préambule<sup>22</sup>, il s'écriait<sup>23</sup> en brandissant<sup>24</sup> une verge<sup>25</sup>: "Il y a promesse de mariage entre cette verge et votre dos: toute personne qui connaîtrait quelque empêchement à ce futur mariage est tenue de le faire savoir avant la célébration." Toutefois, dans ce moment critique, l'écolier ne perdit<sup>26</sup> pas son sang-froid<sup>27</sup> et avant que le bras vengeur<sup>28</sup> ne fût retombé<sup>29</sup> sur lui: "Arrêtez, Monsieur le Directeur," s'écria-t-il, "je connais<sup>30</sup> un empêchement au mariage projeté<sup>31</sup>: c'est qu'une des deux parties intéressées<sup>32</sup> n'y donne pas son consentement." Cette répartie<sup>33</sup> désarma<sup>34</sup> la colère du maître, qui pardonna à l'écolier, après l'avoir cependant sévèrement admonesté<sup>35</sup>.

1 *écolier*, school boy, 2 *revenait*, was coming back, 3 *entendu*, heard, 4 *vit*, saw, 5 *ne pouvant*, not being able, 6 *prit*, took, 7 *se rappelant*, remembering, 8 *dont*, in which, 9 *croyant*, believing, 10 *vu*, seen, 11 *entendu*, heard. 12 *il y a*, there is, 13 *connaîtrait*, would know, 14 *tenue*, bound, 15 *faire savoir*, make known, 16 *attrait*, attraction, 17 *défendu*, forbidden, 18 *aperçu*, perceived, 19 *entr'ouverte*, ajar, 20 *faisait venir*, made him come, 21 *cabinet*, study, 22 *préambule*, preamble, 23 *s'écriait*, exclaimed, 24 *brandissant*, brandishing, 25 *verge*, rod, 26 *perdit*, lost, 27 *sang-froid*, coolness, 28 *vengeur*, avenging, 29 *fût retombé*, had fallen, 30 *connais*, know, 31 *projeté*, projected, 32 *intéressées*, interested, 33 *répartie*, reply, 34 *désarma*, disarmed, 35 *admonesté*, admonished.

## Conjunctions.

Conjunctions are so called because they join together sentences or the different parts of sentences.

There are two kinds of conjunctions : simple conjunctions, which consist of one word only, and compound conjunctions.

### Government of Conjunctions.

Conjunctions govern either the infinitive, indicative or subjunctive. Those governing the infinitive are formed with the preposition *de*, as, *afin de*, in order to; *à moins de*, unless; *avant de*, before; *au lieu de*, instead of; *de crainte de*, for fear that, &c.

*Il vint me voir avant de partir.* He came to see me *before* leaving.

In order to use an infinitive after a conjunction, it is necessary that this infinitive should refer to the subject of the principal sentence, as in the above example, which would not be correct if *partir* should refer to *me* instead of *il*.

As a rule, simple conjunctions all govern the indicative.

*Je parlerai si vous voulez.* I shall speak *if* you like.

*Je pense, donc je suis.* I think, *then* I exist.

*Je viendrai quand il sera ici.* I shall come *when* he is here.

The following conjunctions, all formed with the conjunction *que*, govern the subjunctive :

*afin que*, in order that  
*à moins que*, unless  
*avant que*, before  
*au cas que*, in case that  
*bien que*, though, although  
*de crainte que*, lest  
*de peur que*, for fear that  
*encore que*, though  
*jusqu'à ce que*, till, until

*loin que*, far from  
*malgré que*, although  
*non pas que*, not that  
*pour que*, in order that  
*pourvu que*, provided that  
*quoique*, although  
*sans que*, without  
*soit que*, whether  
*supposé que*, suppose that

The conjunction *que*, that, governs the subjunctive after verbs used negatively, and also verbs which imply an idea of fear, doubt, emotion, uncertainty, wish or command, and impersonal verbs. (\*)

*Je désire qu'il vienne.* I wish *that* he may come.

*Je ne veux pas qu'il parte.* I do not wish *him* to go.

*Il faut que vous parliez.* You *must* speak.

*A moins que*, unless, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, lest, for fear that, always require the verb that follows them to be preceded by the particle *ne*.

*A moins qu'il ne vienne.* Unless he should come.

*De peur qu'il ne parte.* For fear that he would leave.

After *Avant que* the verb may be preceded by *ne*.

*Reviendra-t-il avant que je ne sorte?* Will he return before I go out?

(\*) Rules about the use of the Subjunctive are given in full in Lesson 74, page 294.



to answer, *répondre*  
 to assign, *assigner*  
 bet, *pari m.*  
 to continue, *continuer*  
 definite, *défini*  
 to gain, *gagner*  
 gesture, *geste m.*  
 to increase, *accroître*  
 to indicate, *indiquer*

interval, *intervalle m.*  
 to inundate, *inonder*  
 market, *marché m.*  
 mud, *boue f.*  
 pace, *pas m.*  
 praise, *éloge m.*  
 to pretend, *prétendre*  
 prey, *proie f.*

reign, *règne m.*  
 to remain, *demeurer*  
 to roll, *rouler*  
 to sell, *vendre*  
 soil, *sol m.*  
 sonorous, *sonore*  
 speech, *discours m.*  
 unbecoming, *malséant*

### Exercise No. 26.

1. In order to speak.—Before answering. — If you like. — When you sing.—In order that you may arrive(\*). — Unless you pretend. — Before you continue.—In case that he may sell his horse. — Although you indicate to me his house.—Lest you fall.—For fear that you recommence.—Though you are very prudent.—Till he answers. — Although he has no fortune.—Although he speaks perfectly. — Not that I am satisfied.—In order that he may sell it.—Provided that we give him that.—Although it is late.—Without your buying anything.—Whether they are ill.—Suppose that he is absent.

(\*)That you may love—that I might love—that he may not love—that we might not love—that I may sing—that we might love—that we may sing—that thou mightest love—that he may walk—that thou mayest love—that they (*m.*) might love—that you may not love—that we might continue—that he may love—that you might love—that they (*f.*) might not love—that he may sing—that we may love—that I may love—that he might love—that we may give—that he may not remain.

2. Je continuerai pourvu que vous me donniez votre opinion. Soit que vous soyez indiscret, ou que vous agissiez imprudemment il ne vous aime pas. Je viendrai<sup>1</sup> en cas que vous soyez à la maison<sup>2</sup>. Bien que vous ne l'aimiez pas, il parle toujours bien de vous. Je vous donnerai une lettre afin que vous la lui donniez. Il nous apporte toujours des fruits, quoique je ne les aime pas beaucoup. Je lui donne peu de travail, afin qu'il ait le temps d'aller vous voir<sup>3</sup>. Je pars<sup>4</sup> de peur qu'il ne m'attende.

Speak to him in order that he may give it (*m.*) to my brother. I like him although he speaks badly of me. I will remain until your uncle arrives. I refuse whether he is satisfied or not<sup>5</sup>. Send it immediately lest he will receive (*pres. subj.*) it too late. I lend it (*f.*) to you until I commence my lessons. I say<sup>6</sup> it to you in order that you may buy some in the<sup>7</sup> market. This coat is good although it is very cheap.

1 *viendrai*, will come 2 *à la maison*, at home 3 *d'aller vous voir*, to go and see you 4 *pars*, leave 5 not, *non* 6 I say, *je dis* 7 in the, *au*

(\*) See Suppl. for the Subjunctive of verbs Pages 6 to 13.



## Questions on Grammar.

1. Why are conjunctions so called?
2. How many kinds of conjunctions are there?
3. What moods do conjunctions govern in French?
4. Which are the conjunctions which govern the Infinitive?
5. What is the condition required to use the Infinitive after conjunctions?
6. What are the conjunctions which govern the Indicative?
7. How are the conjunctions formed which govern the Subjunctive?
8. Give some of the conjunctions which govern the Subjunctive?
9. When does the conjunction *que* govern the Subjunctive?
10. What are the conjunctions which require the particle *ne* to be placed before the verb that follows *que*?

## Conversation.

What will you do this morning before you go to your office?

I shall write a letter in order to know if I must go and see my uncle this evening.

Will you take me with you if you go?

With great pleasure, unless Mr X. should accompany me.

Will you come back before I go to bed?

I do not know, although I shall do my best in order to be here as soon as possible.

In case that I should go with you, could you tell me what train you intend to take in order that I might meet you at the station.

It will be six o'clock before I am able to leave the office; although I should like very much to leave earlier.

Then I shall be at the station at half past six.

Do you take much luggage with you?

No, I only take a very small port-manteau.

Que ferez-vous ce matin, avant d'aller à votre bureau?

J'écrirai une lettre afin de savoir si je dois aller voir mon oncle dans la soirée.

Voulez-vous m'emmener avec vous si vous y allez?

Avec grand plaisir, à moins que Monsieur X. ne m'accompagne.

Reviendrez-vous avant que j'aie me coucher?

Je ne sais pas, quoique je veuille faire de mon mieux pour être ici le plus tôt possible.

Au cas que j'aie avec vous, pourriez-vous me dire quel train vous avez l'intention de prendre afin que je puisse vous rencontrer à la station.

Il sera six heures avant que je puisse quitter le bureau; quoique je désire beaucoup le quitter plus tôt.

Je serai donc à la station à six heures et demie.

Emportez-vous beaucoup de bagages?

Non, je ne prends qu'un très petit porte-manteau.

## Reading Exercise No. 26.

Le docteur Samuel Johnson fit<sup>1</sup> un jour un pari avec l'un de ses amis: il prétendait qu'il irait<sup>2</sup> au marché de poissons de Billingsgate et qu'il mettrait<sup>3</sup> une des marchandes<sup>4</sup> en colère, sans dire<sup>5</sup> un mot qu'elle pût<sup>6</sup> comprendre.<sup>7</sup> Il s'y rendit<sup>8</sup> en effet<sup>9</sup> et s'étant mis<sup>10</sup> à quelques pas d'une de ces dames, il se boucha<sup>11</sup> le nez avec affectation pour indiquer que le poisson qu'elle vendait n'était pas plus frais<sup>12</sup> qu'il ne fallait<sup>13</sup>. Le geste ne demeura pas inaperçu<sup>14</sup>, et le docteur fut inondé d'épithètes<sup>15</sup> aussi sonores que malséantes, la dernière desquelles assignait à la mère du docteur une place bien définie dans le règne des quadrupèdes<sup>16</sup>. Le docteur lui répondit: "Vous êtes un article, Madame!" — "Pas plus article que vous-même<sup>17</sup>, rustre mal élevé<sup>18</sup>." — "Madame vous êtes un substantif." — "Et vous ... vous ... vous," bégaya<sup>19</sup> la virago<sup>20</sup>, à qui la colère de se voir insultée<sup>21</sup> en des termes inconnus<sup>22</sup> ôtait<sup>23</sup> déjà l'usage de la parole<sup>24</sup>. — "Vous êtes un pronom!" La marchande écuma de<sup>25</sup> rage, mais ne put proférer que<sup>26</sup> des sons inarticulés<sup>27</sup>. — "Vous êtes un verbe, un participe, un adverbe, un adjectif, une conjonction, une préposition, une interjection, continua Johnson en lançant<sup>28</sup> chacun de ces mots, par intervalle, de façon à<sup>29</sup> en accroître la portée<sup>30</sup>. L'énumération des dix parties du discours, n'avait jamais produit<sup>31</sup> un effet aussi formidable: à la dixième, la dame de Billingsgate se roulait dans la boue qui couvrait<sup>32</sup> le sol, en proie à de véritables convulsions: Johnson avait gagné son pari.

1 *fit*, made, 2 *irait*, would go, 3 *mettrait*, would put, 4 *marchandes*, stall-keepers, 5 *dire*, saying, 6 *pût*, could, 7 *comprendre*, understand, 8 *s'y rendit*, betook himself there, 9 *en effet*, in fact, 10 *s'étant mis*, having placed himself, 11 *boucha*, stopped, 12 *plus frais*, sweeter, 13 *qu'il ne fallait*, than it was necessary, 14 *inaperçu*, unperceived, 15 *d'épithètes*, with epithets, 16 *quadrupèdes*, quadrupeds, 17 *vous-même*, yourself, 18 *rustre mal élevé*, villanous scoundrel, 19 *bégaya*, stammered, 20 *virago*, virago, 21 *se voir insultée*, seeing herself abused, 22 *inconnus*, unknown, 23 *ôtait*, took away, 24 *l'usage de la parole*, the faculty of speaking, 25 *écuma de*, foamed with, 26 *ne put proférer que*, could only utter, 27 *inarticulés*, inarticulate, 28 *lançant*, casting, 29 *de façon à*, in such a manner as to, 30 *la portée*, the effect, 31 *produit*, produced, 32 *couvrait*, covered.

Conjunctions (*continued*).(*This lesson is for reference only.*)

Besides their division into simple and compound, conjunctions are also divided into *copulative*, *augmentative*, *alternative*, *hypothetic*, *adversative*, *extensive*, *periodical*, *causative*, *conclusive*, *explicative*, *transitive* and *conductive*.

I.—*Copulative* conjunctions merely connect without adding anything to the idea; there are two of them: *et*, and, *ni*, neither, nor.

II.—*Augmentative* imply an idea of augmentation; they are the following: *de plus*, *bien plus*, *au surplus*, moreover; *d'ailleurs*, *outré que*, besides; *encore*, still.

III.—*Alternative* imply an idea of alternative or distinction they are as follow: *ou*, or; *ou bien*, either; *sinon*, if not; *tantôt*, sometimes.

IV.—*Hypothetic* or *conditional* conjunctions imply the idea of a condition without which what is meant by the principal sentence ceases to take place. The principal are the following: *si*, if, whether; *soit que*, whether; *pourvu que*, provided that; *à moins que*, unless; *quand*, when; *à condition que*, under the condition that; *en cas que*, in case that; *supposé que*, suppose that.

V.—*Adversative* conjunctions are those which indicate some difference, opposition or restriction between what precedes and what follows them, as, *mais*, but; *quoique*, although; *bien que*, though; *cependant*, however; *néanmoins*, nevertheless; *toutefois*, however; *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, lest, for fear that, &c.

VI.—*Extensive* conjunctions connect while enlarging the idea. They are: *jusqu'à ce que*, till; *encore*, still; *enfin*, at last; *aussi*, also; *même*, even; *tant*, so much.

VII.—*Periodical* conjunctions refer to a certain period or time, as: *quand*, *lorsque*, when; *dans le temps que*, at the time when; *pendant que*, *durant que*, while; *tandis que*, whilst; *tant que*, as long as; *aussitôt que*, as soon as; *dès que*, since; *avant que*, before; *depuis que*, since; *après que*, after; *à peine*, hardly, &c.

VIII.—*Causative* conjunctions imply an idea of cause or motive, as, *afin que*, in order that; *parce que*, because; *comme*, as; *car*, for; *puisque*, since; *d'autant que*, whereas; *aussi*, also; *attendu que*, considering that.

IX.—*Conclusive* conjunctions deduce a conclusion from a preceding sentence, as, *or*, now; *donec*, then; *par conséquent*, consequently; *c'est pourquoi*, therefore.

X.—*Explicative* conjunctions connect two sentences while conveying further explanations, as, *comme*, as; *en tant que*, as; *savoir*, *c'est-à-dire*, that is to say; *surtout*, above all; *de sorte que*, *de façon que*, so that; *si bien que*, so that.

XI.—*Transitive* conjunctions imply the idea of transition, as: *or*, now; *au reste*, besides; *du reste*, moreover; *après tout*, after all; *quant à*, as for, as to.

all at once, *tout de suite*  
 American, *américain*  
 to declare, *déclarer*  
 detail, *détail m.*  
 England, *Angleterre f.*  
 extraordinary, *extra-ordinaire*  
 fact, *fait m.*  
 feat, *prouesse f.*  
 journey, *voyage m.*

lie, *mensonge m.*  
 matter, *matière f.*  
 ocean, *océan m.*  
 once, *une fois*  
 passenger, *passager m.*  
 pigeon, *pigeon m.*  
 port, *port m.*  
 precise, *précis*  
 to relate, *raconter*  
 to remark, *remarquer*

to repeat, *répéter*  
 skill, *adresse f.*  
 steamboat, *bateau-à-vapeur m.*  
 story, *histoire f.*  
 to talk, *causer*  
 triumph, *triomphe m.*  
 turn, *tour m.*  
 United - States, *Etats-Unis m.*

### Exercise No. 27.

1. The cat and the dog.—I remark and I repeat.—Neither you nor I.—Neither my brother nor my sister.—Moreover he has much skill.—Besides I have visited<sup>1</sup> all the ports of the Ocean.—Either you or I.—If not I shall go<sup>2</sup> to the United States.—If you like.—Whether you are satisfied or not.—Unless you repeat it.—When you would be here.—But he is an honest man.—Although you are my brother.—However you are discontented.—Lest he should be ill.—Till you are old.—When I was at Paris.—While he was young.—As soon as you come<sup>3</sup>.—After he had finished.—Because it is extraordinary.—As you know<sup>4</sup>.

(\*) That we may punish—that I might punish—that you may receive—that he might not receive—that thou mightest not punish—that they (*m.*) might punish—that I may receive—that she may receive—that I might not receive—that he may punish—that we might punish—that you might receive—that we may receive—that they (*m.*) might not receive—that you may punish—that you might punish—that they (*f.*) may receive—that she may not receive—that thou mayest punish—that he might punish—that they (*f.*) may punish.

2. Je parlerai à votre ami et je lui dirai<sup>5</sup> de venir<sup>6</sup> demain matin. Je n'aime ni son frère ni sa sœur. Ou bien vous me donnerez celui-là, ou bien j'en achèterai un autre. Vous finirez votre travail, sinon vous serez puni. Tantôt il arrivait par le bateau à vapeur, tantôt il venait par le chemin de fer<sup>7</sup>. Je répèterai cette règle si vous le trouvez nécessaire. Quoique vous lui ayez raconté ce voyage extraordinaire il ne vous a pas cru<sup>8</sup>. Aussitôt que vous aurez fini de causer, je parlerai. Je dis<sup>9</sup> cela afin que vous soyez prudent.

We shall commence our journey all at once for fear that the weather might be<sup>10</sup> too bad if we should wait<sup>11</sup> till Saturday. If you repeat this extraordinary story, people will think that you are an impostor. He is very learned, however he is very modest. I shall punish him because he has talked during the lesson. I shall remain until he comes back<sup>12</sup> from his journey. Sometimes I find it easy, sometimes I find it difficult.

1 visited, *visité* 2 I shall go, *j'irai* 3 come, *viendrez* 4 know, *savez* 5 *dirai*, shall tell 6 *de venir*, to come 7 *chemin de fer*, railway 8 *cru*, believed 9 *dis*, say 10 would be, *ne soit* 11 should wait, *attendions* 12 comes back, *revienne*

(\*) See Suppl for the subjunctive of verbs of the 2nd and 3rd Conjugations (Pages 11 and 12)



### Questions on Grammar,

1. How also can conjunctions be divided ?
2. Is there any idea implied in *copulative* conjunctions ? what are they ?
3. What is the idea implied in *augmentative* conjunctions ? give some.
4. What idea do *alternative* conjunctions imply ? what are they ?
5. What do *hypothetic* or *conditional* conjunctions imply ? give some.
6. What are *adversative* conjunctions ? give some.
7. What is the effect of *extensive* conjunctions ? give some.
8. To what do *periodical* conjunctions refer ? give some.
9. What is the idea implied in *causative* conjunctions ? give some.
10. What is deduced by *conclusive* conjunctions ? give some.
11. How do *explicative* conjunctions connect two sentences ? give some.
12. What is the idea implied in *transitive* conjunctions ? give some.

### Conversation.

|                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Did you bring your brother and sister with you ?                                                             | Avez-vous amené votre frère et votre sœur avec vous ?                                                                             |
| I brought neither the one nor the other, but they will come this afternoon.                                  | Je n'ai amené ni l'un ni l'autre, mais ils viendront cette après-midi.                                                            |
| When will you go to Paris ?                                                                                  | Quand irez-vous à Paris ?                                                                                                         |
| I shall go there either in August or in September.                                                           | J'irai soit en août, soit en septembre.                                                                                           |
| Though you are very busy, I should like you to pay us a visit in the country. Could you come next Saturday ? | Quoique vous soyez très occupé, je voudrais que vous nous fissiez une visite à la campagne. Pourriez-vous venir samedi prochain ? |
| I cannot tell you until I have seen my partner, but I shall let you know before Friday.                      | Je ne puis vous le dire, jusqu'à ce que j'aie vu mon associé, mais je vous le ferai savoir avant vendredi.                        |
| Will you come and see my father while I am away ?                                                            | Viendrez-vous voir mon père, tandis que je serai absent ?                                                                         |
| I shall come and see him every Sunday, if not twice a week.                                                  | Je viendrai le voir chaque dimanche, sinon deux fois par semaine.                                                                 |
| I should like you also to write to me often.                                                                 | J'aimerais aussi que vous m'écrivissiez souvent.                                                                                  |
| I shall do so under the condition that you will answer me immediately.                                       | Je le ferai, à la condition que vous me répondiez immédiatement.                                                                  |
| Have you bought a house since I saw you last week ?                                                          | Avez-vous acheté une maison depuis que je vous ai vu la semaine dernière ?                                                        |
| Yes, I bought one the day before yesterday.                                                                  | Oui, j'en ai acheté une avant-hier.                                                                                               |



## Reading Exercise No. 27.

---

Pendant le dernier voyage d'un bateau à vapeur qui fait le service<sup>1</sup> entre l'Angleterre et les Etats-Unis, deux passagers, l'un Anglais et l'autre Américain, causaient de prouesses en matière de force et d'adresse. Tout-à-coup, et après avoir parlé des exploits<sup>2</sup> des autres, l'Américain déclara qu'il lui était arrivé<sup>3</sup> une fois de tirer<sup>4</sup> neuf cent-quatre-vingt-dix-neuf pigeons, l'un après l'autre. "Pourquoi pas mille?" remarqua son interlocuteur.—"J'ai dit<sup>5</sup> neuf cent-quatre-vingt-dix-neuf," répéta l'Américain d'un air vexé.<sup>6</sup> "Je ne ferais<sup>7</sup> certainement pas un mensonge pour un pigeon." Ce fut alors le tour de l'Anglais qui raconta avec des détails très circonstanciés,<sup>8</sup> le fait extraordinaire d'un homme qui avait nagé<sup>9</sup> tout le temps de Liverpool à Boston. "L'avez-vous vu<sup>10</sup>?" demanda l'Américain: "Si je l'ai vu? je faisais<sup>11</sup> précisément comme aujourd'hui la traversée<sup>12</sup> de l'Océan, et nous passâmes tout près de lui<sup>13</sup> à<sup>14</sup> quelques milles du port de Boston."—"Eh bien<sup>15</sup>! Monsieur," s'écria<sup>16</sup> l'Américain, d'un<sup>17</sup> air de triomphe "je suis bien heureux que vous l'ayez vu<sup>18</sup>: c'était moi; et, désormais<sup>19</sup>, si quelqu'un a l'air<sup>20</sup> de douter<sup>21</sup> de la véracité de cette histoire, j'en appellerai<sup>22</sup> à votre témoignage<sup>23</sup>, puisque vous avez été témoin oculaire<sup>24</sup> de mon exploit.

1 *fait le service*, plies, 2 *exploits*, exploits, 3 *était arrivé*, had happened 4 *tirer*, to shoot, 5 *j'ai dit*, I have said, 6 *vexé*, vexed, 7 *ferais*, would make, 8 *circonstanciés*, precise, 9 *nagé*, swum, 10 *vu*, seen, 11 *je faisais*, I was making, 12 *la traversée*, the (sea) voyage, 13 *tout près de lui*, close to him, 14 *à*, within, 15 *eh bien*, very well, 16 *s'écria*, exclaimed, 17 *d'*, with, 18 *ayez vu*, have seen, 19 *désormais*, henceforth, 20 *a l'air*, seems, 21 *de douter*, to suspect, 22 *j'en appellerai*, I shall appeal, 23 *témoignage*, testimony, 24 *témoin oculaire*, eye witness.

Conjunctions (*concluded*).

XII.—The *conductive* conjunction, which is so called because it conducts the sentence to its perfection, is the conjunction *que*, that. (See Lesson 26).

*Que* conjunction must not be confounded with *que* adverb and *que* relative or interrogative pronoun.

*Que* is an adverb at the beginning of the second term of a comparison, and translates *as*, *than*.

*Il est plus riche que moi.* He is richer *than* I. *Il est aussi savant que son frère.* He is as learned *as* his brother.

*Que* is also adverb, when joined to *ne*, in the meaning of *only*, *but*, or at the beginning of exclamative sentences in the meaning of *how*.

*Il n'a que quinze ans.* He is *but* fifteen years old.  
*Que vous êtes bon!* *How* kind you are!

*Que* is a relative pronoun when it is preceded by a noun or pronoun, called its antecedent, and translates *whom* or *which*.

*L'homme que vous connaissez.* The man *whom* you know.

*Le livre que vous lisez.* The book *which* you read.

*C'est le mien que vous avez.* It is mine *which* you have.

*Que* is an interrogative pronoun, when at the beginning of an interrogative sentence and translates *what*.

*Que voulez-vous?* *What* do you wish?

## Interjections,

Interjections are words used to express the sudden affections of the mind.

They are divided into:

1. Interjections of joy, as, *ah!* *ah!* *bon!* well!
2. grief: *ah!* *ah!* *hélas!* alas! *aié!* *ouf!* dear me!
3. fear: *ah!* *ah!* *oh!* *oh!*
4. aversion: *fi!* *fi donc!* fie!
5. consent: *soit!* let it be so!
6. derision: *bah!* pshaw!
7. surprise: *eh!* *eh bien!* *hé!* *ah!* halloo!
8. to encourage: *allons!* *courage!* *ça!* come on! cheer up!
9. to warn: *gare!* beware! *holà!* *hoa!* hoy!
10. to call: *holà!* *hoa!* hoy! *hé!* *eh!*
11. to impose silence: *chut!* hush!
12. to applaud: *bravo!* *bravo!* hurrah!

NOTE.—*Oh* is spelled *ô* before nouns and pronouns:

*ô Dieu!* *Oh* God! *ô mon père!* *Oh* my father! *ô vous!* *Oh* you!

|                                  |                                 |                                   |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| apartment, <i>appartement m.</i> | empire, <i>empire m.</i>        | to open, <i>ouvrir</i>            |
| ape, <i>singe m.</i>             | to employ, <i>employer</i>      | to oppose, <i>opposer</i>         |
| blow, <i>coup m.</i>             | to exasperate, <i>exaspérer</i> | philosopher, <i>philosophe m.</i> |
| cane, <i>canne f.</i>            | extreme, <i>extrême</i>         | to prepare, <i>préparer</i>       |
| coach, <i>voiture f.</i>         | face, <i>figure f.</i>          | proceeding, <i>procédé m.</i>     |
| comedy, <i>comédie f.</i>        | German, <i>allemand</i>         | to protest, <i>protester</i>      |
| to consist, <i>consister</i>     | to increase, <i>augmenter</i>   | Prussia, <i>Prusse f.</i>         |
| to dress, <i>habiller</i>        | inn, <i>auberge f.</i>          | to try, <i>essayer</i>            |
| effort, <i>effort m.</i>         | means, <i>moyen m.</i>          |                                   |

### Exercise No. 28.

1. I think that his face is very beautiful.—I do not think that the coach stops<sup>1</sup> at the inn.—He is more learned than his brother.—He has but one brother.—How patient you are!—The professor whom you know<sup>2</sup>.—The news which he received (*past def.*).—It is she whom he liked (*imp.*) best.—Well! I am very satisfied.—Alas! his father is dead. Fie! what have you done<sup>3</sup>?—Let it be so! I accept it.—Halloo! where are you!—Come on, my friends!—Beware, the passage is very dangerous. Ho! come this way<sup>4</sup>.—Hush! your mother sleeps<sup>5</sup>.

(\*) That we may return—that he might return—that they (*f.*) may return—that he might not return—that I may return—that we might return—that she may not return—that I might return—that he may not return—that you may return—that you might not return—that she may not return—that you might return—that we might not return—that they (*m.*) may return—that thou mayest return.

2. Je désire que vous alliez<sup>6</sup> voir<sup>7</sup> cette comédie. Je ne trouve pas que cette dame habille ses enfants avec beaucoup de goût. Les fleurs que vous avez dans votre jardin sont très belles. Les amis que vous avez sont très fidèles. Que vous êtes heureux! Je n'ai que deux heures à demeurer avec vous. Que désirez-vous? Je désire que vous soyez heureux. Hélas! il a perdu<sup>8</sup> toute sa fortune. Holà! votre père est dans la chambre et il désire que vous veniez<sup>9</sup>. Courage! vous aurez bientôt fini votre travail. Bravo! vos efforts seront récompensés. Silence! votre frère dort<sup>10</sup>. Fi donc! vous avez fait<sup>11</sup> une mauvaise action.

I believe<sup>12</sup> that he will be exasperated: he will protest against such<sup>13</sup> proceedings. Prussia is but one part of the German empire. His apartment consists of<sup>14</sup> four rooms rather<sup>15</sup> large than small. How beautiful those flowers are. Beware, the ape bites<sup>16</sup>. Let it be so, I shall give you ten francs for this cane. Hush! you will increase his grief if you speak to him of his misfortune.

<sup>1</sup> stops, *s'arrête* 2 know, *connaissez* 3 done, *fait* 4 come this way, *venez par ici* 5 sleeps, *dort* 6 alliez, may go 7 voir, to see 8 perdu, lost 9 venez, should come 10 dort, sleeps 11 fait, done 12 believe, *crois* 13 such, *de tels*, 14 of, *en* 15 rather, *plutôt* 16 bites, *mord*

(\*) See Suppl. for the subjunctive of verbs of the 4th conjugation Page 13.

## Questions on Grammar.

1. What is the *conductive* conjunction?
2. Why is it so called?
3. What are the words with which *que* conjunction must not be *con-*  
*founded*?
4. When is *que* an adverb?
5. When is *que* a relative pronoun?
6. When is *que* an interrogative pronoun?
7. What are interjections?
8. Give the interjections of *joy, grief, fear, and aversion.*
9. Give the interjections of *consent, derision, surprise, encouragement.*
10. What are the interjections used to *warn, to call, to silence, to ap-*  
*plaud?*

## Conversation.

What do you require?

I wish you to go to the bank to bring that money.

My brother has more time than I; would you allow him to go there instead of me?

Let it be so! but tell him to go at once.

Come on! be quick and do not remain too long away. When do you think you will be back?

I do not think that I shall be away more than three quarters of an hour.

Take care! there is a cab: did you not see it?

Yes, but I did not think that there was the slightest danger.

Halloo! where are you going?

I am going to the printing office.

Ah! have you anything to do there?

Certainly: I must go and correct some proofs.

Will you remain there for a long time?

Oh no! I shall only be there a few minutes.

Hush! somebody is speaking to me and I cannot hear what he says.

Que voulez-vous?

Jedésire que vous alliez à la banque pour porter cet argent.

Mon frère a plus de temps que moi; voulez-vous lui permettre d'y aller à ma place?

Soit! mais dites-lui d'y aller tout de suite.

Allons! dépêchez-vous et ne restez pas trop longtemps absent.

Quand pensez-vous que vous serez de retour?

Je ne pense pas que je sois absent plus de trois quarts d'heure.

Gare! voilà un fiacre: ne l'aviez-vous pas vu?

Si, mais je ne pensais pas qu'il y eût le moindre danger.

Holà! où allez-vous?

Je vais à l'imprimerie.

Ah! avez-vous quelque chose à y faire?

Certainement: il faut que j'aille corriger quelques épreuves.

Y resterez-vous longtemps?

Oh non! je n'y resterai que quelques minutes.

Chut! quelqu'un me parle et je ne peux pas entendre ce qu'il me dit.



## Reading Exercise No. 28.

Lorsque Frédéric le Grand, roi de Prusse, allait faire<sup>1</sup> de petites excursions, il emmenait<sup>2</sup> souvent Voltaire avec lui. Il arriva<sup>3</sup> donc qu'une fois<sup>4</sup> le roi s'étant conformé<sup>5</sup> à cette habitude, que le philosophe le suivait<sup>6</sup> seul dans une voiture. Or un jeune page, que Voltaire avait fait punir<sup>7</sup> sévèrement, quelques jours auparavant, avait résolu<sup>8</sup> de se venger,<sup>9</sup> et comme le service<sup>10</sup> du jeune homme consistait à précéder<sup>11</sup> le roi, et à voir<sup>12</sup> si les relais<sup>13</sup> avaient été préparés, il raconta à tous les maîtres-de-poste<sup>14</sup> que le roi avait un vieux singe qu'il aimait beaucoup, qu'il habillait comme un gentilhomme<sup>15</sup> et qu'il emmenait dans ses voyages. "L'animal," disait-il<sup>16</sup>, "ne connaît que<sup>17</sup> Sa Majesté; il est très-méchant<sup>18</sup>, et s'il voulait<sup>19</sup> essayer de sortir<sup>20</sup> de sa voiture, il faudrait<sup>21</sup> employer tous les moyens pour l'en empêcher<sup>22</sup>." Chaque fois donc que<sup>23</sup> Voltaire arrivait à une maison de poste<sup>24</sup> et voulait<sup>25</sup> descendre<sup>26</sup> de voiture, les gens<sup>27</sup> de l'auberge s'opposaient à ses efforts: plusieurs fois même<sup>28</sup>, comme il sortait<sup>29</sup> la main pour ouvrir la portière<sup>30</sup>, il reçut sur les doigts de bons coups de canne, à la risée<sup>31</sup> des assistants. Voltaire ne savait<sup>32</sup> pas un mot d'Allemand et ne pouvait<sup>33</sup> protester contre de pareils<sup>34</sup> procédés: sa rage en était extrême et les contorsions de sa figure augmentaient encore l'hilarité générale: La nouvelle se répandit<sup>35</sup> de village en village et tout le monde accourait<sup>36</sup> pour voir<sup>37</sup> le singe du roi. Cette comédie se renouvela<sup>38</sup> tout le long de la route, et pour exaspérer encore la colère de Voltaire, le roi trouva le tour<sup>39</sup> si bon qu'il ne voulut<sup>40</sup> pas que l'auteur en fût puni.

1 *allait faire*, went to make, 2 *emmenait*, took, 3 *il arriva*, it happened, 4 *une fois*, once, 5 *s'étant conformé à*, having complied with, 6 *suivait*, followed, 7 *avait fait punir*, had caused to be punished, 8 *résolu*, resolved, 9 *de se venger*, to revenge himself, 10 *service*, duty, 11 *à précéder*, in preceding, 12 *à voir*, seeing, 13 *relais*, relays, 14 *maîtres-de-poste*, post-masters, 15 *gentilhomme*, nobleman, 16 *disait-il*, he said, 17 *ne connaît que*, knows nobody but, 18 *très-méchant*, very vicious, 19 *s'il voulait*, if it wished, 20 *de sortir*, to come out, 21 *il faudrait*, it would be necessary, 22 *l'en empêcher*, to prevent it from doing so, 23 *que*, when, 24 *maison de poste*, post house, 25 *voulait*, wished, 26 *descendre*, alight, 27 *les gens*, the servants, 28 *même*, even, 29 *sortait*, put out, 30 *la portière*, the carriage door, 31 *risée*, laughing, 32 *savait*, knew, 33 *pouvait*, could, 34 *de pareils*, such, 35 *se répandit*, spread, 36 *accourait*, ran, 37 *voir*, to see, 38 *se renouvela*, was renewed, 39 *tour*, joke, 40 *il voulait*, wished.



## TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

## Vingt-neuvième Leçon

## Remarks on Verbs. (\*)

There are certain verbs which, without being irregular, present certain peculiarities in their conjugation.

## Verbs of the 1st Conjugation.

I.—Verbs ending in *cer*, take the cedilla under the *c* before *a* and *o*.—*Nous perceons* (from *percer*), we pierce ; *je perçais*, I pierced.

II.—Verbs ending in *ger* take an *e* after the *g* before *a* and *o*.

*Nous mangeons* (from *manger*), we eat ; *je mangeais*, I ate.

III.—Verbs ending in *eler* and *eter* double the *l* or the *t* before an *e* mute.

*J'appelle* (from *appeler*), I call ; *j'appellerai*, I shall call.

*Il jette* (from *jeter*), he throws ; *nous jetterions*, we should throw.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Acheter*, to buy ; *harceler*, to harass ; *peler*, to peel ; *déceler*, to disclose ; *bourreler*, to torment ; *geler*, to freeze ; *épeler*, to spell ; *becqueter*, to peck, take the grave accent on the *e* instead of doubling the consonant.

IV.—Verbs having in the infinitive an *é* in the last syllable but one, change that *é* into *è* before an *e* mute.

*J'espère* (from *espérer*), I hope ; *il espèrera*, he will hope.

Verbs having in the infinitive an *e* unaccented in the last syllable but one, change that *e* into *è* before an *e* mute.

*Je pèse* (from *pérer*), I weigh ; *nous mènerons* (from *mener*), we shall lead.

V.—Verbs ending in *yant* in the present participle change *y* into *i* before an *e* mute.

*Je paie* (from *payer*), I pay ; *ils essuient* (from *essuyer*), they wipe ; *vous emploierez* (from *employer*), they will employ.

Some writers, however, keep the *y* in verbs in *ayer*, as *payer*, and spell *je paye*.

## Verbs of the 2nd Conjugation.

*Haïr*, to hate, drops the diæresis in the three persons singular of the Present Indicative : *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*, and in the 2nd person singular of the Imperative *hais*.

*Haïr* is the only verb in French which takes no circumflex accent in the 3rd person singular of the Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

*Fleurir*, to bloom, to flourish, has two present Participles, *fleurissant*, blooming, and *florissant*, flourishing, and also two forms for the Imperfect Indicative.

*Bénir* has two past participles ; *bénit*, consecrated ; *béni*, blessed.

*De l'eau bénite*, holy water ; *il fut béni par son père*, he was blessed by his father.

## Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation.

Verbs in *cevoir*, like *recevoir*, take the cedilla under *c* before *u* : *je déçus*, *que je conçusse*.

The past participle of *devoir* is *dû* to distinguish it from *du*, of the. The feminine is spelt *due*.

(\*) See for verbs, the Supplement.

|                                    |                                 |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| to accompany, <i>accompagner</i>   | to degenerate, <i>dégénérer</i> | heroine, <i>héroïne f.</i>      |
| annal, <i>annale f.</i>            | devoted, <i>dévoué</i>          | love, <i>amour m.</i>           |
| astonishment, <i>étonnement m.</i> | discreet, <i>discret</i>        | nightly, <i>nocturne</i>        |
| chief, <i>chef m.</i>              | esteem, <i>estime f.</i>        | order, <i>ordre m.</i>          |
| combat, <i>combat m.</i>           | exploit, <i>exploit m.</i>      | report, <i>rapport m.</i>       |
| consent, <i>consentement m.</i>    | to expose, <i>exposer</i>       | republic, <i>république f.</i>  |
| danger, <i>danger m.</i>           | to form, <i>former</i>          | touching, <i>touchant</i>       |
|                                    | to fulfil, <i>remplir</i>       | troop, <i>troupe f.</i>         |
|                                    | function, <i>fonction f.</i>    | uniform, <i>uniforme m.</i>     |
|                                    | guard, <i>garde f.</i>          | volunteer, <i>volontaire m.</i> |

### Exercise No. 29.

1. I announce—we announce—I announced (*imp.*)—we announced (*p. d.*)—he eats—I ate (*imp.*)—we eat—he ate (*p. d.*)—that we might eat—thou callest—we call—they call—we shall call—we should call—that I may call—that we might call—I have called—he buys—we buy—I bought (*imp.*)—I shall buy—we should buy—that I may buy—that we might buy—we had bought—he degenerates—you degenerate—I degenerated (*imp.*)—he would degenerate—we should degenerate—that he may degenerate—that you may degenerate—I lead—we lead—I led (*imp.*)—he led (*p. d.*)—I shall lead—we should lead—that he may lead—that you may lead—that he might lead—they had led—I pay—we pay—they pay—I paid (*imp.*)—they paid (*p. d.*)—I shall pay—we should pay—that I may pay—that you may pay—that I might pay—I hate—they hate—I hated (*imp.*)—they (*m.*) hated (*p. d.*)—hate (thou)—do not hate—I shall hate—we should hate—that I may hate—that we might hate—The trees were blooming (bloomed).—Fine arts<sup>1</sup> were flourishing.—His father has blessed him.—The church was consecrated.—I deceive—we deceive—he received (*p. d.*)—you received (*imp.*)—This is due to me.

2. Nous ne mangeons pas de viande. Ils mangeaient trop de fruits. Où menez-vous cet enfant. Je le mène dans le jardin. Combien pèse cela? Nous ne haïssons personne. Il hait cet homme. C'est une nation dégénérée. Ils dégénèrent chaque jour davantage. Il paierait ses dettes, s'il avait de l'argent. Vous l'emploieriez si vous voulez<sup>2</sup> me faire<sup>3</sup> un plaisir. Les arbres fleurissaient dans tous les jardins. Les beaux arts florissaient à cette époque<sup>4</sup>. Ils ont reçu une lettre de leurs amis.

They ate much meat. We begin to speak French. He calls you. We shall buy new dresses this afternoon. Do they hope that we shall accompany them? We announce his death to his parents. They exasperate all their friends by their bad conduct. He leads the armies of the Republic to the combat. They call you: go (and) see what they desire. They announced that they would be here this morning.

1 fine arts, *les beaux arts* 2 voulez, wish 3 faire, to do 4 époque, epoch 5 go and see, *allez voir*

## Questions on Grammar.

1. When do verbs ending in *cer* take the cedilla under the *c*?
2. When do verbs ending in *ger* take *e* between the root and the ending?
3. When do verbs ending in *eler* and *eter* double the *l* or the *t*?
4. What are the principal exceptions to the preceding rule?
5. What becomes of the *é* of the penultimate syllable before an *e* mute?
6. What becomes of the *e* of the penultimate syllable before an *e* mute?
7. What becomes of the *y* in verbs ending in *yant* in the present participles, before an *e* mute?
8. What irregularity does the verb *hair* present?
9. What are the two present participles of *fleurir*?
10. What are the two past participles of *bénir*?
11. When do verbs ending in *cevoir* take the cedilla?
12. What is the spelling of the past participle of *devoir*?

## Conversation.

Do you hope to be successful in this enterprise?

I hope so.

When do you commence?

We commence in a few days.

What will you have for your breakfast?

A little bread and butter and a cup of tea will be sufficient.

How much does this fish weigh?

It weighs two pounds and a half.

Where do you take your brother?

I take him to his grandfather's.

How much do you pay for his railway fare?

I only pay ten pence.

Were the trees blooming when you were in the country?

Yes, they were covered with flowers.

Is your cousin in a flourishing position?

I do not know; but I think he is very successful in his business.

Espérez-vous réussir dans cette entreprise?

Je l'espère.

Quand commencez-vous?

Nous commençons dans quelques jours.

Que voulez-vous pour votre déjeuner?

Un peu de pain et de beurre et une tasse de thé suffiront.

Combien pèse ce poisson?

Il pèse deux livres et demie.

Où menez-vous votre frère?

Je le mène chez son grand père.

Combien payez-vous pour lui en chemin de fer?

Je ne paie que dix pence.

Les arbres fleurissaient-ils quand vous étiez à la campagne?

Oui, ils étaient couverts de fleurs.

Votre cousin est-il dans une position florissante?

Je ne sais pas; mais je pense qu'il réussit très bien dans ses affaires.

## Reading Exercise No. 29.

On trouve dans les annales des guerres de la première république française un exemple touchant de patriotisme et d'amour filial. Filles d'un ancien officier<sup>1</sup> qui, à la tête de la garde nationale de son village, faisait de fréquentes reconnaissances<sup>2</sup> pendant la nuit, Félicité et Théophile de Fernig, craignant<sup>3</sup> pour leur père le danger au quel il était exposé dans ces petites expéditions, qui dégénéraient souvent en escarmouches,<sup>4</sup> formèrent le projet de l'accompagner, sans qu'il le sût,<sup>5</sup> revêtues d'<sup>6</sup> habillements d'hommes,<sup>7</sup> que leur avait prêtés quelques amis dévoués et discrets. Elles mirent<sup>8</sup> leur projet à<sup>9</sup> exécution et pendant<sup>10</sup> quelque temps, prirent part aux<sup>11</sup> marches et aux combats nocturnes sans que leur père s'aperçût<sup>12</sup> de rien. Mais le général Beurnonville, ayant rencontré la petite troupe dont les exploits lui étaient connus<sup>13</sup>, voulut<sup>14</sup> lui témoigner<sup>15</sup> son estime en la passant en revue<sup>16</sup>. Quel ne fut pas son étonnement en remarquant que deux des volontaires essayaient de changer de rang<sup>17</sup> pour échapper à ses regards<sup>18</sup>: il donna l'ordre à Monsieur de Fernig de les faire sortir<sup>19</sup> des rangs, et se voyant<sup>20</sup> découvertes<sup>21</sup>, les deux jeune filles tombèrent aux genoux de leur père et lui demandèrent pardon<sup>22</sup>. Sur<sup>23</sup> le rapport du général en chef, la Convention envoya aux deux héroïnes des armes et des chevaux d'honneur. Elles continuèrent ensuite à accompagner leur père, avec son consentement, et on les retrouve<sup>24</sup> aux batailles de Valmy et de Jemmapes, remplissant les fonctions d'aides-de-camp du<sup>25</sup> général Dumouriez, et revêtues de<sup>26</sup> l'uniforme de cet emploi.

1 *ancien officier*, ex-officer, 2 *faisait des reconnaissances*, made reconnoitrings, 3 *craignant*, fearing, 4 *escarmouches*, skirmishes, 5 *sût*, knew, 6 *revêtues de*, clothed in, 7 *habillements d'homme*, men's garments, 8 *mirent*, put, 9 *à*, in, 10 *pendant*, for, 11 *prirent part aux*, took part in, 12 *s'aperçût de rien*, discovered anything, 13 *connus*, known, 14 *voulut*, wished, 15 *témoigner*, to show, 16 *en la passant en revue*, by reviewing it, 17 *changer de rang*, to change their ranks, 18 *à ses regards*, his attention, 19 *les faire sortir*, to make them come out of, 20 *se voyant*, seeing themselves, 21 *découvertes*, discovered, 22 *lui demandèrent pardon*, asked for his pardon, 23 *sur*, on, 24 *on les retrouve*, they are found again, 25 *aides-de-camp du*, aides-de-camp to, 26 *revêtues de*, dressed in the.



## THIRTIETH LESSON.

## Trentième Leçon.

## Words with aspirated H.

The rules which have been given for articles, demonstrative and possessive adjectives, show the necessity of knowing whether the *h* found at the beginning of words be aspirated (see lessons 1, 2, 4, 12 and 13).

This knowledge is also necessary to ascertain if the final *e* of monosyllabic words must be elided and if the linking of words has to take place.

The following is a list of the words in which the *h* is aspirated :

|                                    |                                        |                                               |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| (*)hâbler, <i>to brag</i>          | hardi, <i>bold</i>                     | hêtre (m.), <i>beech-tree</i>                 |
| hache (f.), <i>axe</i>             | harem (m.), <i>harem</i>               | heurter, <i>to clash</i>                      |
| hagard, <i>haggard</i>             | hareng (m.), <i>herring</i>            | hibou (m.), <i>owl</i>                        |
| hachis (m.), <i>hash</i>           | hargneux, <i>quarrelsome</i>           | hideux, <i>hideous</i>                        |
| haie (f.), <i>hedge</i>            | haricot (m.), <i>French-bean</i>       | hiérarchie(f.), <i>hierarchy</i>              |
| haillon (m.), <i>rag</i>           | haridelle (f.), <i>hack</i>            | hisser, <i>to hoist</i>                       |
| haine (f.), <i>hatred</i>          | harnacher, <i>to harness</i>           | hocher, <i>to toss</i>                        |
| haïr, <i>to hate</i>               | harnais (m.), <i>harness</i>           | homard (m.), <i>lobster</i>                   |
| haire (f.), <i>hair-shirt</i>      | harpe (f.), <i>harp</i>                | honte (f.), <i>shame</i>                      |
| hâle, <i>drying wind</i>           | harpie (f.), <i>harpy</i>              | hoquet (m.), <i>hiccough</i>                  |
| hâler, <i>sunburnt</i>             | harpon (m.), <i>harpoon</i>            | horde (f.), <i>horde</i>                      |
| hâler, <i>to tow</i>               | hart (f.), <i>willow</i>               | hotte (f.), <i>dorsel</i>                     |
| haleter, <i>to pant</i>            | hasard (m.), <i>hazard</i>             | houblon (m.), <i>hop</i>                      |
| halle (f.), <i>market-hall</i>     | hase (f.), <i>doe-hare</i>             | houe (f.), <i>hoe</i>                         |
| hallebarde (f.), <i>halberd</i>    | hâte (f.), <i>haste</i>                | houille (f.), <i>coal</i>                     |
| hallier (m.), <i>thicket</i>       | haubans(m.p.), <i>shrouds</i>          | houle (f.), <i>billow</i>                     |
| halo (m.), <i>halo</i>             | haubert (m.), <i>coat-of-mails</i>     | houlette (f.), <i>crook</i>                   |
| halte (f.), <i>halt</i>            | hausser, <i>to raise</i>               | houppes (f.), <i>tuft</i>                     |
| hamac (m.), <i>hammock</i>         | haut, <i>high</i>                      | houppelande (f.), <i>a sort of great coat</i> |
| hameau (m.), <i>hamlet</i>         | hautain, <i>haughty</i>                | houspiller, <i>to pullabout</i>               |
| hampe (f.), <i>staff</i>           | hautbois (m.), <i>oboe</i>             | housses (f.p.), <i>housings</i>               |
| hanche (f.), <i>hip</i>            | hâve, <i>emaciated</i>                 | houx (m.), <i>holly</i>                       |
| hangar (m.), <i>shed</i>           | hâvre (m.), <i>harbour</i>             | huche (f.), <i>kneading-trough</i>            |
| hanneton (m.), <i>cock-chaffer</i> | havresac (m.), <i>knapsack</i>         | huée (f.), <i>hooting</i>                     |
| hanter, <i>to haunt</i> [nag]      | heaume (m.), <i>helmet</i>             | huit, <i>eight</i>                            |
| haquenée (f.), <i>ambling</i>      | hennir, <i>to neigh</i>                | huguenot (m.), <i>huguenot</i>                |
| haquet (m.), <i>dray</i>           | héraut (m.), <i>herald</i>             |                                               |
| happer, <i>to snap</i>             | hérissier, <i>to bristle</i>           | humer, <i>to inhale</i>                       |
| harangue (f.), <i>harangue</i>     | hernie (f.), <i>hernia</i>             | hune (f.), <i>top (marine)</i>                |
| haras (m.), <i>breeding-stud</i>   | héron (m.), <i>heron</i>               | huppe (f.), <i>perwet</i>                     |
| harasser, <i>to harass</i>         | héros(t) (m.), <i>hero</i>             | hure (f.), <i>wild boar head</i>              |
| harceler, <i>to torment</i>        | herse (f.), <i>harrow, port-cullis</i> | hurler, <i>to howl</i>                        |
| hardes (f.p.), <i>clothes</i>      |                                        | hussard (m.), <i>hussar</i>                   |

(\*) Words very seldom used and words derived from those given in this list have been omitted.

(t) The *h* is mute in *héroïne*, *héroïsme* and *héroïque*.



|                                 |                               |                              |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| accomplice, <i>complicem.</i>   | henceforth, <i>dorénavant</i> | to rehabilitate, <i>ré-</i>  |
| affair, <i>affaire f.</i>       | instead of, <i>au lieu de</i> | <i>habilitier</i>            |
| arrival, <i>arrivée f.</i>      | to live, <i>demeurer</i>      | reprimand, <i>réprimande</i> |
| to assist, <i>aider</i>         | miserly, <i>avare</i>         | <i>f.</i>                    |
| to avoid, <i>éviter</i>         | moon, <i>lune f.</i>          | ripe, <i>mûr</i>             |
| to claim for, <i>réclamer</i>   | occasion, <i>occasion f.</i>  | scandal, <i>scandale m.</i>  |
| to contract, <i>contracter</i>  | to order, <i>ordonner</i>     | shrub, <i>arbuste m.</i>     |
| disorder, <i>désordre m.</i>    | orgy, <i>orgie f.</i>         | since, <i>puisque</i>        |
| enemy, <i>ennemi m.</i>         | to present, <i>présenter</i>  | spendthrift, <i>dissipa-</i> |
| to execute, <i>exécuter</i>     | pretext, <i>prétexte m.</i>   | <i>teur m.</i>               |
| to facilitate, <i>faciliter</i> | prodigal, <i>prodigue</i>     | to strike, <i>frapper</i>    |
| heavy, <i>lourd</i>             | rain, <i>pluie f.</i>         | study, <i>étude f.</i>       |

### Exercise No. 30.

(The words beginning with an h aspirated must be looked for in the list on the opposite page.)

1. J'ordonnerai (à) cet homme de réclamer sa hache. La haie est couverte de<sup>1</sup> fleurs. La houille est très chère cette année. L'habit de mon père est très bien fait<sup>2</sup>. Mon ami craignait<sup>3</sup> la haine de son ennemi. Il doit sa fortune au hasard. Le hautbois est un instrument très difficile. Il n'y a plus<sup>4</sup> de houille sous le hangar. Ce hameau est très joli. Les houblons ne sont pas encore mûrs. Le héraut se tenait<sup>5</sup> devant la porte. Le soldat le frappa avec sa hallebarde. Le mendiant était couvert de haillons. Le havresac du soldat français est très lourd. Leschiens ont pénétré dans le hallier. Sa harangue a été très éloquente. Ce hamac est très commode. Je ne le hais pas. Ma hotte est dans le jardin. Le houx est un joli arbuste. Je n'en ai que huit. Le halo que l'on voit<sup>6</sup> autour de la lune est généralement un signe de pluie. Avez-vous vu<sup>7</sup> la harpe que mon père m'a achetée.

2. The herald announced the arrival of the hero. This man's dog is there. The shed is full of rags. I do not hate my enemies. The river is bordered with<sup>8</sup> beech-trees. They have no housings. Do not strike this poor cat. The dishes are on the kneading-trough. My brother plays the<sup>9</sup> oboe. Do not harness the horses now. He held a branch of holly in his<sup>10</sup> hand. The hoe is in the garden. He was received with hootings by the multitude. He has some<sup>a</sup> very curious<sup>c</sup> helmets and coats-of-mail<sup>b</sup> in his collection. I inhale the cool air<sup>11</sup> of the morning. He lives in the hamlet. This child is very much<sup>12</sup> incommoded<sup>13</sup> by the hiccough. Do you play the harp? She was (the) mother of eight children. This great coat belonged to<sup>14</sup> my grandfather. The merchant who has sold you this coal has deceived you. The owl sleeps<sup>15</sup> during the day.

1 couverte de, covered with 2 fait, made 3 craignait, feared 4 il n'y a plus, there is no more 5 se tenait, stood 6 voit, sees 7 vu, seen 8 bordered with, bordée de 9 to play an instrument, jouer d'un instrument 10 in his, à la 11 cool air, air frais 12 very much, très 13 incommoded, incommodé 14 belonged to, était à 15 sleeps, dort.

## Questions on Grammar.

1. How are the articles *the* and *some* translated before a noun beginning with a mute *h*?
2. How are the articles *the* and *some* translated before a noun beginning with an aspirated *h*?
3. How is the demonstrative adjective *this* translated before a singular masculine noun beginning with a mute *h*?
4. How is the demonstrative adjective *this* translated before a singular masculine noun beginning with an aspirated *h*?
5. How are the possessive adjectives *my, thy, his, hers, its* translated before a singular feminine noun beginning with a mute *h*?
6. How are the possessive adjectives *my, thy, his, hers, its* translated before a singular feminine noun beginning with an aspirated *h*?
7. How will you write *je, me, te, se, ne, que, &c.* before a mute *h*?

## Conversation.

Where does this man live?

He lives in the hamlet which you see on the top of the hill.

Where did you meet him?

I met him at the market-hall.

Where did he put his clothes?

He put them under the shed.

Tell him to bring the harness.

He is gone to fetch the harrow.

Do you hear your neighbour's hack? it has been neighing for some minutes.

The flies torment it very probably.

Where is the owl which we heard last night?

I think it is on the beech-tree which is on the other side of the river.

What bird is that?

It is a heron.

Where did you shoot it?

On the banks of the pond which is between the hedge and the thicket.

Why has the dog been howling all the morning?

I do not know; it is very quarrelsome.

Où demeure cet homme?

Il demeure dans le hameau que vous voyez sur le haut de la colline.

Où l'avez-vous rencontré?

Je l'ai rencontré à la halle.

Où a-t-il mis ses (\*)hardes?

Il les a mises sous le hangar.

Dites-lui d'apporter les harnais.

Il est allé chercher la herse.

Entendez-vous la haridelle de votre voisin? elle hennit depuis quelques minutes.

Les mouches la harassent très probablement.

Où est le hibou que nous avons entendu la nuit dernière?

Je pense qu'il est sur le hêtre qui est de l'autre côté de la rivière.

Quel oiseau est-ce?

C'est un héron.

Où l'avez-vous tué?

Sur les bords de l'étang qui est entre la haie et le hallier.

Pourquoi le chien a-t-il hurlé toute la matinée?

Je ne sais pas; il est très har-  
gneux.

(\*) The student will remember that no linking takes place before an aspirated *h*.

## Reading Exercise No. 30.

Un marchand, très riche mais très avare, avait un fils qui était, comme cela arrive très souvent en pareil cas,<sup>1</sup> d'une extrême prodigalité. Envoyé par son père dans une ville d'université,<sup>2</sup> au lieu de consacrer<sup>3</sup> son temps à l'étude, il le passait<sup>4</sup> en plaisirs et en orgies, et il eut bientôt contracté des dettes considérables. Après avoir pourvu<sup>5</sup> pendant<sup>6</sup> quelque temps à ses dépenses, non sans accompagner chaque envoi<sup>7</sup> d'argent d'<sup>8</sup> une sévère réprimande, le marchand déclara à son fils que dorénavant il ne devait<sup>9</sup> plus<sup>10</sup> compter<sup>11</sup> sur lui pour payer ses dettes: il lui ordonnait en même temps de revenir<sup>12</sup> au foyer paternel<sup>13</sup>. En effet<sup>14</sup> l'enfant prodigue se présenta le jour suivant<sup>15</sup>: mais il n'était pas seul, il était accompagné de<sup>16</sup> deux hommes qui s'annoncèrent comme étant envoyés par un créancier pour conduire<sup>17</sup> le jeune homme à la prison pour dettes. Ils avaient espéré, disaient-ils<sup>18</sup>, que son père se laisserait fléchir<sup>19</sup> encore une fois<sup>20</sup> et qu'ils ne seraient pas obligés d'exécuter l'ordre qu'ils avaient reçu. Le marchand, voulant<sup>21</sup> éviter le scandale, et se disant<sup>22</sup> que son fils n'aurait plus l'occasion de faire de dépenses à l'avenir<sup>23</sup>, puisqu'il demeurerait avec lui et l'aiderait dans ses affaires, paya la somme qu'on lui<sup>24</sup> réclamait. Mais, hélas! son fils étant sorti<sup>25</sup> de la maison deux heures après sous un prétexte quelconque ne revint<sup>26</sup> pas: les deux recors<sup>27</sup> étaient ses complices, et l'argent qui aurait dû<sup>28</sup> réhabiliter le dissipateur, ne servit qu'à<sup>29</sup> faciliter de nouveaux désordres.

1 *en pareil cas*, in such a case, 2 *ville d'université*, university town, 3 *consacrer*, devoting, 4 *passait*, spent, 5 *pourvu ... à*, provided ... for, 6 *pendant*, for, 7 *envoi*, remittance, 8 *d'*, with, 9 *devait*, ought, 10 *ne ... plus*, no .. more, 11 *compter*, rely, 12 *revenir*, to come back, 13 *foyer paternel*, father's home, 14 *en effet*, indeed, 15 *suivant*, following, 16 *de*, by, 17 *conduire*, to conduct, 18 *disaient-ils*, they said, 19 *se laisserait fléchir*, would allow himself to be softened, 20 *encore une fois*, once again, 21 *voulant*, wishing, 22 *se disant*, saying to himself, 23 *à l'avenir*, in the future, 24 *lui*, from him, 25 *étant sorti*, having gone out, 26 *revint*, came back, 27 *recors*, bailiff's assistants, 28 *aurait dû*, ought to have, 29 *ne servit que*, only served.

# TWENTY DIALOGUES

on subjects of everyday life.

*(Vingt dialogues sur des sujets de la vie journalière.)*

## INDEX.

*(Table des matières.)*

|                           |     |                                        |
|---------------------------|-----|----------------------------------------|
| A meeting                 | 141 | Une rencontre.                         |
| About the way, or road    | 142 | Au sujet du chemin.                    |
| Visit                     | 143 | Visite.                                |
| Railway Journey           | 144 | Voyage en chemin de fer.               |
| do. do.                   | 145 | do. do.                                |
| Sea Journey               | 146 | Traversée.                             |
| At a Town                 | 147 | Dans une ville.                        |
| Letting Apartments        | 148 | Location d'appartements                |
| With a servant            | 149 | Avec un domestique.                    |
| Meals                     | 150 | Repas.                                 |
| To write a letter         | 151 | Pour écrire une lettre.                |
| At a money changer's      | 152 | Chez un changeur.                      |
| Buying                    | 153 | Achats.                                |
| Carriages                 | 154 | Voitures.                              |
| At table                  | 155 | A table.                               |
| A walk                    | 156 | Une promenade.                         |
| With a doctor             | 157 | Avec un docteur.                       |
| Paris Museums             | 158 | Musées de Paris.                       |
| The Streets of Paris      | 159 | Les rues de Paris.                     |
| How to progress in French | 160 | Comment faire des progrès en Français. |



## A Meeting.

Good morning, Mr. X..., how do you do?

Quite well, thank you; how are you?

Not very well, I had a bad cold last week and have not yet quite recovered from it.

I am very sorry to hear that, but hope it will have no serious consequences. Is your family in good health?

I have not seen any of them since the beginning of the week, as they have gone to the seaside.

Shall you not go and spend a few days with them?

I should like it very much; but I am very busy.

Did you see our friend, Mr. White the day before yesterday?

Yes; I had an appointment with him, and saw him in the afternoon.

Is it true that he is not very successful in business?

I cannot tell you precisely: but I think he has been rather unfortunate lately in his transactions.

Did you buy anything at the auction yesterday?

Yes, I bought several pieces of furniture, two oil-paintings and a few bottles of old port-wine.

Were many buyers there?

Not very many: the weather was rather bad, and I suppose that prevented many people from coming.

Are you going to the Italian Opera to-night?

No; I do not understand a word of Italian, and besides the prices are rather too high for me.

Where are you going?

I must be at my office by two o'clock, and have just time to catch the train.

Good bye!

## Une Rencontre.

Bonjour, Monsieur X..., comment vous portez-vous?

Très bien, merci; comment allez-vous?

Pas très bien; j'ai eu un mauvais rhume la semaine dernière, et je m'en suis pas encore tout-à-fait remis.

Je suis très fâché d'apprendre cela; mais j'espère qu'il n'aura pas de sérieuses conséquences. Votre famille est-elle en bonne santé?

Je n'ai vu aucun d'entre eux depuis le commencement de la semaine, vu qu'ils sont allés aux bains de mer.

Irez-vous passer quelques jours avec eux?

Je le voudrais bien; mais je suis très occupé.

Avez-vous vu notre ami, Mr. White avant-hier?

Oui; j'avais un rendez-vous avec lui, et je l'ai vu dans l'après-midi.

Est-il vrai qu'il ne réussisse pas dans les affaires?

Je ne peux pas vous le dire exactement; mais je crois qu'il a été un peu malheureux dernièrement dans ses transactions.

Avez-vous acheté quelque chose hier aux enchères?

Oui; j'ai acheté quelques meubles, deux tableaux à l'huile et quelques bouteilles de vieux vin de Porto.

Y avait-il beaucoup d'acheteurs?

Pas beaucoup: le temps était un peu mauvais et je suppose que cela a empêché beaucoup de monde de venir.

Allez-vous ce soir aux Italiens?

Non; je ne comprends pas un mot d'Italien; et de plus les prix sont un peu trop élevés pour moi.

Où allez-vous?

Je dois être à mon bureau vers deux heures et j'ai juste le temps de prendre le train.

Adieu.



## About the way, or road.

Will you kindly tell me which is the shortest way to the Exchange?

With much pleasure. Go straight on until you arrive at the church which you see down there; then take the first street on the right and the second on the left.

Thank you. How long will it take me to go there?

About twenty minutes, if you do not stop on the way.

Can you tell me if I shall find a good restaurant before arriving at the Exchange?

You will find some in this street and many others near the Exchange; but the latter are rather expensive and I should advise you to go to one in this street, where you will be sure to find anything you require.

Is there any foreign money changer in the neighbourhood?

There is one opposite the church; but I should advise you to go to the goldsmith whose shop is just at the corner of the street which leads to the Exchange.

Is there any tramcar going in that direction?

There is one just coming; but it will not take you further than the church.

Does it stop there?

No; but, you would arrive at the river if you remained in it as far as it goes.

Can you direct me to the nearest post-office?

You will find it on the right, about two hundred paces from here.

Is the telegraph office at the same place?

No; you will find it on the other side, just opposite the fountain.

I thank you very much for your kindness, Sir.

Do not mention it.

## Au sujet du chemin.

Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de me dire quel est le plus court chemin pour aller à la Bourse?

Avec beaucoup de plaisir. Allez tout droit jusqu'à ce que vous arriviez à l'église que vous voyez là-bas; prenez alors la première rue à droite et la seconde à gauche.

Je vous remercie. Combien de temps me faudra-t-il pour y aller? Environ vingt minutes, si vous ne vous arrêtez pas en route.

Pouvez-vous me dire si je trouverai un bon restaurant avant d'arriver à la Bourse?

Vous en trouverez quelques uns dans cette rue et beaucoup d'autres près de la Bourse; mais ces derniers sont un peu chers, et je vous conseillerais d'aller dans un de ceux de cette rue, où vous seriez sûr de trouver tout ce dont vous avez besoin.

Y a-t-il un changeur dans le voisinage?

Il y en a un en face de l'église; mais je vous conseillerais d'aller chez l'orfèvre dont le magasin est juste au coin de la rue qui conduit à la Bourse.

Y a-t-il un tramway qui aille dans cette direction?

En voilà justement un qui vient maintenant; mais il ne vous conduira pas plus loin que l'église.

S'arrête-t-il là?

Non; mais vous arriveriez à la rivière, si vous y restiez aussi longtemps qu'il marche.

Pouvez-vous m'indiquer le bureau de poste le plus prochain?

Vous le trouverez sur la droite, à environ deux cents pas d'ici.

Le bureau du télégraphe est-il au même endroit?

Non; vous le trouverez de l'autre côté, juste vis-à-vis de la fontaine.

Monsieur, je vous remercie beaucoup de votre obligeance.

Ne parlez pas de cela.

## Visit.

Good morning, Madam; how do you do?

Very well, sir; and how is Mrs. X...?

Thank you very much, madam: Mrs. X. is quite well, and she would certainly have accompanied me if her sister had not come from Paris to pay her a short visit.

I am very sorry she did not accompany you: I should have been very pleased to make Miss S... 's acquaintance.

Miss S... was very tired with her journey; but she will not leave London without coming to see you.

Tell her how pleased I shall be to see her: I am generally at home every day after 4 o'clock except Thursdays, and never go out in the evening. Have you been in the country with your family?

Yes, madam; we only returned a fortnight ago.

How was the weather while you were there?

We were rather fortunate; during the three weeks we remained at X... the weather was extremely fine.

Have you heard from your brother lately?

Yes, I had a letter from him yesterday.

Have you seen the last number of the "Monde Illustré"?

Yes, Madam; I am a subscriber to that illustrated paper.

Is there anything specially interesting in this number?

There are very good sketches from the correspondent at the seat of war.

Are you going already?

I am very sorry I cannot stay any longer, but must meet Mr. Z... at half past four.

## Visite.

Bonjour, Madame; comment vous portez-vous?

Très bien, Monsieur; et comment va Madame X...?

Je vous remercie beaucoup, Madame: Madame X. va très bien et elle m'aurait certainement accompagné, si sa sœur n'était pas venue de Paris pour lui faire une courte visite.

Je suis très fâchée qu'elle ne vous ait pas accompagné: j'aurais été très heureuse de faire la connaissance de Mademoiselle S....

Mademoiselle S... était très fatiguée de son voyage; mais elle ne quittera pas Londres sans venir vous voir.

Dites-lui combien je serai heureuse de la voir: je suis généralement chez moi tous les jours après quatre heures, excepté les Jeudis, et je ne sors jamais dans la soirée. Avez-vous été à la campagne avec votre famille?

Oui, madame; nous ne sommes revenus qu'il y a quinze jours.

Quel temps faisait-il pendant que vous y étiez?

Nous avons été vraiment heureux: pendant les trois semaines que nous sommes restés à X... le temps a été extrêmement beau.

Avez-vous reçu dernièrement des nouvelles de votre frère?

Oui, j'ai reçu hier une lettre de lui.

Avez-vous vu le dernier numéro du Monde Illustré?

Oui, madame; je suis abonné à ce journal illustré.

Y a-t-il quelque chose de spécialement intéressant dans ce numéro?

Il y a de très bons croquis du correspondant du théâtre de la guerre.

Vous en allez-vous déjà?

Je regrette beaucoup de ne pas pouvoir rester plus longtemps mais je dois me rencontrer à quatre heures et demie avec Mr. Z.

## Railway Journey.

Two tickets to Paris, please.

What class?

Second class.

Would you not like to have first class tickets for the sea journey.

What would be the difference in the price?

Two shillings.

When does the train leave?

At 10 o'clock.

How long will it take us to go to Dover?

About two-hours.

Where shall I have my luggage registered?

Next door.

Is there any smoking carriage in the train?

Yes, sir; there is also a Pulman car which any passenger can enter by paying a small additional sum.

Is there any special carriage for ladies?

No; it is not the custom in this country.

Is there any great difference between single and return tickets?

There is generally a difference of a quarter on the total amount.

Please weigh my luggage; handle the trunks carefully.

Take your seats, gentlemen.

Please allow my friends to remain on the platform until the train starts.

Your tickets, gentlemen.

Here they are.

You are in the wrong train, sir.

Where is my train, then? I was told to enter this carriage.

You very probably misunderstood the guard; you will have to go to the carriages which are opposite the clock: this train only goes to .....

Have I time to go and have some refreshments?

You have just five minutes.

## Voyage en chemin de fer.

Deux billets pour Paris, s'il v. pl.

Quelle classe?

Deuxième classe.

Ne voudriez-vous pas avoir des billets de première classe pour la traversée?

Quelle serait la différence de prix?

Deux shellings.

Quand part le train?

A dix heures.

Combien de temps nous faut-il pour aller à Douvres?

Environ deux heures.

Où dois-je faire enregistrer mes bagages?

A la porte d'à côté.

Y a-t-il dans le train une voiture pour les fumeurs?

Oui, monsieur; il y a aussi une voiture Pulman où peut entrer chaque voyageur, en payant un petit supplément.

Y a-t-il des wagons spéciaux pour les Dames?

Non; ce n'est pas l'habitude dans ce pays-ci.

Y a-t-il une grande différence entre le prix des billets simples et celui des billets d'aller et retour?

Il y a généralement une différence d'un quart de la somme totale.

Veillez peser mes bagages: maniez soigneusement les malles.

En voiture, messieurs.

Veillez permettre à mes amis de rester sur le quai jusqu'à ce que le train parte.

Vos billets, messieurs.

Les voici.

Monsieur, vous êtes dans le mauvais train.

Où donc est mon train: on m'a dit d'entrer dans cette voiture.

Vous avez probablement mal compris le chef de train; vous aurez à aller jusqu'aux voitures qui sont en face de l'horloge; ce train-ci ne va qu'à .....

Ai-je le temps d'aller prendre quelque rafraîchissement?

Vous avez juste cinq minutes.

## Railway Journey (concluded).

Do you not think the train does not run very fast?

They are just repairing this part of the road and they must move over it very cautiously.

What is the name of the village we just saw on our right?

I do not know; it is the first time I have travelled this way.

Will you kindly shut the window; I have a bad cold and feel rather afraid of the draught.

Would you prefer to sit with your back towards the engine?

I will not trespass on your kindness.

It makes no difference to me.

When does the train arrive at our destination?

At five minutes past four.

Your tickets, gentleman.

Have we arrived?

You will be at Paris in two minutes, but the tickets are always collected before reaching the station.

Where have I to go to get my luggage?

Pass this way and you will see the custom officers standing at the entrance of the room where your luggage will be searched and then delivered to you.

Shall we have to wait a long time?

I do not think so: about a quarter of an hour or twenty minutes.

Do you want me to open this trunk? I have nothing in it but clothes.

We are bound to examine every trunk.

I have only a pound of tobacco for personal use.

You can close your portmanteau.

## Voyage en chemin de fer (fin).

Ne croyez-vous pas que le train ne marche pas très rapidement.

Ils sont en train de réparer cette partie de la voie, et on doit en cet endroit-ci marcher avec beaucoup de précautions.

Quel est le nom du village que nous venons de voir sur notre droite?

Je ne sais pas; c'est la première fois que je voyage par cette route.

Voudriez-vous avoir la bonté de fermer la portière; j'ai un mauvais rhume et je crains beaucoup les courants d'air.

Préféreriez-vous vous asseoir le dos tourné à la machine?

Je n'abuserai pas de votre bonté.

Cela m'est indifférent.

Quand le train arrive-t-il à notre destination?

A quatre heures cinq minutes.

Vos billets, messieurs.

Sommes-nous arrivés?

Vous serez à Paris dans deux minutes, mais on prend toujours les billets avant d'arriver à la gare.

Où dois-je aller pour avoir mes bagages?

Passez par ici et vous verrez les douaniers debout à l'entrée de la salle où vos bagages seront visités et ensuite vous seront remis.

Aurons-nous longtemps à attendre?

Je ne pense pas: environ un quart d'heure ou vingt minutes.

Voulez-vous que j'ouvre cette malle; je n'y ai que des effets.

Nous sommes forcés de visiter chaque malle.

Je n'ai qu'une livre de tabac pour mon usage personnel.

Vous pouvez fermer votre portemanteau.



## Sea Journey.

Which is the steamer for Dieppe?

The one you see there alongside the quay.

When will she start?

At high water—at two thirty five

The steamer appears to me to be very small.

Oh, no; she is a very good size: she has been plying between Newhaven and Dieppe the last two years, and although the sea is often rough, has never required any important repairs.

Will you show me the way to the second class cabins?

Come this way, sir.

Steward, I am looking for a berth and cannot find any disengaged.

Here is an unoccupied berth, sir; do you wish to take anything?

Yes, please; bring me some tea.

The sea is now very calm: would you not like to go on deck? there are few passengers there, and the air is cool and bracing.

What is the light-house we see there, on the horizon?

It is the light-house at the entrance of the harbour.

What is that boat, which is coming to meet us?

I believe it is a pilot.

I think we are stopping.

Yes, we must wait until the tide will allow us to enter the port.

Is it not possible to hire a boat to take us ashore?

The sea is rather rough this morning: which I suppose is the reason I do not see any boats.

What is the signal they are just hoisting at the end of the pier?

The signal that there is enough water now to enter the harbour.

## Traversée.

Quel est le bateau à vapeur de Dieppe?

C'est celui que vous voyez là le long du quai.

Quand partira-t-il?

A la marée haute, à deux heures trente-cinq.

Le bateau à vapeur me paraît très petit.

Oh, non; il est de bonne grandeur il y a deux ans qu'il fait le service entre Newhaven et Dieppe et quoique la mer soit souvent mauvaise, il n'a jamais eu besoin d'importantes réparations.

Voudriez-vous me montrer le chemin pour aller aux cabines de deuxième classe?

Venez par ici, Monsieur.

Maitre d'hôtel, je cherche une place et je n'en puis trouver de vacante.

Voici une place vacante, Monsieur; désirez-vous prendre quelque chose?

Oui, s'il vous plaît; apportez-moi du thé.

La mer est très calme maintenant: n'aimeriez-vous pas à aller sur le pont, il y a là peu de passagers et l'air est frais et vif.

Qu'est-ce que c'est que le phare que nous voyons là-bas à l'horizon? C'est le phare de l'entrée du port.

Qu'est-ce que c'est que le bateau qui vient au devant de nous?

Je crois que c'est un pilote.

Je crois que nous nous arrêtons.

Oui, nous devons attendre que la marée nous permette d'entrer dans le port.

N'est il pas possible de louer un bateau pour aller à terre?

La mer est un peu houleuse, ce matin; c'est ce qui fait, je suppose, que je ne vois aucun bateau.

Quel est le signal qu'on hisse à l'extrémité de la jetée?

C'est le signal qu'il y a assez d'eau pour entrer dans le port.

## At a Town.

Is there any omnibus which will take me to the Continental Hotel?

Any omnibus will take you there.

What are the edifices worthy of interest on account of their historical connections?

You ought to visit the Cathedral, the Town Hall, the Law courts, the bridges, and the old gates, the only remains of the ramparts of the city.

Is the cathedral a very ancient building?

It is one of the oldest specimens of gothic architecture in our country.

Is ..... an industrial town?

It is renowned for its cotton mills and also for its cloth manufactories.

What is the population of the city?

There were about two hundred and fifty three thousand inhabitants at the last census which took place at the end of last year.

Is there anything to be seen in the surrounding country?

There are the ruins of an old abbey, the modern castle of the Earl of ....., and a beautiful forest of oaks and beech-trees.

Will you be able to come with me to-morrow.

Yes; with much pleasure.

What is the width of the river?

About two hundred yards.

Is the current very rapid?

Not very.

What is the little chapel which I see there, on the top of the hill?

It is the cemetery chapel.

Are there any remarkable monuments in it?

Hardly any: it was only built ten years ago.

## Dans une ville.

Y a-t-il un omnibus qui me conduise à l'Hôtel Continental?

N'importe quel omnibus vous y conduira.

Quels sont les édifices qui sont dignes d'intérêt, à cause des souvenirs historiques qui s'y rattachent?

Vous devriez visiter la cathédrale, l'hôtel de ville, le palais de justice, les ponts, et les vieilles portes, seuls vestiges des remparts de la cité.

La cathédrale est-elle un édifice très ancien?

C'est un des plus vieux spécimens d'architecture gothique de notre pays.

Est-ce que ..... est une ville industrielle?

Elle est renommée pour ses filatures de coton et aussi pour ses manufactures de drap.

Quelle est la population de cette ville?

Il y avait environ deux cent-cinquante-trois mille habitants au dernier recensement qui a eu lieu à la fin de l'année dernière.

Y a-t-il quelque chose à voir dans le pays environnant?

Il y a les ruines d'une vieille abbaye, le château moderne du comte de ....., et une belle forêt de chênes et de hêtres.

Pourrez-vous venir avec moi demain?

Oui; avec beaucoup de plaisir.

Quelle est la largeur de la rivière?

Environ deux cents yards.

Le courant est-il très-rapide?

Non, il ne l'est pas.

Quelle est la petite chapelle que je vois là, sur le sommet de la colline?

C'est la chapelle du cimetière.

Y a-t-il quelques remarquables monuments?

Il n'y en a pour ainsi dire pas: il n'y a que dix ans qu'elle est bâtie.

## Letting Apartments.

I should like to have a suite of rooms composed of a drawing-room, a dining room, three bedrooms, a kitchen, and two rooms for servants.

What floor would suit you best?

The first or second floor.

We have no apartments vacant on either of these floors, but we have just what you want on the third story.

I am afraid it would be too high.

I do not think it would inconvenience you at all, as there is a lift in the house.

Are there any stables belonging to the mansion?

No, sir; but the mews are situated within two minutes walk, and you can see them very well from the back windows of your apartment.

Is there any post and telegraph office in the street?

Yes, sir; there is a post office at the end of the street, and a letter box at the next house.

What is the rent which was paid by the preceding occupier?

One hundred and twenty pounds.

Is that sum inclusive of water and gas?

No, sir; that you have to pay separately.

Are the apartments to be let by the month or year?

They have always been let by the month, but the terms of a new arrangement can be submitted to the landlord.

When could I see him?

the course of next week; leave me your address, I will let you know.

am quite willing to take the rooms, on condition I can have them by the year; I do not like removing every month.

## Location d'appartements.

Je voudrais avoir un appartement composé d'un salon, d'une salle à manger, de trois chambres à coucher, d'une cuisine et de deux chambres de domestiques.

Quel est l'étage qui vous conviendrait le mieux?

Le premier ou le second étage.

Nous n'avons d'appartements vacants à aucun de ces étages, mais nous avons juste ce que vous désirez au troisième étage.

Je crains que cela ne soit trop haut.

Je ne pense pas que cela vous gêne du tout, vu qu'il y a un ascenseur dans la maison.

Y a-t-il des écuries qui appartiennent à la maison?

Non, monsieur; mais les écuries sont situées à deux minutes de marche, et vous pouvez les voir des fenêtres de derrière de votre appartement.

Y a-t-il un bureau de poste et de télégraphe dans la rue?

Oui, monsieur; il y a un bureau de poste au bout de la rue et une boîte aux lettres à la maison voisine.

Quel est le loyer que payait le locataire précédent?

Cent-vingt livres sterling.

Cette somme comprend elle l'eau et le gaz?

Non, monsieur; vous avez à les payer séparément.

Ces appartements peuvent-ils être loués au mois ou à l'année?

Ils ont toujours été loués au mois, mais les conditions d'un nouvel arrangement peuvent être soumises au propriétaire.

Quand pourrais-je le voir?

Dans le courant de la semaine prochaine; laissez-moi votre adresse, je vous le ferai savoir.

Je suis tout disposé à prendre les chambres, à la condition que je puisse les avoir à l'année; je n'aime pas à déménager chaque mois.

### With a Servant.

What time do you get up every morning?

I generally rise between seven and half past.

Will you then call me every morning as soon as you are dressed?

Yes, sir; you may rely upon me, and should anything happen to prevent me, I shall not forget to tell another servant to knock at your door at the proper time.

Take my boots, please, and bring them back into my room as soon as they are cleaned.

The left boot is unsewed: shall I take it to the shoemaker to have it repaired?

Yes; but tell him that I want it this evening.

There are two letters for you, sir.

When did the postman bring them?

He brought them just now.

I found no water on my toilet table, last night; will you fetch me some, that I may dress myself; it is getting late.

Do you want anything else?

Yes; I should like to have two clean towels: do not forget to change them twice a week.

Somebody brought this note for you and waits for an answer.

Say that I am engaged and shall call this afternoon.

Mr. X..... asks if you can receive him.

Show him in.

Shall you want your supper this evening?

Yes; put it on my table, but do not wait for me; it is quite possible that I may be rather late, and I do not wish to disturb anybody in the house.

Here is a key which the landlord asked me to give you, in order that you may come in at any time you like.

### Avec un Domestique.

A quelle heure vous levez-vous les matins?

Je me lève généralement entre sept heures et sept heures et demie.

Voulez-vous alors m'appeler tous les matins, aussi-tôt que vous serez habillé?

Oui, mons.; vous pouvez compter sur moi; et s'il arrivait quelque chose qui m'en empêchât, je n'oublierais pas de dire à un autre domestique de frapper à votre porte à l'heure convenable.

Prenez mes bottines, s'il vous plaît, et rapportez-les dans ma chambre aussitôt qu'elles seront nettoyées.

La bottine gauche est dé cousue; dois-je la porter au cordonnier pour qu'il la répare?

Oui; mais dites-lui que j'en ai besoin ce soir.

Voici deux lettres pour vous, monsieur.

Quand le facteur les a-t-il apportées?

Il vient de les apporter.

Je n'ai pas trouvé d'eau sur ma table de toilette, hier soir; voulez-vous aller m'en chercher, que je m'habille; il se fait tard.

Avez-vous besoin de quelque autre chose?

Oui; je voudrais avoir deux essuie-mains propres; n'oubliez pas de les changer deux fois par semaine.

Quelqu'un a apporté cette lettre pour vous et attend une réponse.

Dites que je suis occupé et que je passerai cette après-midi.

M. X..... demande si vous pouvez le recevoir.

Faites le entrer.

Aurez-vous besoin de votre souper ce soir?

Oui; mettez-le sur ma table, mais ne m'attendez pas; il est possible que je rentre un peu tard et je ne veux déranger personne dans la maison.

Voici une clef que le propriétaire m'a chargé de vous donner, afin que vous puissiez rentrer à l'heure qui vous conviendra.



### Meals.

What do you wish to have for your breakfast?

Two boiled eggs, rather underdone, and a rasher of bacon.

Would you like tea, coffee, or cocoa?

Give me some tea, with two pieces of toasted bread.

What will you have for your lunch?

Some cold roast beef and salad, some cheese, and a bottle of beer.

We have some very nice cold roast chicken, and a leg of mutton; would you not like some instead of roast beef? I am afraid it is rather overdone for you.

Well, let me have some chicken.

Will you dine with us this evening? we expect Mrs. X..... and her two daughters, and Mr. S.....'s cousins.

I am not sure I shall be able to come, but will do my best to be here. At what time do you dine?

At seven o'clock.

What shall we have for dinner.

Ox tail soup, salmon, a roasted turkey with ham, and a haunch of venison, asparagus and potatoes.

Do not forget to have some supper ready for me.

Will you have cold meat?

Yes; a small piece of cold veal will do very well, with some Roquefort cheese and a glass of claret.

Will you kindly ask the landlady if she would mind my buying everything I require; of course she would charge me for cooking and attendance.

I will ask madam; but I know she does not much like that way of managing.

### Repas.

Que désirez-vous avoir pour votre déjeuner?

Deux œufs à la coque, peu cuits, et une tranche de lard.

Voulez-vous du thé, du café ou du cacao?

Donnez-moi du thé, avec deux morceaux de pain grillé.

Que voulez-vous pour votre déjeuner à la fourchette?

Du bœuf rôti froid et de la salade, du fromage et une bouteille de bière.

Nous avons de très bon poulet rôti froid, et un gigot de mouton; en voudriez-vous au lieu de bœuf rôti? Je crains qu'il ne soit trop cuit pour vous.

Eh bien! faites-moi donner du poulet.

Dînez-vous avec nous ce soir? nous attendons madame X..... et ses deux filles, et les cousins de Mr. S.....

Je ne suis pas sûr que je puisse venir, mais je ferai de mon mieux pour être ici. A quelle heure dînez-vous?

A sept heures.

Qu'aurons nous pour dîner?

De la soupe à la queue de bœuf, du saumon, un dindon rôti avec du jambon et un gigot de venaison, des asperges et des pommes-de-terre.

N'oubliez pas de me préparer à souper.

Voulez-vous de la viande froide?

Oui; un petit morceau de veau froid fera très bien mon affaire, avec du fromage de Roquefort et un verre de Bordeaux.

Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de demander à la propriétaire si cela lui ferait quelque chose que j'achetasse tout ce qu'il me faut; naturellement elle me ferait payer la cuisine et le service.

Je demanderai à madame; mais je sais qu'elle n'aime pas beaucoup cette manière de faire.

## To write a Letter.

Be good enough to bring me some note paper, envelopes, ink, pens and sealing wax.

Here they are, sir, will you require any stamps?

I shall want a shilling's worth of halfpenny stamps to send some circular letters to my friends on the Continent; twelve penny ones, and four two pence half-penny ones, as I must write to my brothers in France.

Are some of your letters ready? if so, I can take them to the post office when I go out.

When does the mail start?

The letters must be posted before half past five if you want to forward them by the evening mail.

I shall feel much obliged if you will post these two letters for France. I do not think I shall have time to finish the other three.

Do you not think that this letter is too heavy?

I do not think so; but they will weigh it for you at the post office, if you ask them.

Do not forget to bring me some post cards and two envelopes for registered letters.

Shall I procure the Post-office order for you, which you mentioned last night?

Yes, please.

What amount do you intend to send?

Two hundred and thirty-two francs, twenty-five centimes: I am just going out and shall get the money at my banker's.

Do not forget that no Post-office orders are issued after five o'clock.

I shall certainly be back before that time.

## Pour écrire une Lettre.

Ayez la bonté de m'apporter du papier à lettre, des enveloppes, de l'encre, des plumes et de la cire à cacheter.

Voici, monsieur; aurez-vous besoin de timbres-poste?

J'aurai besoin d'un shelling de timbres de cinq centimes pour envoyer des lettres de faire-part à mes amis du Continent; de douze timbres de dix centimes, et de quatre timbres de vingt-cinq centimes, vu qu'il faut que j'écrive en France à mes frères.

Quelques unes de vos lettres sont-elles prêtes? s'il en est ainsi, je pourrai les porter à la poste, quand je sortirai.

Quand part le courrier?

Les lettres doivent être mises à la poste avant cinq heures et demie si vous voulez les envoyer par le courrier du soir.

Je vous serai très obligé de bien vouloir mettre à la poste ces deux lettres pour France. Je ne pense pas que j'aie le temps de finir les trois autres.

Ne pensez-vous pas que cette lettre soit trop lourde?

Je ne pense pas; mais on vous la pèsera au bureau de poste si vous le demandez.

N'oubliez pas de m'apporter des cartes postales et deux enveloppes pour lettres chargées.

Vous prendrai-je le mandat sur la poste dont vous faisiez mention hier soir?

Oui, s'il vous plaît.

Quelle somme avez-vous l'intention d'envoyer?

Deux cent-trente-deux francs, vingt-cinq centimes: je vais sortir et j'irai chercher l'argent chez mon banquier.

N'oubliez pas qu'on ne délivre pas de mandats sur la poste après cinq heures.

Je serai certainement de retour avant cette heure.

**At a Money Changer's.**

Will you kindly change this hundred franc note and these twenty franc pieces for me?

Would you like to have gold or notes?

I will take a five-pound note, four pounds in gold and the rest in silver and copper.

What is the exchange for twenty franc pieces?

Fifteen shillings and eight pence.

I expected to lose only three pence on every piece?

I think, on the contrary, I am very reasonable in charging you four pence only.

Can you discount this draft?

I am sorry I cannot do that for you; we only discount drafts when the drawer and the bearer are personally known to us.

Can you direct me to any bank which would discount it?

I am afraid you will find the same difficulty everywhere, unless you are introduced by a friend.

Where could I sell these stocks?

I will take them of you at market prices.

Can you tell me how to invest a small capital?

I would advise you to buy Government bonds or some shares in our great Railway Companies. The interest is not very high, but you have not the slightest risk to run.

I am leaving town for a month: could I deposit these stocks with you?

We will certainly take them to oblige you; but should prefer your depositing them with your banker.

Will you advance me some money on these deeds?

No, sir; we are money changers, but never lend any money.

**Chez un Changeur.**

Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de me changer ce billet de cent francs et ces pièces de vingt francs?

Voulez-vous avoir de l'or ou des billets de banque?

Je prendrai un billet de banque de cinq livres, quatre livres en or, et le reste en argent et en billon.

Quel est le change pour les pièces de vingt francs?

Quinze shellings et huit pence.

Je ne pensais perdre que trois pence sur chaque pièce?

Je crois au contraire que je suis très raisonnable en ne vous prenant que quatre pence.

Pouvez-vous escompter cette traite?

Je suis fâché de ne pouvoir faire cela pour vous: nous n'escomptons de traites que quand le tireur et le sorteur nous sont connus personnellement.

Pourriez-vous m'indiquer une banque qui l'escompterait?

J'ai peur que vous ne trouviez partout la même difficulté; à moins que vous ne soyez présenté par un ami.

Où pourrais-je vendre ces valeurs?

Je vous les prendrai aux prix du cours.

Pourriez-vous me dire comment placer un petit capital?

Je vous conseillerais d'acheter des fonds sur l'état ou quelques actions de nos grandes compagnies de chemins de fer. L'intérêt n'est pas très élevé, mais vous n'avez pas le moindre risque à courir.

Je quitte la ville pour un mois: pourrais-je déposer ces valeurs chez vous?

Nous les prendrons certainement pour vous obliger; mais nous préférierions que vous les déposassiez chez votre banquier.

Voudriez-vous m'avancer de l'argent sur ces titres?

Non, monsieur; nous sommes changeurs, mais nous ne prêtons jamais d'argent.

## Buying.

How do you sell this?

At the price you see marked; all our goods have the prices marked in plain figures.

Is that the lowest price?

Yes, we fix our prices as low as possible, and cannot reduce them.

Give me five yards of this?

Do you think it will be enough?

I am afraid you will have some trouble in procuring the same material in a few weeks time.

I am not satisfied with the cloth you sold me the other day. I had a good mind to return it to you.

We are very sorry you did not do so, as we always do our best to satisfy all our customers.

Have you still any of the black velvet which you sold to my friend two days ago?

I think so; yes, here it is; how much will you take: you can have it a little cheaper than Mrs. .... if you take the whole, as it is a remnant.

I will take it then: whatever may be the fashion, velvet is always rich and elegant.

Shall I show you anything else?

I am just considering if I am in want of anything more.

We have very nice sunshades which we could sell you at exceptionally low prices.

The season is rather advanced: I should prefer to have a cheap silk umbrella.

This is a very good article: I do not think you could buy it cheaper anywhere else.

I will have this one. Please send it to my address, 65, Bessborough Street.

## Achats.

Combien vendez-vous ceci?

Au prix que vous voyez marqué; toutes nos marchandises portent leur prix marqué en chiffres connus.

Est-ce le plus bas prix?

Oui, nous faisons nos prix aussi bas que possible, et nous ne pouvons les réduire.

Donnez-moi cinq yards de ceci.

Pensez-vous que ce soit assez; je crains que vous n'ayez de la peine à vous procurer la même étoffe dans quelques semaines.

Je ne suis pas contente du drap que vous m'avez vendu l'autre jour. J'avais bien envie de vous le renvoyer.

Nous sommes très fâchés que vous ne l'ayez pas fait, vu que nous faisons toujours de notre mieux pour satisfaire tous nos clients.

Avez-vous encore du velours noir que vous avez vendu à mon amie il y a deux jours?

Je pense que oui; le voici; combien en prendrez-vous? vous pouvez l'avoir à un peu meilleur marché que madame ....., si vous prenez le tout, vu que c'est un coupon.

Je le prendrai donc: quelle que soit la mode, le velours est toujours riche et élégant.

Vous montrerai-je quelque chose d'autre?

Je me demandais justement si j'avais besoin d'autre chose.

Nous avons de très jolies ombrelles que nous pourrions vous vendre à des prix exceptionnellement bas.

La saison est un peu avancée: je préférerais avoir un parapluie de soie à bon marché.

Voici un très bon article: je ne pense pas que vous puissiez l'acheter autre part meilleur marché.

Je prendrai celui-ci. Veuillez me l'envoyer à mon adresse, rue de Bessborough, numéro 65.



## Carriages.

Cabman, how much will you charge me to go to the Northern Railway station?

Two francs and fifty centimes, sir.

It is too much: I will give you two francs.

Very well, sir; what train do you want to catch?

I want to leave by the express.

Then we shall have no time to lose.

Where does this omnibus go?

It follows the whole line of the "Boulevards."

What is the fare?

Three pence inside and three half pence outside.

Is there any difference according to the distance?

No, it is the same fare any distance.

Will that omnibus take me to the Southern Railway Station?

No, you will have to take a transfer ticket.

Is there anything to pay for it?

No, the conductor is obliged to give it to anybody who asks for it, without any extra charge.

Where can I find a decent carriage at a reasonable charge?

At the next livery stables.

Are there any regular fares?

Yes, you can have carriages by the drive or by the hour at very moderate charges.

Are the fares the same at all times?

No; they are higher from half past twelve at night till six o'clock in the morning during the summer, and seven during the winter.

Is there anything to pay for the luggage.

Yes; you have to pay an extra charge of twenty-five centimes for every parcel.

## Voitures.

Cocher, combien me prendrez-vous pour aller à la gare du Nord?

Deux francs cinquante centimes, monsieur.

C'est trop: je vous donnerai deux francs.

Très bien, monsieur; quel train voulez-vous prendre?

Je veux partir par l'"express."

Alors nous n'avons pas de temps à perdre.

Où va cet omnibus?

Il suit toute la ligne des Boulevards.

Quel est le tarif?

Trente centimes à l'intérieur et quinze centimes sur l'Impériale.

Y a-t-il quelque différence, d'après la distance?

Non, c'est le même tarif pour toutes les distances.

Cet omnibus me conduira-t-il à la Gare du Midi?

Non; vous aurez à prendre une correspondance.

Y a-t-il quelque chose à payer pour ce billet?

Non, le conducteur est obligé de le donner à tous ceux qui le demandent, sans aucune augmentation.

Où puis-je trouver une voiture convenable à un prix raisonnable.

A la première remise.

Existe-t-il un tarif réglementaire?

Oui; vous pouvez avoir des voitures à la course ou à l'heure à des prix très modérés.

Les prix sont-ils les mêmes à toute heure?

Non; ils sont plus élevés depuis minuit et demi jusqu'à six heures du matin, pendant l'été et sept heures pendant l'hiver.

Y a-t-il quelque chose à payer pour les bagages?

Oui; vous avez à payer un supplément de vingt-cinq centimes par colis.

## At table.

Where shall I sit?

Take a chair near Mrs. X.....

Shall I help you to some soup?

Yes, thank you.

Mr. X....., will you kindly pass me a piece of bread?

With the greatest pleasure: do you prefer stale or new bread?

As a matter of taste I prefer new bread, but stale bread is more digestible.

Will you take a slice of this beef? it is very nicely done.

Give me a very small piece, please; I do not feel very hungry.

Do you wish to have some gravy? No, thank you.

Have some potatoes and some haricot beans.

I would rather have some cauliflower.

Will you kindly carve this fowl? I burnt my right hand the other day, and can hardly do anything with it.

Do you wish to have some more meat?

No, thank you, I have done very nicely.

Shall I help you to some salad? I must tell you that it is seasoned after the French fashion, that is to say, with olive oil and vinegar.

Thank you, I shall like very much to have some, I am rather fond of it.

Will you have some of this apple tart?

No, thank you: I prefer some jelly.

What would you like to drink?

I will take a glass of claret: beer causes me to feel sleepy, and I do not care for heavy wines.

I think you will like this wine: we buy it directly from the grower, to be sure that it has not undergone any adulteration.

## A table.

Où m'asseierai-je?

Prenez une chaise près de madame X.....

Vous servirai-je de la soupe?

Oui, merci.

M. X... voulez-vous avoir la bonté de me passer un morceau de pain?

Avec le plus grand plaisir: préférez-vous le pain rassis ou le pain frais?

Comme affaire de goût, je préfère le pain frais, mais le pain rassis est plus facile à digérer.

Prendrez-vous une tranche de ce bœuf? il est très bien cuit.

Donnez m'en un tout petit morceau, je vous prie: je ne me sens pas très faim.

Voulez-vous un peu de jus?

Non, merci.

Prenez des pommes de terre et des haricots.

Je prendrais plutôt des choux-fleurs.

Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de découper cette volaille? je me suis brûlé la main droite l'autre jour et je peux à peine m'en servir.

Désirez-vous encore un peu de viande?

Non, merci; j'ai très bien dîné.

Désirez-vous de la salade? je dois vous dire qu'elle est assaisonnée à la Française, c'est-à-dire à l'huile d'olive et au vinaigre.

Merci, j'en prendrai avec beaucoup de plaisir, je l'aime beaucoup.

Voulez-vous un peu de cette tarte aux pommes?

Non, merci: je préfère de la gelée.

Que désirez-vous boire?

Je prendrai un verre de Bordeaux; la bière m'endort et je n'aime pas les vins capiteux.

Je pense que vous aimerez ce vin: nous l'achetons directement au propriétaire, afin d'être sûr qu'il n'a subi aucun frelatage.

### A Walk.

Will you come and take a walk with me? I have nothing to do this afternoon.

Where do you intend going?

I intend going to the "Tuileries," the garden is beautiful; flowers are now in full bloom; the fountains temper the heat of the day; orange trees are covered with blossom, and the chestnut trees invite visitors to sit in their cool and agreeable shade.

How late will it be when we come back?

I do not know: from the "Tuileries" I intend crossing the Concord Square, the most magnificent square in the world, with its perspective of palaces, public buildings, and gardens; then walking along the "Champs Elysees" as far as the "Triumphal arch of the Star.

Do you not think we should do better to take an open carriage and extend our excursion as far as the Boulogne Wood and Acclimatation Garden?

No; I feel I require some exercise and I think I shall enjoy my walk very much.

Very well; I will accompany you: shall we take umbrellas?

I believe it quite unnecessary; the barometer has risen since the beginning of the week, and there is no probability of rain this afternoon.

The clock has just struck nine; let us go, if we do not want to lose the most agreeable part of the day.

Do you not feel tired, and would you not like to sit down a few minutes?

I should like it very much: there is an empty bench, let us sit down.

### Une promenade.

Voulez-vous venir faire une promenade avec moi? je n'ai rien à faire cette après-midi.

Où avez-vous l'intention d'aller?

J'ai l'intention d'aller aux Tuileries: le jardin en est beau; les fleurs sont maintenant en pleine fleur; les jets d'eau tempèrent la chaleur du jour; les orangers sont couverts de fleurs et les châtaigniers invitent les visiteurs à s'asseoir à leur ombre fraîche et agréable.

Quelle heure sera-t-il quand nous reviendrons?

Je ne sais pas: en quittant les Tuileries, j'ai l'intention de traverser la place de la Concorde, la place la plus magnifique qu'il y ait au monde, avec sa perspective de palais, d'édifices publics et de jardins; et alors de marcher le long de Champs Elysées, jusqu'à l'arc de triomphe de l'Etoile.

Ne pensez-vous pas que nous ferions mieux de prendre une voiture découverte et de pousser notre excursion jusqu'au bois de Boulogne et au jardin d'acclimatation?

Non; j'ai besoin d'exercice et je pense que je prendrai beaucoup de plaisir à ma promenade.

Très bien; je vous accompagnerai: emporterons-nous des parapluies?

Je crois que c'est tout-à-fait inutile; le baromètre a monté depuis le commencement de la semaine. et il n'y a aucune probabilité qu'il pleuve cette après-midi.

L'horloge vient de sonner neuf heures; partons si nous ne voulons pas perdre la partie la plus agréable de la journée.

Ne vous sentez-vous pas fatigué; n'aimeriez-vous pas à vous asseoir quelques minutes?

J'aimerais beaucoup cela voila un banc vide, asseyons-nous.

### With a Doctor.

I was very unwell the day before yesterday; still worse yesterday, and I felt so bad this morning that I understood I was in want of a doctor's attendance.

What ails you?

I have a violent head-ache; I feel a pain in my limbs, and am not inclined to eat.

Allow me to feel your pulse: it is rather quick. Please show me your tongue. Did you sleep well last night?

Not well at all; I could not go to sleep before one o'clock in the morning.

Do you feel thirsty?

Very: I had some lemonade yesterday, but it did not quench my thirst.

Have you coughed at all lately?

Yes, I had two violent attacks of cough during the night.

You caught a cold very probably: the weather has been rather changeable, and many persons suffer from bronchitis. I shall write a prescription for you.

What do you advise me to eat this afternoon?

I think it will be best to abstain from having anything to-day: I hope you will have a good night's rest and to-morrow morning, I shall call again hoping to find you a great deal better.

Do you expect I shall be confined to my room for a long time?

Oh no! you only require a little rest, and take great care not to catch cold. If you follow exactly all my prescriptions, I have no doubt you will soon recover from this slight indisposition.

Do you think smoking would do me any harm?

I do not think it would do you any good.

### Avec un Docteur.

J'ai été très indisposé avant-hier; encore plus hier; et je me suis senti si mal ce matin que j'ai compris que j'avais besoin de l'assistance d'un docteur.

Qu'avez-vous?

J'ai un violent mal de tête; je ressens une douleur dans les membres et je n'ai pas envie de manger.

Permettez-moi de vous tâter le pouls; il est un peu accéléré. Veuillez me montrer votre langue. Avez-vous bien dormi la nuit dernière?

Pas bien du tout; je n'ai pu m'endormir avant une heure du matin.

Vous sentez-vous altéré?

Très altéré: hier j'ai bu de la limonade, mais elle n'a pas apaisé ma soif.

Avez-vous toussé dernièrement?

Oui, j'ai eu deux violentes quintes de toux pendant la nuit.

Vous vous êtes probablement refroidi: le temps a été très variable et beaucoup de personnes souffrent de bronchites. Je vais vous écrire une ordonnance.

Que me conseillez-vous de manger cette après-midi?

Je pense qu'il vaudra mieux vous abstenir de rien prendre aujourd'hui: j'espère que vous aurez un bon repos pendant la nuit, et demain matin je reviendrai avec l'espoir de vous trouver en bien meilleure santé.

Pensez-vous que je sois longtemps consigné dans ma chambre?

Oh non! vous n'avez besoin que d'un peu de repos, et prenez grand soin de ne pas attraper un autre refroidissement. Si vous suivez exactement mes prescriptions, je ne doute pas que vous vous remettiez bientôt de cette légère indisposition.

Pensez-vous que fumer me fasse du mal?

Je ne pense pas que cela vous fasse de bien.



## Paris Museums.

Which are the principal museums I ought to visit in this city.

There are the Louvre and the Luxembourg Museums, where are the most celebrated paintings of the ancient masters, and many of living artists.

Does the Louvre Museum contain anything else but paintings?

It includes a splendid collection of statues of the Grecian school, and antiques; also statues of more modern times, and of contemporary sculptors.

Are there any other museums worthy of a visit?

I should advise you to go to the Cluny museum, which contains very interesting collections of furniture and other objects or works of art of the mediæval epoch.

Is it free to the public?

Yes, like all the Museums I mentioned to you: there are, however, days when the public are only admitted with tickets.

Are these three the only museums in Paris?

There are several others less important: I shall only mention the Artillery Museum of St. Thomas d'Aquin, where you will see modern arms of all kinds in large numbers, arranged with much taste; and a beautiful and complete collection of ancient arms and armour.

Is it open every day?

It is only opened to the general public on Sundays, Thursdays and holidays.

Where are the paintings representing the principal episodes of French history?

In the Versailles museum.

When was the palace of Versailles transformed into picture galleries?

In the reign of Louis Philippe.

## Musées de Paris.

Quels sont les principaux musées que je devrais visiter dans cette ville?

Il y a les musées du Louvre et du Luxembourg, où sont les plus célèbres tableaux des anciens maîtres et beaucoup de tableaux d'artistes vivants.

Le musée du Louvre contient-il autre chose que des peintures?

Il renferme une splendide collection de statues de l'école Grecque et d'antiques; et aussi des statues de temps plus modernes et de sculpteurs contemporains.

Y a-t-il d'autres musées qui méritent une visite?

Je vous conseillerais d'aller au musée de Cluny, qui contient des collections très-intéressantes de meubles et d'autres objets ou d'œuvres d'art du Moyen âge.

Est-il ouvert au public?

Oui, comme tous les musées que je vous ai mentionnés; il y a cependant des jours où le public n'est admis qu'avec des billets.

Ces trois musées sont-ils les seuls musées de Paris?

Il y en a plusieurs autres moins importants: je mentionnerai seulement le musée d'artillerie de St Thomas d'Aquin, où vous verrez des armes modernes de toute sorte, en grand nombre, arrangées avec beaucoup de goût; et une belle et complète collection d'armes anciennes et d'armures.

Est-il ouvert tous les jours?

Il n'est ouvert à tout le monde que les Dimanches, les Jeudis et les jours de fête.

Où sont les tableaux qui représentent les principaux épisodes de l'histoire de France?

Au musée de Versailles.

Quand le palais de Versailles fut-il transformé en galeries de peinture?

Sous le règne de Louis Philippe.

## The Streets of Paris.

I am going to Paris next week; can you give me some information about the streets of that beautiful city?

It would take too long to enumerate the principal streets of Paris: Paris has greatly changed these last fifty years, and principally during the second empire. However I will mention the "Grands Boulevards" which run from "La Madeleine" to "La Place de la Bastille."

Are there any other streets which bear the name of Boulevards?

Yes, there are the Boulevards de Sébastopol and Strasbourg which run in a straight line from the Seine to the Eastern railway station and are prolonged on the other side of the river by the Boulevard St. Michel; the Boulevard Hausmann and many others.

Which is the longest street in Paris?

The Rue Lafayette which with its prolongation, the Rue d'Allemagne, is more than 5 kilometres long and starts from the new Opera House.

What do you call the street which runs round Paris, along the ramparts?

It has different names, generally those of the Generals of the first empire, like Victor, Brune, Bessière, Lannes, Mortier, &c., but bears the general name of Boulevards Extérieurs.

Which street do you consider as the finest in Paris?

The Rue de Rivoli, with its arcades and the splendid buildings which are in it. It is more than three kilometres long.

Are there any embankments in Paris?

On each side the river Seine is embanked, and its banks planted with rows of trees.

## Les Rues de Paris.

Je vais à Paris la semaine prochaine; pouvez-vous me donner quelques renseignements sur les rues de cette belle ville?

Il me faudrait trop longtemps pour énumérer les principales rues de Paris: Paris a beaucoup changé depuis cinquante ans, et principalement pendant le second empire. Cependant je mentionnerai les grands boulevards qui s'étendent de la Madeleine à la place de la Bastille.

Y a-t-il d'autres rues qui portent le nom de Boulevards?

Oui, il y a les Boulevards de Sébastopol et de Strasbourg qui vont en droite ligne de la Seine à la gare du chemin de fer de l'Est et se prolongent de l'autre côté du fleuve par le Boulevard St. Michel; le Boulevard Hausmann et beaucoup d'autres.

Quelle est la plus longue rue de Paris?

La rue Lafayette qui, avec sa prolongation, la rue d'Allemagne, a plus de cinq kilomètres de long et part du nouvel Opéra.

Comment appelez-vous la rue qui fait le tour de Paris, le long des remparts?

Elle a différents noms: généralement ceux des généraux du premier empire, comme Victor, Brune, Bessières, Lannes, Mortier, &c.; mais elle porte le nom général de Boulevards Extérieurs.

Quelle rue considérez-vous comme la plus belle rue de Paris?

La rue de Rivoli, avec ses arcades et les splendides édifices qui s'y trouvent. Elle a plus de trois kilomètres de longueur.

Y a-t-il des quais à Paris?

De chaque côté la Seine est bordée de quais, et ses bords sont plantés de rangées d'arbres.

## How to Progress in French.

I have learnt French at school; I took many lessons, in classes and privately: I know my grammar pretty well, and understand nearly everything I read, but cannot say two words in an intelligible manner. What should I do?

Hear French spoken; have a master that speaks to you in French, very slowly at first, and then more quickly, on the subjects which are familiar to you

Is it, then, more useful to listen and to try to understand what is said in a language than trying to speak it one's self?

Both are useful and necessary; but you will never pronounce well yourself, if you do not train your ear by hearing that language spoken as frequently as you can.

When may I hope to be able to speak myself?

When your ears can recognise a spoken word as quickly and as accurately as your eyes can read it when it is written or printed. Try to pronounce perfectly some words which contain the greatest difficulties of the French pronunciation, then refer to them for any other word of similar spelling. Read aloud as much as you can, as soon as you have acquired more facility in your pronunciation. Then try to speak and you will be astonished at your progress.

Can you tell me what is the cause of my not understanding French when spoken?

It is because you are not particular enough about the word linking, when you speak yourself.

## Comment faire des progrès en Français.

J'ai appris le Français à l'école; j'ai pris beaucoup de leçons dans des classes et de leçons particulières; je sais assez bien ma grammaire et je comprends presque tout ce que je lis; mais je ne sais pas dire deux mots d'une manière intelligible. Que devrais-je faire?

Entendre parler français; avoir un maître qui vous parle Français, très lentement d'abord, et ensuite plus vite, sur les sujets qui vous sont familiers.

Est-il donc plus utile d'écouter et d'essayer de comprendre ce que l'on dit dans une langue, que d'essayer de la parler soi-même?

Les deux choses sont utiles et nécessaires; mais vous ne prononcerez jamais bien vous-même, si vous ne dressez pas votre oreille en entendant parler cette langue aussi fréquemment que vous le pouvez.

Quand puis-je espérer pouvoir parler moi-même?

Quand votre oreille pourra reconnaître un mot parlé aussi vite et aussi exactement que vos yeux peuvent le lire quand il est écrit ou imprimé. Essayez de prononcer parfaitement quelques mots qui contiennent les plus grandes difficultés de la prononciation française, et rapportez-y, tout autre mot d'une orthographe analogue. Lisez à haute voix autant que vous le pouvez, aussitôt que vous avez acquis plus de facilité dans votre prononciation. Essayez alors de parler et vous serez étonné de vos progrès.

Pouvez-vous me dire quelle est la cause de ce que je ne comprends pas le Français quand on le parle? C'est parceque vous n'êtes pas assez minutieux au sujet de la liaison, quand vous parlez vous-même.

# FRENCH VERBS.

## REGULAR & IRREGULAR.

BY

A. P. HUGUENET.

### CONTENTS.

|                                       | PAGE |                                 | PAGE |
|---------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------|------|
| Definitions .....                     | 3    | Compound tenses conjugated      |      |
| Formation of the Tenses .....         | 5    | with <i>être</i> .....          | 18   |
| The auxiliary verb                    |      | Transitive verbs used passively | 20   |
| <i>avoir</i> , to have.....           | 8    | Reflective verbs .....          | 21   |
| The auxiliary verb                    |      | Conjugation of verbs used       |      |
| <i>être</i> , to be.....              | 10   | negatively .....                | 22   |
| The verb <i>aimer</i> , to love       |      | Conjugation of verbs used in-   |      |
| (1st Conjugation) .....               | 12   | terrogatively and inter-        |      |
| The verb <i>punir</i> , to punish     |      | rogatively and negatively       | 23   |
| (2nd Conjugation) .....               | 13   | Irregular and defective verbs—  |      |
| The verb <i>recevoir</i> , to receive |      | 1st group .....                 | 24   |
| (3rd Conjugation) .....               | 14   | 2nd group .....                 | 26   |
| The verb <i>rendre</i> , to render    |      | Government of verbs.....        | 32   |
| (4th Conjugation) .....               | 15   | Table of the endings of French  |      |
| Compound tenses conjugated            |      | Verbs (Regular and Ir-          |      |
| with <i>avoir</i> .....               | 16   | regular) .....                  | 35   |





## THE VERB.

---

The verb (Latin, *verbum*, the word) is so called because it is the most important part of speech. There can be no sentence without a verb. Therefore a perfect knowledge of verbs is necessary for any one who wishes to write or to speak a language in a correct and intelligible manner.

The simplest definition of the verb is as follows :

The verb is the word which expresses the action performed by the subject, or the state of the subject.

*je travaille*, I *work* ; *il dort*, he *sleeps* ; *je suis malade*, I *am ill*.

### 1. Transitive Verbs in Active Voice.

Transitive verbs or active verbs are those which, not expressing by themselves any complete idea, require a word in the accusative case after them to complete the sense. That word answers the question *qui*, whom, or *que*, what ?

*j'aime mon père*, I *love* my father ; *je lis le livre*, I *read* the book.

### 2. Transitive Verbs in Passive Voice.

Verbs are in the Passive Voice when the action, instead of being performed by the subject, is performed on the subject.

*Mon père est aimé*, my father is loved.

*Le verre est cassé*, the glass is broken.

The passive voice is formed with the auxiliary *être*, to be, and the past participle of the transitive verb.

### 3. Intransitive or Neuter Verbs.

Intransitive or neuter verbs are those which generally express a complete sense by themselves. If any word be added to them it never answers the question *qui* or *que*, but one of the questions *à qui*, to whom, or *à quoi*, to what ; *de qui*, of whom, or *de quoi*, of what, &c.

*L'enfant dort*, the child *sleeps* ; *le livre appartient à mon père*, the book *belongs* to my father.

#### 4. Reflective, Pronominal, and Reciprocal Verbs.

Reflective and pronominal verbs are used when the action is performed by the subject on itself.

Il *se brûla*, he *burnt himself* ; ils *se souviennent*, they *remember*.

Reflective verbs are transitive verbs which are conjugated with two personal pronouns of the same person, the one in the nominative case, as a subject, and the other in the accusative case, as an object or complement.

Pronominal verbs are verbs which can never be used without two pronouns, as *se repentir*, to repent ; *se souvenir*, to remember ; *se moquer*, to mock, &c.

Reciprocal verbs are those which, being identical in form to reflective and pronominal verbs, express that the action has been exchanged between two or more persons.

Ils *se saluent*, they *salute each other*.

Ils *se haïssent*, they *hate one another*.

Ils *s'écrivent*, they *write to one another*.

#### 5. Impersonal Verbs.

Impersonal verbs are those which can only be used in the third person singular.

Il *pleut*, it *rains* ; il *neige*, it *snows* ; il *faut*, it *is necessary*.

#### 6. Defective Verbs.

Defective verbs are those which are not used in all tenses as *gésir*, to lie ; *ouïr*, to hear ; *clore*, to close ; *sourdre*, to spring ; *tistre*, to weave, &c.

### TENSES and MOODS.

#### Tenses.

Tenses are the inflexions of verbs by which they are made to signify that the action took place, takes place, or will take place at a certain time.

There are in reality only three tenses, *past*, *present*, and *future* ; but a past action may have taken place at a more or less remote time, and a future action could take place sooner or later.

This is why there are different past and future tenses, while there is only one present tense.

## Moods.

The moods are inflexions of the verb which indicate in what manner the assertion expressed by the verb is made.

There are five moods, as follows :

1. The *indicative*, which simply expresses an affirmation.  
Il *parle* français, he *speaks* French.
2. The *imperative* expresses an order or a prayer.  
*Parlez*, speak. *Donnez-moi* un morceau de pain, *give* me a piece of bread.
3. The *conditional* indicates that the action is subject to a condition.  
Je *chanterais* si vous le vouliez, I *would sing* if you liked it.
4. The *subjunctive* always depends on another verb which precedes it, and which generally expresses an idea of doubt, fear, uncertainty or negation.  
Je doute qu'il *vienne*, I doubt whether he *may come*.  
Je crains qu'il ne *soit* malade, I fear that he may *be* ill.  
Il n'est pas sûr qu'il *parle*, it is not sure that he *may speak*.
5. The *infinitive* expresses the affirmation in an indefinite manner, without referring to numbers or persons.  
Il est utile d'*étudier*, it is useful to *study*. C'est en *lisant* qu'on s'instruit, it is by *reading* that one becomes learned.

## Formation of the Tenses of French Verbs.

Besides the division of the Verb into *simple* and *compound* tenses, which is common to languages in general, French Grammar divides the tenses into two categories :—*primitive* and *derivative* tenses.

The *primitive* tenses are those which serve to form the others ; they are five in number :

The *present of the infinitive* ;  
The *present participle* ;  
The *past participle* ;  
The *present indicative* ;  
The *past definite*.

The *derivative* tenses are, as their name indicates, those which are formed from the primitive tenses.



## 1. The INFINITIVE PRESENT forms two tenses :

### a. The *future absolute*, by the change of *r*, *oir*, or *re* into *rai* :

|                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| aimer : j'aime- <i>rai</i> .      | to love : I shall love.       |
| punir : je puni- <i>rai</i> .     | to punish : I shall punish.   |
| recevoir : je recev- <i>rai</i> . | to receive : I shall receive. |
| rendre : je rend- <i>rai</i> .    | to render : I shall render.   |

### b. The *present conditional*, by the change of *r*, *oir*, or *re* into *rais* :

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| aimer : j'aime- <i>rais</i> .      | to love : I should love.       |
| punir : je puni- <i>rais</i> .     | to punish : I should punish.   |
| recevoir : je recev- <i>rais</i> . | to receive : I should receive. |
| rendre : je rend- <i>rais</i> .    | to render : I should render.   |

## 2. The PRESENT PARTICIPLE forms three, or rather two and a half tenses :

### a. The three persons plural of the *present of the indicative*, by the change of *ant* into *ons*, *ez*, *ent* :

|                                                                                         |                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| -imant : nous aim- <i>ons</i> , vous aim- <i>ez</i> , ils aim- <i>ent</i> .             | loving : we love, you love, they love.          |
| punissant : nous puniss- <i>ons</i> , vous puniss- <i>ez</i> , ils puniss- <i>ent</i> . | punishing : we punish, you punish, they punish. |
| rendant : nous rend- <i>ons</i> , vous rend- <i>ez</i> , ils rend- <i>ent</i> .         | rendering : we render, you render, they render. |

**Exception.**—Verbs in *oir* (third conjugation) end in the third person plural of the indicative in *oivent*, and not in *event* :

|                                                                                       |                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| recevant : nous recev- <i>ons</i> , vous recev- <i>ez</i> , ils reço- <i>oivent</i> . | receiving : we receive, you receive, they receive. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|

### b. The *imperfect of the indicative*, by change of *ant* into *ais*.

|                                     |                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| aimant : j'aim- <i>ais</i> .        | loving : I was loving.       |
| punissant : je puniss- <i>ais</i> . | punishing : I was punishing. |
| recevant : je recev- <i>ais</i> .   | receiving : I was receiving. |
| rendant : je rend- <i>ais</i> .     | rendering : I was rendering. |

### c. The *present of the subjunctive*, by the change of *ant* into *e* :

|                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| aimant : que j'aim- <i>e</i> .        | loving : that I may love.      |
| punissant : que je puniss- <i>e</i> . | punishing : that I may punish. |
| rendant : que je rend- <i>e</i> .     | rendering : that I may render. |

EXCEPTION.—Verbs in *oir* (third conjugation) change *evant* into *oive*, in the three persons singular and the 3rd person plural : recevant : que je reç-*oive*... ; qu'ils reç-*oivent*.

---

3. The PAST PARTICIPLE forms all the compound tenses, with the help of the auxiliaries *avoir* (to have) or *être* (to be). (\*)

|                                                                    |                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| aimé : j'ai aimé, j'avais aimé, j'aurai aimé, &c.                  | loved ; I have loved, I had loved, I shall have loved.                          |
| puni : j'aurais puni, que j'aie puni, &c.                          | punished : I should have punished, that I may have punished, &c.                |
| arrivé : je suis arrivé, j'étais arrivé, je serai arrivé, &c.      | arrived : I have arrived, I had arrived, I shall have arrived.                  |
| tombé : je serai tombé, que je sois tombé, que je fusse tombé, &c. | fallen : I shall have fallen, that I may have fallen, that I might have fallen. |

---

4. The PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE forms the Imperative by the suppression of the pronouns subjects *je*, *nous* and *vous* :

|                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| j'aime : aime.              | I love : love (thou).      |
| nous aimons : aimons.       | we love : let us love.     |
| vous aimez : aimez.         | you love : love (ye).      |
| je punis : punis.           | I punish : punish (thou).  |
| nous punissons : punissons. | we punish : let us punish. |
| vous punissez : punissez.   | you punish : punish (ye).  |

---

5. The PAST DEFINITIVE forms the Imperfect of the Subjunctive by the addition of *se* to the 2nd person singular.

|                                        |                                    |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| tu aimas : que j'aimas- <i>se</i> .    | I loved ; that I might love.       |
| tu punis : que je punis- <i>se</i> .   | I punished : that I might punish.  |
| tu reçus : que je reçus- <i>se</i> .   | I received : that I might receive. |
| tu rendis : que je rendis- <i>se</i> . | I rendered : that I might render.  |

---

(\*) All active verbs have their compound tenses formed with the auxiliary *avoir*.

Neuter verbs generally take *avoir*. The majority of those expressing movement take *être*.

All reflexive verbs take *être* in their compound tenses.

## The Auxiliary Verb avoir, "to have."

### Present INDICATIVE (*Indicatif Présent*).

|                                       |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| j'ai, <i>I have.</i>                  | nous avons, <i>we have.</i>        |
| tu as, <i>thou hast.</i>              | vous avez, <i>you have.</i>        |
| il (elle) a, <i>he (she, it) has.</i> | ils (elles) ont, <i>they have.</i> |

### Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                           |                                       |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| j'avais, <i>I had.</i>                    | nous avions, <i>we had.</i>           |
| tu avais, <i>thou hadst.</i>              | vous aviez, <i>you had.</i>           |
| il (elle) avait, <i>he (she, it) had.</i> | ils (elles) avaient, <i>they had.</i> |

### Past Definite (*Passé défini*).

|                                         |                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| j'eus, <i>I had.</i>                    | nous eûmes, <i>we had.</i>           |
| tu eus, <i>thou hadst.</i>              | vous eûtes, <i>you had.</i>          |
| il (elle) eut, <i>he (she, it) had.</i> | ils (elles) eurent, <i>they had.</i> |

### 1st Future (*Futur absolu*).

|                                                |                                            |
|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| j'aurai, <i>I shall or will have.</i>          | nous aurons, <i>we shall or will have.</i> |
| tu auras, <i>thou will have.</i>               | vous aurez, <i>you will have.</i>          |
| il (elle) aura, <i>he (she, it) will have.</i> | ils (elles) auront, <i>they will have.</i> |

### 1ST CONDITIONAL (*Conditionnel présent*).

|                                          |                                               |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| j'aurais, <i>I should or would have.</i> | nous aurions, <i>we should or would.</i>      |
| tu aurais, <i>thou wouldst have.</i>     | vous auriez, <i>you would have[have].</i>     |
| il (elle) aurait, <i>he would have.</i>  | ils (elles) auraient, <i>they would have.</i> |

### IMPERATIVE (*Impératif*).

|                          |                            |                         |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| aie, <i>have (thou).</i> | ayons, <i>let us have.</i> | ayez, <i>have (ye).</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|

### Present SUBJUNCTIVE (*Subjonctif présent*).

|                                                           |                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| que j'aie, <i>that I may or should have, that I have.</i> | que nous ayons, <i>that we may have.</i> |
| que tu aies, <i>that thou mayest have.</i>                | que vous ayez, <i>that you may have.</i> |
| qu'il ait, <i>that he may have.</i>                       | qu'ils aient, <i>that they may have.</i> |

### Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                                              |                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| que j'eusse, <i>that I might or should have, that I had.</i> | que nous eussions, <i>that we might have.</i> |
| que tu eusses, <i>that thou mightest have.</i>               | que vous eussiez, <i>that you might have.</i> |
| qu'il eût, <i>that he might have.</i>                        | qu'ils eussent, <i>that they might have.</i>  |

### Present INFINITIVE (*Infinitif présent*).

avoir, *to have.*

### Present Participle (*Participe présent*).

ayant, *having.*

### Past Participle (*Participe passé*).

eu, *had.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Perfect (*Passé indéfini*).

|                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| j'ai eu, <i>I have had.</i>     | nous avons eu, <i>we have had.</i>  |
| tu as eu, <i>thou hast had.</i> | vous avez eu, <i>you have had.</i>  |
| il a eu, <i>he has had.</i>     | ils ont eu, <i>they have had.</i>   |
| elle a eu, <i>she has had.</i>  | elles ont eu, <i>they have had.</i> |

Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*).

|                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| j'avais eu, <i>I had had.</i>       | nous avions eu, <i>we had had.</i>   |
| tu avais eu, <i>thou hadst had.</i> | vous aviez eu, <i>you had had.</i>   |
| il avait eu, <i>he had had.</i>     | ils avaient eu, <i>they had had.</i> |

2nd Pluperfect (*Passé antérieur*).

|                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| j'eus eu, <i>I had had.</i>       | nous eûmes eu, <i>we had had.</i>   |
| tu eus eu, <i>thou hadst had.</i> | vous eûtes eu, <i>you had had.</i>  |
| il eut eu, <i>he had had.</i>     | ils eurent eu, <i>they had had.</i> |

2nd Future (*Futur antérieur*).

|                                         |                                           |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| j'aurai eu, <i>I shall have had.</i>    | nous aurons eu, <i>we shall have had.</i> |
| tu auras eu, <i>thou wilt have had.</i> | vous aurez eu, <i>you will have had.</i>  |
| il aura eu, <i>he will have had.</i>    | ils auront eu, <i>they will have had.</i> |

2nd Conditional (*Conditionnel passé*).

|                                             |                                              |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| j'aurais (*) eu, <i>I should have had.</i>  | nous aurions eu, <i>we should have had.</i>  |
| tu aurais eu, <i>thou wouldst have had.</i> | vous auriez eu, <i>you would have had.</i>   |
| il aurait eu, <i>he would have had.</i>     | ils auraient eu, <i>they would have had.</i> |

Perfect SUBJUNCTIVE (*Subjonctif passé*).

|                                                   |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| que j'aie eu, <i>that I may have had.</i>         | que nous ayons eu, <i>that we may have had.</i> |
| que tu aies eu, <i>that thou mayest have had.</i> | que vous ayez eu, <i>that you may have had.</i> |
| qu'il ait eu, <i>that he may have had.</i>        | qu'ils aient eu, <i>that they may have had.</i> |

Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*).

|                                                       |                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| que j'eusse eu, <i>that I might have had.</i>         | que nous eussions eu, <i>that we might have had.</i> |
| que tu eusses eu, <i>that thou mightest have had.</i> | que vous eussiez eu, <i>that you might have had.</i> |
| qu'il eût eu, <i>that he might have had.</i>          | qu'ils eussent eu, <i>that they might have had.</i>  |

Past Infinitive (*Infinitif passé*).

avoir eu, *to have had.*

Past Participle (*Participe passé*).

ayant eu, *having had.*

(\*) The imperfect of the subjunctive is often used instead of the conditional of the auxiliary verb: *j'eusse eu, tu eusses eu, il eût eu, nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils eussent eu.*



# The Auxiliary Verb <sup>A</sup>tre, "to be."

## Present INDICATIVE (*Indicatif présent*).

|                                        |                                    |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| je suis, <i>I am.</i>                  | nous sommes, <i>we are.</i>        |
| tu es, <i>thou art.</i>                | vous êtes, <i>you are.</i>         |
| il (elle) est, <i>he (she, it) is.</i> | ils (elles) sont, <i>they are.</i> |

## Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                           |                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| j'étais, <i>I was.</i>                    | nous étions, <i>we were.</i>           |
| tu étais, <i>thou wast.</i>               | vous étiez, <i>you were.</i>           |
| il (elle) était, <i>he (she, it) was.</i> | ils (elles) étaient, <i>they were.</i> |

## Past Definite (*Passé défini*).

|                                         |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| je fus, <i>I was.</i>                   | nous fûmes, <i>we were.</i>           |
| tu fus, <i>thou wast.</i>               | vous fûtes, <i>you were.</i>          |
| il (elle) fut, <i>he (she, it) was.</i> | ils (elles) furent, <i>they were.</i> |

## 1st Future (*Futur absolu*).

|                                              |                                          |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| je serai, <i>I shall be.</i>                 | nous serons, <i>we shall be.</i>         |
| tu seras, <i>thou wilt be.</i>               | vous serez, <i>you will be.</i>          |
| il (elle) sera, <i>he (she, it) will be.</i> | ils (elles) seront, <i>they will be.</i> |

## 1st CONDITIONAL (*Conditionnel présent*).

|                                                 |                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| je serais, <i>I should be.</i>                  | nous serions, <i>we should be.</i>          |
| tu serais, <i>thou wouldst be.</i>              | vous seriez, <i>you would be.</i>           |
| il (elle) serait, <i>he (she, it) would be.</i> | ils (elles) seraient, <i>they would be.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE (*Impératif*).

|                         |                           |                        |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| sois, <i>be (thou).</i> | soyons, <i>let us be.</i> | soyez, <i>be (ye).</i> |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|

## Present SUBJUNCTIVE (*Subjonctif présent*).

|                                               |                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| que je sois, <i>that I may be, that I be.</i> | que nous soyons, <i>that we may be.</i> |
| que tu sois, <i>that thou mayest be.</i>      | que vous soyez, <i>that you may be.</i> |
| qu'il soit, <i>that he may be.</i>            | qu'ils soient, <i>that they may be.</i> |

## Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                                              |                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| que je fusse, <i>that I might or should be, that I were.</i> | que nous fussions, <i>that we might be.</i> |
| que tu fusses, <i>that thou mightest be.</i>                 | que vous fussiez, <i>that you might be.</i> |
| qu'il fût, <i>that he might be.</i>                          | qu'ils fussent, <i>that they might be.</i>  |

## Present INFINITIVE (*Infinitif présent*).

être, *to be.*

## Present Participle (*Participe présent*).

étant, *being.*

## Past Participle (*Participe passé*).

été, *been.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Perfect (*Passé indéfini*).

|                                   |                                        |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| j'ai été, <i>I have been.</i>     | nous avons été, <i>we have been.</i>   |
| tu as été, <i>thou hast been.</i> | vous avez été, <i>you have been.</i>   |
| il a été, <i>he has been.</i>     | ils ont été                            |
| elle a été, <i>she has been</i>   | elles ont été } <i>they have been.</i> |

Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*).

|                                       |                                        |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| j'avais été, <i>I had been.</i>       | nous avions été, <i>we had been.</i>   |
| tu avais été, <i>thou hadst been.</i> | vous aviez été, <i>you had been.</i>   |
| il avait été, <i>he had been.</i>     | ils avaient été, <i>they had been.</i> |

2nd Pluperfect (*Passé antérieur*).

|                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| j'eus été, <i>I had been.</i>       | nous eûmes été, <i>we had been.</i>   |
| tu eus été, <i>thou hadst been.</i> | vous eûtes été, <i>you had been.</i>  |
| il eut été, <i>he had been.</i>     | ils eurent été, <i>they had been.</i> |

2nd Future (*Futur antérieur*).

|                                           |                                             |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| j'aurai été, <i>I shall have been.</i>    | nous aurons été, <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| tu auras été, <i>thou wilt have been.</i> | vous aurez été, <i>you will have been.</i>  |
| il aura été, <i>he will have been.</i>    | ils auront été, <i>they will have been.</i> |

2nd Conditional (*Conditionnel passé*).

j'aurais or j'eusse été, *I should or would have been.*  
 tu aurais or tu eusses été, *thou wouldst have been.*  
 il aurait or il eût été, *he would have been.*  
 nous aurions or nous eussions été, *we should have been.*  
 vous auriez or vous eussiez été, *you would have been.*  
 ils auraient or ils eussent été, *they would have been.*

Perfect Subjunctive (*Subjonctif passé*).

|                                                     |                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| que j'aie été, <i>that I may have been.</i>         | que nous ayons été, <i>that we may have been.</i> |
| que tu aies été, <i>that thou mayest have been.</i> | que vous ayez été, <i>that you may have been.</i> |
| qu'il ait été, <i>that he may have been.</i>        | qu'ils aient été, <i>that they may have been.</i> |

Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*).

|                                                         |                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| que j'eusse été, <i>that I might have been.</i>         | que nous eussions été, <i>that we might have been.</i> |
| que tu eusses été, <i>that thou mightest have been.</i> | que vous eussiez été, <i>that you might have been.</i> |
| qu'il eût été, <i>that he might have been.</i>          | qu'ils eussent été, <i>that they might have been.</i>  |

Past Infinitive (*Infinitif passé*).

avoir été, *to have been.*

Past Participle (*Participe passé*).

ayant été, *having been.*

## The Four Regular Conjugations.

All French verbs end either in *er* (1st Conjugation), in *ir* (2nd Conj.) in *oir* (3rd Conj.), or in *re* (4th Conj.) ; thence four ways of conjugating regular verbs, or four regular Conjugations.

Simple Tenses of aim-*er*, to love. (*First Conjugation.*)

(\*) P 4 Present INDICATIVE (*Indicatif présent.*)

|                                             |                                        |      |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------|
| j'aim-e, <i>I love, I am loving.</i>        | nous aim-ons, <i>we love.</i>          | } D2 |
| tu aim-es, <i>thou lovest.</i>              | vous aim-ez, <i>you love.</i>          |      |
| il (elle) aim-e, <i>he (she, it) loves.</i> | ils (elles) aim-ent, <i>they love.</i> |      |

(\*) D 2 Imperfect (*Imparfait.*)

|                                               |                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| j'aim-ais, <i>I was loving.</i>               | nous aim-ions, <i>we loved.</i>           |
| tu aim-ais, <i>thou lovedst.</i>              | vous aim-iez, <i>you loved.</i>           |
| il (elle) aim-ait, <i>he (she, it) loved.</i> | ils (elles) aim-aient, <i>they loved.</i> |

P 5 Past definite (*Passé défini.*)

|                                             |                                           |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| j'aim-ai, <i>I loved.</i>                   | nous aim-âmes, <i>we loved.</i>           |
| tu aim-as, <i>thou lovedst.</i>             | vous aim-âtes, <i>you loved.</i>          |
| il (elle) aim-a, <i>he (she, it) loved.</i> | ils (elles) aim-èrent, <i>they loved.</i> |

D 1st Future (*Futur absolu.*)

|                                                    |                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| j'aim-erai, <i>I shall or will love.</i>           | nous aim-erons, <i>we shall love.</i>          |
| tu aim-eras, <i>thou shalt love.</i>               | vous aim-erez, <i>you shall love.</i>          |
| il (elle) aim-era, <i>he (she, it) shall love.</i> | ils (elles) aim-eront, <i>they shall love.</i> |

D 1 1ST CONDITIONAL (*Conditionnel présent.*)

|                                                      |                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| j'aim-erais, <i>I should or would love.</i>          | nous aim-erions, <i>we should love.</i>          |
| tu aim-erais, <i>thou wouldst love.</i>              | vous aim-eriez, <i>you would love.</i>           |
| il (elle) aim-erait, <i>he (she, it) would love.</i> | ils (elles) aim-eraient, <i>they would love.</i> |

D 4 IMPERATIVE (*Impératif.*)

|                            |                              |                           |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| aim-e, <i>love (thou).</i> | aim-ons, <i>let us love.</i> | aim-ez, <i>love (ye).</i> |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|

D 2 Present SUBJUNCTIVE (*Subjonctif présent.*)

|                                                          |                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| que j'aim-e, <i>that I may love.</i>                     | que nous aim-ions, <i>that we may love</i>           |
| que tu aim-es, <i>that thou mayest love.</i>             | que vous aim-iez, <i>that you may love.</i>          |
| qu'il (elle) aim-e, <i>that he (she, it) [may love.]</i> | qu'ils (elles) aim-ent, <i>that they [may love.]</i> |

D 5 Imperfect (*Imparfait.*)

|                                                                     |                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| que j'aim-asse, <i>that I might love.</i>                           | que nous aim-assions, <i>that we [might love.]</i>             |
| que tu aim-asses, <i>that thou might-est love. [it] might love.</i> | que vous aim-assiez, <i>that you might love. [might love.]</i> |
| qu'il (elle) aim-ât, <i>that he (she, [might love.]</i>             | qu'ils (elles) aim-assent, <i>that they [might love.]</i>      |

P 1 Present INFINITIVE (*Infinitif présent.*) aim-*er*, to love.

P 2 Present participle (*Participe présent.*) aim-*ant*, loving.

P 3 Past participle (*Participe passé.*) aim-*é*, aimée, loved.

(\*) P Primitive tenses. D Derivative tenses. Derivative tenses are marked with the same number as the primitive tenses from which they are derived.

SIMPLE TENSES of *pun-ir*, to punish (*Second Conjugation*).P 4 Present INDICATIVE (*Indicatif présent*).

|                                                |                                             |      |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|------|
| je pun-is, <i>I punish, I am punishing</i>     | nous pun-issons, <i>we punish.</i>          | } D2 |
| tu pun-is, <i>thou punishest</i>               | vous pun-issez, <i>you punish.</i>          |      |
| il (elle) pun-it, <i>he (she, it) punishes</i> | ils (elles) pun-issent, <i>they punish.</i> |      |

D 2 Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                                     |                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| je pun-issais, <i>I punished, I was punishing.</i>  | nous pun-issions, <i>we punished.</i>           |
| tu pun-issais, <i>thou punishedst.</i>              | vous pun-issiez, <i>you punished.</i>           |
| il (elle) pun-issait, <i>he (she, it) punished.</i> | ils (elles) pun-issaient, <i>they punished.</i> |

P 5 Past definite (*Passé défini*).

|                                            |                                              |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| je pun-is, <i>I punished.</i>              | nous pun-îmes, <i>we punished.</i>           |
| tu pun-is, <i>thou punishedst</i> [ished.  | vous pun-îtes, <i>you punished.</i>          |
| il (elle) pun-it, <i>he (she, it) pun-</i> | ils (elles) pun-irent, <i>they punished.</i> |

D 1 1st Future (*Futur absolu*).

|                                                     |                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| je pun-irai, <i>I shall punish.</i>                 | nous pun-irons, <i>we shall punish.</i>         |
| tu pun-iras, <i>thou wilt punish.</i>               | nous pun-irez, <i>you will punish.</i>          |
| il (elle) pun-ira, <i>he (she, it) will punish.</i> | ils (elles) pun-iront, <i>they will punish.</i> |

D 1 1st CONDITIONAL (*Conditionnel présent*).

|                                                        |                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| je pun-irais, <i>I should punish.</i>                  | nous pun-irions, <i>we should punish</i>            |
| tu pun-irais, <i>thou wouldst punish.</i>              | vous pun-iriez, <i>you should punish.</i>           |
| il (elle) pun-irait, <i>he (she, it) would punish.</i> | ils (elles) pun-iraient, <i>they should punish.</i> |

D 2 IMPERATIVE (*Impératif*).

pun-is, *punish (thou)*. pun-issons, *let us punish*. pun-issez, *punish (ye)*

D 2 Present SUBJUNCTIVE (*Subjonctif présent*).

|                                                             |                                                         |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| que je pun-isse, <i>that I may punish.</i>                  | que nous pun-issions, <i>that we might punish.</i>      | [punish |
| que tu pun-isses, <i>that thou mayest</i>                   | que vous pun-issiez, <i>that you may</i>                |         |
| qu'il (elle) pun-isse, <i>that he (she, it) may punish.</i> | qu'ils (elles) pun-issent, <i>that they may punish.</i> |         |

D 4 Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                                             |                                                           |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| que je pun-isse, <i>that I might punish</i>                 | que nous pun-issions, <i>that we might punish.</i>        | [punish |
| que tu pun-isses, <i>that thou might</i>                    | que vous pun-issiez, <i>that you might</i>                |         |
| qu'il (elle) pun-ît, <i>that he (she, it) might punish.</i> | qu'ils (elles) pun-issent, <i>that they might punish.</i> |         |

P 1 Present INFINITIVE (*Infinitif présent*).

pun-ir, *to punish.*

P 2 Present participle (*Participe présent*).

pun-issant, *punishing,*

P 3 Past participle (*Participe passé*).

pun-i, pun-ie, *punished.*



SIMPLE TENSES of *recev-oir*, to receive (*Third Conjugation.*)P 4 Present INDICATIVE (*Indicatif présent.*)

|                                                  |                                              |      |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|------|
| je reç-ois, <i>I receive, I am receiving.</i>    | nous rec-evons, <i>we receive.</i>           | } D2 |
| tu reç-ois, <i>thou receivest.</i>               | vous rec-evez, <i>you receive.</i>           |      |
| il (elle) reç-oit, <i>he (she, it) receives.</i> | ils (elles) reç-oivent, <i>they receive.</i> |      |

D 2 Imperfect (*Imparfait.*)

|                                                   |                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| je rec-avais, <i>I received, I was receiving.</i> | nous rec-evions, <i>we received.</i>           |
| tu rec-avais, <i>thou receivedst</i> [ceived.     | vous rec-eviez, <i>you received.</i>           |
| il (elle) rec-avait, <i>he (she, it) re-</i>      | ils (elles) rec-évaient, <i>they received.</i> |

P 5 Past definite (*Passé défini.*)

|                                                 |                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| je reç-us, <i>I received.</i>                   | nous reç-ûmes, <i>we received.</i>           |
| tu reç-us, <i>thou receivedst.</i>              | vous reç-ûtes, <i>you received.</i>          |
| il (elle) reç-ut, <i>he (she, it) received.</i> | ils (elles) reç-urent, <i>they received.</i> |

D 1 1st Future (*Futur absolu.*)

|                                                       |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| je rec-evrai, <i>I shall receive.</i>                 | nous rec-evrons, <i>we shall receive.</i>         |
| tu rec-evras, <i>thou wilt receive.</i>               | vous rec-evrez, <i>you will receive.</i>          |
| il (elle) rec-evra, <i>he (she, it) will receive.</i> | ils (elles) rec-evront, <i>they will receive.</i> |

D 1 1st CONDITIONAL (*Conditionnel présent.*)

|                                                          |                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| je rec-evrais, <i>I should receive.</i>                  | nous rec-evrions, <i>we should receive.</i>          |
| tu rec-evrais, <i>thou wouldst receive.</i>              | vous rec-evriez, <i>you would receive.</i>           |
| il (elle) rec-evrait, <i>he (she, it) would receive.</i> | ils (elles) rec-evraient, <i>they would receive.</i> |

D 4 IMPERATIVE (*Impératif.*)

reç-ois, *receive (thou).*    rec-evons, *let us receive.*    rec-evez, *receive (ye).*

D 2 Present SUBJUNCTIVE (*Subjonctif présent.*)

|                                                              |                                                          |           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| que je reç-oive, <i>that I may receive.</i>                  | que nous rec-evions, <i>that we may receive</i>          | [receive. |
| que tu reç-oives, <i>that thou mayest receive.</i>           | que vous rec-eviez, <i>that you may</i>                  |           |
| qu'il (elle) reç-oive, <i>that he (she, it) may receive.</i> | qu'ils (elles) reç-oivent, <i>that they may receive.</i> |           |

D 5 Imperfect (*Imparfait.*)

|                                                               |                                                            |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| que je reç-usse, <i>that I might receive.</i>                 | que nous reç-ussions, <i>that we might receive.</i>        | [might receive. |
| que tu reç-usses, <i>that thou might-</i>                     | que vous reç-ussiez, <i>that you</i>                       |                 |
| qu'il (elle) reç-ût, <i>that he (she, it), might receive.</i> | qu'ils (elles) reç-ussent, <i>that they might receive.</i> |                 |

P 1 Present INFINITIVE (*Infinitif présent.*)

rec-evoir, *to receive.*

P 2 Present participle (*Participe présent.*)

rec-evant, *receiving.*

P 3 Past participle (*Participe passé.*)

reç-u, reç-ue, *received.*



## D3 COMPOUND TENSES

Conjugated with "avoir" (to have).

(To this Category belong all the *transitive* and the majority of the *intransitive verbs*).

The Verb **AIMER** (to love).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect (*Passé indéfini*).

j'ai aimé, *I have loved.*  
 tu as aimé, *thou hast loved.*  
 il a aimé, *he has loved.*  
 nous avons aimé\*, *we have loved.*  
 vous avez aimé, *you have loved.*  
 ils ont aimé, *they have loved.*

Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*).

j'avais aimé, *I had loved.*  
 tu avais aimé, *thou hadst loved.*  
 il avait aimé, *he had loved.*  
 nous avions aimé, *we had loved.*  
 vous aviez aimé, *you had loved.*  
 ils avaient aimé, *they have loved.*

2nd Pluperfect (*Passé antérieur*).

j'eus aimé, *I had loved.*  
 tu eus aimé, *thou hadst loved.*  
 il eut aimé, *he had loved.*  
 nous eûmes aimé, *we had loved.*  
 vous eûtes aimé, *you had loved.*  
 ils eurent aimé, *they had loved.*

2nd Future (*Futur antérieur*).

j'aurai aimé, *I shall have loved.*  
 tu auras aimé, *thou wilt have loved.*  
 il aura aimé, *he will have loved.*  
 nous aurons aimé, *we shall have loved.*  
 vous aurez aimé, *you will have loved.*  
 ils auront aimé, *they will have loved.*

\* After *avoir*, the past participle never agrees with the subject, but agrees with the object when preceded by it.

Ex. . Nous avons aimé nos parents, we have loved our parents.  
 Les parents que nous avons aimés, the parents whom we have loved

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

2nd Conditional (\*) (*Passé*).

j'aurais aimé, *I should have loved.*  
 tu aurais aimé, *thou wouldst have loved.*  
 il aurait aimé, *he would have loved.*  
 nous aurions aimé, *we should have loved.*  
 vous auriez aimé, *you would have loved.*  
 ils auraient aimé, *they would have loved.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect (*Passé*).

que j'aie aimé, *that I may have loved.*  
 que tu aies aimé, *that thou mayest have loved.*  
 qu'il ait aimé, *that he may have loved.*  
 que nous ayons aimé, *that we may have loved.*  
 que vous ayez aimé, *that you may have loved.*  
 qu'ils aient aimé, *that they may have loved.*

Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*).

que j'eusse aimé, *that I might have loved.*  
 que tu eusses aimé, *that thou mightest have loved.*  
 qu'il eût aimé, *that he might have loved.*  
 que nous eussions aimé, *that we might have loved.*  
 que vous eussiez aimé, *that you might have loved.*  
 qu'ils eussent aimé, *that they might have loved.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Past (*Passé*).

avoir aimé, *to have loved.*

Past Participle (*Participe passé*).

ayant aimé, *having loved.*

---

(\*) The following forms are also used :—*J'eusse aimé, tu eusses aimé, il eût aimé, nous eussions aimé, vous eussiez aimé, ils eussent aimé.*



### D 3 COMPOUND TENSES

Conjugated with "être" (to be).

(To this Category belong all the *reflective* and a few *intransitive* expressing movement.)

#### The Verb TOMBER (to fall):

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Perfect (*Passé indéfini*).

je suis tombé or tombée, (\*) *I have fallen.*  
 tu es tombé or tombée, *thou hast fallen.*  
 il est tombé, *he (it) has fallen.*  
 elle est tombée, *she (it) has fallen.*  
 nous sommes tombés or tombées, *we have fallen.*  
 vous êtes tombés or tombées, *you have fallen.*  
 ils sont tombés  
 elles sont tombées } *they have fallen.*

##### Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*).

j'étais tombé or tombée, *I had fallen.*  
 tu étais tombé or tombée, *thou hadst fallen.*  
 il était tombé, *he (it) had fallen.*  
 elle était tombée, *she (it) had fallen.*  
 nous étions tombés or tombées, *we had fallen.*  
 vous étiez tombés or tombées, *you had fallen.*  
 ils étaient tombés  
 elles étaient tombées } *they had fallen.*

##### 2nd Pluperfect (*Passé antérieur*).

je fus tombé or tombée, *I had fallen.*  
 tu fus tombé or tombée, *thou hadst fallen.*  
 il fut tombé, *he (it) had fallen.*  
 elle fut tombée, *she (it) had fallen.*  
 nous fûmes tombés or tombées, *we had fallen.*  
 vous fûtes tombés or tombées, *you had fallen.*  
 ils furent tombés  
 elles furent tombées } *they had fallen.*

##### 2nd Future (*Futur antérieur*).

je serai tombé or tombée, *I shall have fallen.*  
 tu seras tombé or tombée, *thou wilt have fallen.*  
 il sera tombé, *he (it) will have fallen.*  
 elle sera tombée, *she (it) will have fallen.*  
 nous serons tombés or tombées, *we shall have fallen.*  
 vous serez tombés or tombées, *you shall have fallen.*  
 ils seront tombés  
 elles seront tombées } *they will have fallen.*

---

(\*) After *être*, the past participle agrees with the subject.

## CONDITIONAL MOOD.

2nd Conditional (\*) (*Passé*).

je serais tombé *or* tombée, *I should have fallen.*  
 tu serais tombé *or* tombée, *thou wouldst have fallen.*  
 il serait tombé, *he (it) would have fallen.*  
 elle serait tombée, *she (it) would have fallen.*  
 nous serions tombés *or* tombées, *we should have fallen.*  
 vous seriez tombés *or* tombées, *you would have fallen.*  
 ils seraient tombés  
 elles seraient tombées } *they would have fallen.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect (*Passé*).

que je sois tombé *or* tombée, *that I may have fallen*  
 que tu sois tombé *or* tombée, *that thou mayest have fallen.*  
 qu'il soit tombé, *that he (it) may have fallen.*  
 qu'elle soit tombée, *that she (it) may have fallen.*  
 que nous soyons tombés *or* tombées, *that we may have fallen.*  
 que vous soyez tombés *or* tombées, *that you may have fallen.*  
 qu'ils soient tombés  
 qu'elles soient tombées } *that they may have fallen.*

Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*).

que je fusse tombé *or* tombée, *that I might have fallen.*  
 que tu fusses tombé *or* tombée, *that thou mightest have fallen.*  
 qu'il fût tombé, *that he (it) might have fallen.*  
 qu'elle fût tombée, *that she (it) might have fallen.*  
 que nous fussions tombés *or* tombées, *that we might have fallen.*  
 que vous fussiez tombés *or* tombées, *that you might have fallen.*  
 qu'ils fussent tombés  
 qu'elles fussent tombées } *that they might have fallen.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Past (*Passé*).

être tombé *or* tombée, tombés *or* tombées, *to have fallen.*

Past Participle (*Participe passé*).

étant tombé *or* tombée, tombés *or* tombées, *having fallen.*

(\*) The following form is also used:—

je fusse tombé *or* tombée.  
 tu fusses tombé *or* tombée.  
 il fût tombé, elle fût tombée.  
 nous fussions tombés *or* tombées.  
 vous fussiez tombés *or* tombées.  
 ils fussent tombés, elles fussent tombées.

## Conjugation of Transitive Verbs Used Passively.

Etre aimé, *to be loved.*

### Present INDICATIVE (*Indicatif présent*).

|                                      |                                            |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| je suis aimé, <i>I am loved.</i>     | nous sommes aimés, <i>we are loved.</i>    |
| tu es aimé, <i>thou art loved.</i>   | vous êtes aimés, <i>you are loved.</i>     |
| il est aimé, <i>he is loved.</i>     | ils sont aimés                             |
| elle est aimée, <i>she is loved.</i> | elles sont aimées } <i>they are loved.</i> |

### Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                        |                                            |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| j'étais aimé, <i>I was loved.</i>      | nous étions aimés, <i>we were loved.</i>   |
| tu étais aimé, <i>thou wast loved.</i> | vous étiez aimés, <i>you were loved.</i>   |
| il était aimé, <i>he was loved.</i>    | ils étaient aimés, <i>they were loved.</i> |

### Past Definite (*Passé défini*).

|                                      |                                           |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| je fus aimé, <i>I was loved.</i>     | nous fûmes aimés, <i>we were loved.</i>   |
| tu fus aimé, <i>thou wast loved.</i> | vous fûtes aimés, <i>you were loved.</i>  |
| il fut aimé, <i>he was loved.</i>    | ils furent aimés, <i>they were loved.</i> |

### 1st Future (*Futur absolu*).

|                                           |                                              |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| je serai aimé, <i>I shall be loved.</i>   | nous serons aimés, <i>we shall be loved</i>  |
| tu seras aimé, <i>thou wilt be loved.</i> | vous serez aimés, <i>you will be loved.</i>  |
| il sera aimé, <i>he will be loved.</i>    | ils seront aimés, <i>they will be loved.</i> |

### 1st CONDITIONAL (*Conditionnel présent*).

|                                               |                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| je serais aimé, <i>I should be loved.</i>     | nous serions aimés, <i>we should be loved.</i>  |
| tu serais aimé, <i>thou wouldst be loved.</i> | vous seriez aimés, <i>you would be loved.</i>   |
| il serait aimé, <i>he would be loved.</i>     | ils seraient aimés, <i>they would be loved.</i> |

### IMPERATIVE (*Impératif*).

sois aimé, *be loved*, soyons aimés, *let us be loved*, soyez aimés, *be (ye) loved.*

### Present SUBJUNCTIVE (*Subjonctif présent*).

|                                                     |                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| que je sois aimé, <i>that I may be loved.</i>       | que nous soyons aimés, <i>that we may be loved.</i> |
| que tu sois aimé, <i>that thou mayest be loved.</i> | que vous soyez aimés, <i>that you may be loved.</i> |
| qu'il soit aimé, <i>that he may be loved.</i>       | qu'ils soient aimés, <i>that they may be loved.</i> |

### Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                                      |                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| que je fusse aimé, <i>that I might be loved.</i>     | que nous fussions aimés, <i>that we might be loved.</i> |
| que tu fusses aimé, <i>that thou might be loved.</i> | que vous fussiez aimés, <i>that you might be loved.</i> |
| qu'il fût aimé, <i>that he might be loved.</i>       | qu'ils fussent aimés, <i>that they might be loved.</i>  |

Present INFINITIVE : être aimé, *to be loved.*

Present Participle : étant aimé, *being loved.*

Past Participle : été aimé, *been loved.*

## Conjugation of Reflective Verbs.

Se flatter, to flatter one's self.

### Present Indicative (*Indicatif présent*).

je me flatte, *I flatter myself.*

tu te flattes, *thou flatterest thyself.*

il se flatte, *he flatters himself.*

nous nous flattons, *we flatter ourselves.* [*selves.*]

vous vous flattez, *you flatter yourselves.*

ils se flattent, *they flatter themselves.*

### Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

je me flattais, *I flattered myself.*

tu te flattais, *thou flatteredst thyself.*

il se flattait, *he flattered himself.*

nous nous flattions, *we flattered ourselves.* [*yourselves.*]

vous vous flattiez, *you flattered*  
ils se flattaient, *they flattered themselves.*

### Past Definite (*Passé défini*).

je me flattai, *I flattered myself.*

tu te flattas, *thou flatteredst thyself.*

il se flatta, *he flattered himself.*

nous nous flattâmes, *we flattered ourselves.* [*yourselves.*]

vous vous flattâtes, *you flattered*  
ils se flattèrent, *they flattered themselves.*

### 1st Future (*Futur absolu*).

je me flatterai, *I shall flatter myself.* [*thyself.*]

tu te flatteras, *thou wilt flatter*

il se flattera, *he will flatter himself.*

nous nous flatterons, *we will flatter ourselves.* [*yourselves.*]

vous vous flatterez, *you will flatter*  
ils se flatteront, *they will flatter themselves.*

### 1st Conditional (*Conditionnel présent*).

je me flatterais, *I should flatter myself.* [*ter thyself.*]

tu te flatterais, *thou wouldst flat-*

il se flatterait, *he would flatter himself.*

nous nous flatterions, *we should flatter ourselves.* [*ter yourselves.*]

vous vous flatteriez, *you would flat-*  
ils se flatteraient, *they would flatter themselves.*

### Imperative (*Impératif*).

flatte-toi, *flatter thyself.*

flatte-toi, *flatter thyself.*

flattez-vous, *flatter yourselves.*

flattons-nous, *let us flatter ourselves.*

### Present Subjunctive (*Subjonctif présent*).

que je me flatte, *that I may flatter myself.*

que tu te flattes, *that thou mayest flatter thyself.*

qu'il se flatte, *that he may flatter himself.*

que nous nous flattions, *that we may flatter ourselves.*

que vous vous flattiez, *that you may flatter yourselves.*

qu'ils se flattent, *that they may flatter themselves.*

### Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

que je me flattasse, *that I might flatter myself.*

que tu te flattasses, *that thou mightest flatter thyself.*

qu'il se flattât, *that he might flatter himself.*

que nous nous flattassions, *that we might flatter ourselves.*

que vous vous flattassiez, *that you might flatter yourselves.*

qu'ils se flattassent, *that they might flatter themselves.*

Present Infinitive :

se flatter, *to flatter one's self.*

Present Participle :

se flattant, *flattering one's self.*

Past Participle :

flatté, *flattered.*



Verbs can be conjugated in four ways, viz. :—

- (a) **Affirmatively** : je suis, *I am*.  
 (b) **Negatively** : je ne suis pas, *I am not*.  
 (c) **Interrogatively** : suis-je, *am I?*  
 (d) **Negatively & Interrogatively** : ne suis-je pas, *am I not?*

### French Verbs Conjugated Negatively.

Ne pas aimer, *not to love*.

#### Present INDICATIVE (*Indicatif présent*).

|                                             |                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| je n'aime pas, <i>I do not love</i> .       | nous n'aimons pas, <i>we do not love</i> .  |
| tu n'aimes pas, <i>thou dost not love</i> . | vous n'aimez pas, <i>you do not love</i> .  |
| il n'aime pas, <i>he does not love</i> .    | ils n'aiment pas, <i>they do not love</i> . |

#### Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                               |                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| je n'aimais pas, <i>I do not love</i> .       | nous n'aimions pas, <i>we did not love</i> .   |
| tu n'aimais pas, <i>thou didst not love</i> . | vous n'aimiez pas, <i>you did not love</i> .   |
| il n'aimait pas, <i>he did not love</i> .     | ils n'aimaient pas, <i>they did not love</i> . |

#### Past Definite (*Passé défini*).

|                                              |                                                |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| je n'aimai pas, <i>I did not love</i> .      | nous n'aimâmes pas, <i>we did not love</i> .   |
| tu n'aimas pas, <i>thou didst not love</i> . | vous n'aimâtes pas, <i>you did not love</i> .  |
| il n'aima pas, <i>he did not love</i> .      | ils n'aimèrent pas, <i>they did not love</i> . |

#### Future (*Futur*).

|                                                              |                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| je n'aimerai pas, <i>I shall, will not love</i> .            | nous n'aimerons pas, <i>we shall, will not love</i> .             |
| tu n'aimeras pas, <i>thou shalt, will not love</i> . [love.] | vous n'aimerez pas, <i>you shall, will not love</i> . [not love.] |
| il n'aimera pas, <i>he shall, will not love</i> .            | ils n'aimeront pas, <i>they shall, will not love</i> .            |

#### 1st CONDITIONAL (*Conditionnel présent*).

|                                                                          |                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| je n'aimerais pas, <i>I should, would not love</i> . [wouldst not love.] | nous n'aimerions pas, <i>we should, would not love</i> . [would not love.] |
| tu n'aimerais pas, <i>thou shouldst, would not love</i> .                | vous n'aimeriez pas, <i>you should, would not love</i> .                   |
| il n'aimerait pas, <i>he should, would not love</i> .                    | ils n'aimeraient pas, <i>they should, would not love</i> .                 |

#### IMPERATIVE (*Impératif*).

n'aime pas, *do not love*, n'aimons pas, *let us not love*,  
 n'aimez pas, *do not love*.

#### Present SUBJUNCTIVE (*Subjonctif présent*).

|                                                                    |                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| que je n'aime pas, <i>that I may not love</i> . [mayest not love.] | que nous n'aimions pas, <i>that we may not love</i> . [may not love.] |
| que tu n'aimes pas, <i>that thou may not love</i> .                | que vous n'aimiez pas, <i>that you may not love</i> .                 |
| qu'il n'aime pas, <i>that he may not love</i> .                    | qu'ils n'aiment pas, <i>that they may not love</i> .                  |

#### Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

|                                                                           |                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| que je n'aimasse pas, <i>that I might not love</i> . [mightest not love.] | que nous n'aimassions pas, <i>that we might not love</i> . [might not love.] |
| que tu n'aimasses pas, <i>that thou might not love</i> .                  | que vous n'aimassiez pas, <i>that you might not love</i> .                   |
| qu'il n'aimât pas, <i>that he might not love</i> .                        | qu'ils n'aimassent pas, <i>that they might not love</i> .                    |

Present INFINITIVE (*Infinitif présent*) : ne pas aimer, *not to love*.

Present Participle (*Participe présent*) : n'aimant pas, *not loving*.

Past Participle (*Participe passé*) : ne..... pas aimé, *not loved*.

# French Verbs conjugated | Interrogatively. (\*)

# Interrogatively and Negatively.

Aimer, to love.

Ne pas aimer, not to love.

Present INDICATIVE (*Indicatif présent*).

aimé-je ? *do I love ?*  
aimes-tu ? *dost thou love ?*  
aime-t-il ? *does he love ?*  
aimons-nous ? *do we love ?*  
aimez-vous ? *do you love ?*  
aiment-ils ? *do they love ?*

n'aimé-je pas ? *do I not love ?*  
n'aimes-tu pas ? *dost thou not love ?*  
n'aime-t-il pas ? *does he not love ?*  
n'aimons-nous pas ? *do we not love ?*  
n'aimez-vous pas ? *do you not love ?*  
n'aiment-ils pas ? *do they not love ?*

Imperfect (*Imparfait*).

aimais-je ? *did I love ?*  
aimais-tu ? *didst thou love ?*  
aimait-il ? *did he love ?*  
aimions-nous ? *did we love ?*  
aimiez-vous ? *did you love ?*  
aimaient-ils ? *did they love ?*

n'aimais-je pas ? *did I not love ?*  
n'aimais-tu pas ? *didst thou not love ?*  
n'aimait-il pas ? *did he not love ?*  
n'aimions-nous pas ? *did we not love ?*  
n'aimiez-vous pas ? *did you not love ?*  
n'aimaient-ils pas ? *did they not love ?*

Past Definite (*Passé défini*).

aimai-je ? *did I love ?*  
aimas-tu ? *didst thou love ?*  
aima-t-il ? *did he love ?*  
aimâmes-nous ? *did we love ?*

n'aimai-je pas ? *did I not love ?*  
n'aimas-tu pas ? *didst thou not love ?*  
n'aima-t-il pas ? *did he not love ?*  
n'aimâmes-nous pas ? *did we not love ?*  
[love ?]  
n'aimâtes-vous pas ? *did you not love ?*  
n'aimèrent-ils pas ? *did they not love ?*

1st Future (*Futur absolu*).

aimerai-je ? *shall I love ?*  
aimeras-tu ? *wilt thou love ?*  
aimera-t-il ? *will he love ?*  
aimerons-nous ? *shall we love ?*  
aimerez-vous ? *will you love ?*  
aimeront-ils ? *will they love ?*

n'aimerai-je pas ? *shall I not love ?*  
n'aimeras-tu pas ? *wilt thou not love ?*  
n'aimera-t-il pas ? *will he not love ?*  
n'aimerons-nous pas ? *shall we not love ?*  
n'aimerez-vous pas ? *will you not love ?*  
[love ?]  
n'aimeront-ils pas ? *will they not love ?*

1st CONDITIONAL (*Conditionnel présent*).

aimerais-je ? *should I love ?*  
aimerais-tu ? *wouldst thou love ?*  
aimerait-il ? *would he love ?*  
aimerions-nous ? *should we love ?*  
aimeriez-vous ? *would you love ?*  
aimeraient-ils ? *would they love ?*

n'aimerais-je pas ? *should I not love ?*  
n'aimerais-tu pas ? *wouldst thou not love ?*  
[love ?]  
n'aimerait-il pas ? *would he not love ?*  
n'aimerions-nous pas ? *should we not love ?*  
n'aimeriez-vous pas ? *would you not love ?*  
[not love.]  
n'aimeraient-ils pas ? *would they not love ?*

(\*) Verbs are never used Interrogatively in the Imperative nor in the Subjunctive, as an order could not be given under the form of a question, and a verb in the Subjunctive is always governed by another verb which expresses the Interrogation if the sentence be Interrogative.

## Irregular and Defective Verbs.

### FIRST GROUP.

This group consists of all irregular verbs which form their derivative tenses in accordance with the rules given for the formation of tenses. Verbs, compounds of others, are only given when they are not conjugated like them.

### PRIMITIVE TENSES.

| Present<br>INFINITIVE.                | Present<br>PARTICIPLE | Past PAR-<br>TICIPLE.   | Present<br>INDICATIVE | Past<br>DEFINITE.   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| bouillir, <i>to boil</i>              | bouillant             | bouilli                 | je bous               | je bouillis         |
| choir, <i>to fall</i>                 | .....                 | chu                     | .....                 | .....               |
| couvrir, <i>to cover</i>              | couvrant              | couvert                 | je couvre             | je couvris          |
| dormir, <i>to sleep</i>               | dormant               | dormi                   | je dors               | je dormis           |
| forfaire, <i>to forfeit</i>           | .....                 | forfait                 | .....                 | .....               |
| fuir, <i>to shun, flee</i>            | fuyant                | fui                     | je fuis               | je fuis             |
| gésir, <i>to lie</i>                  | gisant                | .....                   | il gît                | .....               |
| issir, <i>to issue</i>                | .....                 | issu                    | .....                 | .....               |
| mentir, <i>to lie</i>                 | mentant               | menti                   | je mens               | je mentis           |
| offrir, <i>to offer</i>               | offrant               | offert                  | j'offre               | j'offris            |
| ouïr, <i>to hear</i>                  | .....                 | ouï                     | j'ouïs                | .....               |
| ouvrir, <i>to open</i>                | ouvrant               | ouvert                  | j'ouvre               | j'ouvris            |
| partir, <i>to depart</i>              | partant               | parti                   | je pars               | je partis           |
| repentir (se), <i>to re-<br/>pent</i> | se repentant          | repenti                 | je me repens          | je me repen-<br>tis |
| saillir(*), <i>to project</i>         | saillant              | sailli                  | il saille             | il saillit          |
| sentir, <i>to feel</i>                | sentant               | senti                   | je sens               | je sentis           |
| servir, <i>to serve</i>               | servant               | servi                   | je sers               | je servis           |
| sortir, <i>to go out</i>              | sortant               | sorti                   | je sors               | je sortis           |
| souffrir, <i>to suffer</i>            | souffrant             | souffert                | je souffre            | je souffris         |
| tressaillir, <i>to start</i>          | tressaillant          | tressailli              | je tressaille         | je tressaillis      |
| vêtir, <i>to clothe</i>               | vêtant                | vêtu                    | je vêts               | je vêtis            |
| pleuvoir, <i>to rain</i>              | pleuvant              | plu                     | il pleut              | il plut             |
| surseoir, <i>to reprieve</i>          | sursoyant             | sursis                  | je sursois            | je sursis           |
| absoudre, <i>to absolve</i>           | absolvant             | absous, (f.)<br>absoute | j'absous              | .....               |
| battre, <i>to beat</i>                | battant               | battu                   | je bats               | je battis           |
| braire, <i>to bray</i>                | .....                 | .....                   | il brait              | .....               |
| bruire, <i>to rustle</i>              | .....                 | .....                   | il bruït              | .....               |
| clore, <i>to close</i>                | .....                 | clos                    | je clos               | .....               |
| conclure, <i>to con-<br/>clude</i>    | concluant             | conclu                  | je conclus            | je conclus          |

(\*) *Saillir* in the sense of *to spring out, to stream* is regular.

## PRIMITIVE TENSES.

| Present<br>INFINITIVE                          | Present<br>PARTICIPLE | Past PAR-<br>TICIPLE | Present<br>INDICATIVE | Past<br>DEFINITE |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| conduire (*), to<br><i>con-duct</i>            | conduisant            | conduit              | je conduis            | je conduisis     |
| confire, to <i>pickle</i> ,<br><i>preserve</i> | confisant             | confit               | je confis             | je confis        |
| connaître(†), to<br><i>know</i>                | connaissant           | connu                | je connais            | je connus        |
| coudre, to <i>sew</i> .                        | cousant               | cousu                | je couds              | je cousis        |
| craindre(‡), to <i>fear</i>                    | craignant             | craint               | je crains             | je craignis      |
| croire, to <i>believe</i>                      | croyant               | cru                  | je crois              | je crus          |
| croître, to <i>grow</i>                        | croissant             | crû                  | je crois              | je crûs          |
| écrire, to <i>write</i>                        | écrivant              | écrit                | j'écris               | j'écrivis        |
| exclure, to <i>exclude</i>                     | excluant              | exclu                | j'exclus              | j'exclus         |
| frire, to <i>fry</i>                           | .....                 | frit                 | je fris               | .....            |
| lire, to <i>read</i>                           | lisant                | lu                   | je lis                | je lus           |
| luire, to <i>shine</i>                         | luisant               | lui                  | je luis               | .....            |
| maudire, to <i>curse</i>                       | maudissant            | maudit               | je maudis             | je maudis        |
| médire, to <i>slander</i>                      | médissant             | médit                | je médis              | je médis         |
| mettre, to <i>put</i>                          | mettant               | mis                  | je mets               | je mis           |
| moudre, to <i>grind</i>                        | moulant               | moulu                | je mouds              | je moulus        |
| naître, to <i>be born</i>                      | naissant              | né                   | je nais               | je naquis        |
| nuire, to <i>hurt</i>                          | nuisant               | nui                  | je nuis               | je nuisis        |
| plaire, to <i>please</i> to                    | plaisant              | plu                  | je plais              | je plus          |
| résoudre, to <i>resolve</i>                    | résolvant             | résou, ré-<br>solu   | je résous             | je résolus       |
| rire, to <i>laugh</i>                          | riant                 | ri                   | je ris                | je ris           |
| rompre, to <i>break</i>                        | rompant               | rompu                | je romps              | je rompis        |
| sourdre, to <i>spring</i>                      | .....                 | .....                | .....                 | .....            |
| suffire, to <i>suffice</i>                     | suffisant             | suffi                | je suffis             | je suffis        |
| suire, to <i>follow</i>                        | suivant               | suivi                | je suis               | je suivis        |
| taire (se), to <i>be</i><br><i>silent</i>      | se taisant            | tu                   | je me tais            | je me tus        |
| tistre, to <i>weave</i>                        | .....                 | tissu                | .....                 | .....            |
| traire, to <i>milk</i>                         | trayant               | trait                | je traie              | .....            |
| vaincre, to <i>conquer</i>                     | vainquant             | vaincu               | je vaincs             | je vainquis      |
| vivre, to <i>live</i>                          | vivant                | vécu                 | je vis                | je vécus         |

(\*) All verbs ending in *uire*, except *bruire*, *luire* and *nuire*, are conjugated like *conduire*.

(†) All verbs ending in *ître*, except *naître*, are conjugated like *connaître*.

(‡) All verbs ending in *aindre*, *eindre* and *oindre*, are irregular, and must be conjugated like *craindre*.



## IRREGULAR AND

## SECOND

This group consists of the irregular verbs which do not form all

NOTES. I. All verbs form their Imperfect of the Subjunctive regularly from the Past Definite. *Savoir*, to know, and *avoir*, to have, are the only ones in which the Imperfects of the Indicative *je savais, j'avais* are not formed regularly from the Present Participle.

## PRIMITIVE TENSES.

| Present<br>INFINITIVE.      | Present<br>PARTICIPLE | Past<br>PARTICIPLE | Present<br>INDICATIVE         | Past<br>DEFINITE. |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| aller, <i>to go</i>         | allant                | allé               | je vais                       | j'allai           |
| envoyer, <i>to send</i>     | envoyant              | envoyé             | j'envoie                      | j'envoyai         |
| acquérir, <i>to acquire</i> | acquérant             | acquis             | j'acquires                    | j'acquis          |
| courir, <i>to run</i>       | courant               | couru              | je cours                      | je courus         |
| cueillir, <i>to gather</i>  | cueillant             | cueilli            | je cueille                    | je cueillis       |
| faillir, <i>to fail</i>     | faillant              | failli             | { je faux, or }<br>je faillis | je faillis        |
| mourir, <i>to die</i>       | mourant               | mort               | je meurs                      | je mourus         |
| tenir, <i>to hold</i>       | tenant                | tenu               | je tiens                      | je tins           |
| venir, <i>to come</i>       | venant                | venu               | je viens                      | je vins           |

# DEFECTIVE VERBS.

## GROUP.

their derivative tenses in accordance with the rules of formation.

II. The persons of those tenses regularly formed from the primitive tenses are printed in italics.

III. Derivative tenses which are not given here are formed regularly.

## DERIVATIVE TENSES,

of which the formation is irregular, either throughout or in certain persons only.

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je vais, tu va, il va ; nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.*—FUTURE : J'irai, tu iras, &c.—CONDITIONAL : J'irais, tu irais, &c.—IMPERATIVE : *Va, allons, allez.*—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que j'aïlle, que tu aïlles, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent.*

{ FUTURE : J'enverrai, tu enverras, &c.—CONDITIONAL : J'enverrais, tu enverrais, &c.

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *J'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquièrent.*—FUTURE : J'acquerrai, tu acquerras, &c.—CONDITIONAL : J'acquerrais, tu acquerrais, &c.—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il acquière ; que nous acquérions, que vous acquériez, qu'ils acquièrent.*

{ FUTURE : Je courrai, tu courras, &c.—CONDITIONAL : Je courrais, tu courrais, &c.

{ FUTURE : Je cueillerai, tu cueilleras, &c.—CONDITIONAL : Je cueillerais, tu cueillerais, &c.

{ FUTURE : Je faudrai, or *je faillirai*, &c.—CONDITIONAL : Je faudrais, or *je faillirais*.

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je meurs, tu meurs, il meurt ; nous mourons, vous mourez, ils meurent.*—FUTURE : Je mourrai, tu mourras, &c.—CONDITIONAL : Je mourrais, tu mourrais, &c.—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je meure, que tu meures, qu'il meure ; que nous mourions, que vous mouriez, qu'ils meurent.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je tiens, tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent.*—FUTURE : Je tiendrai, tu tiendras, &c.—CONDITIONAL : Je tiendrais, tu tiendrais, &c.—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que te tienne, que tu tiennes, qu'il tienne ; que nous tenions, que vous teniez, qu'ils tiennent.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je viens, tu viens, il vient ; nous venons, vous venez, ils viennent.*—FUTURE : je viendrai, tu viendras, &c.—CONDITIONAL : Je viendrais, tu viendrais, &c.—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je vienne, que tu viennes, qu'il vienne ; que nous venions, que vous veniez, qu'ils viennent.*

## SECOND

| Present<br>INFINITIVE.               | Present<br>PARTICIPLE | Past<br>PARTICIPLE | Present<br>INDICATIVE     | Past<br>DEFINITE. |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| déchoir, <i>to decay, to decline</i> | ...                   | déchu              | je déchois                | je déchus         |
| échoir, <i>to fall due</i>           | échéant               | échu               | il échoit                 | il échut          |
| falloir, <i>to be necessary</i>      | ...                   | fallu              | il faut                   | il fallut         |
| mouvoir, <i>to move</i>              | mouvant               | mu                 | je meus                   | je mus            |
| pouvoir, <i>to be able</i>           | pouvant               | pu                 | je peux <i>or</i><br>puis | je pus            |
| pourvoir, <i>to provide</i>          | pourvoyant            | pourvu             | je pourvois               | je pourvus        |
| prévaloir, <i>to prevail</i>         | prévalant             | prévalu            | je prévaux                | je prévalus       |
| prévoir, <i>to foresee</i>           | prévoyant             | prévu              | je prévois                | je prévis         |
| *s'asseoir, <i>to sit</i>            | s'asseyant            | assis              | je m'assieds              | je m'assis        |
| savoir, <i>to know</i>               | sachant               | su                 | je sais                   | je sus            |
| savoir, <i>to sit</i>                | séant                 | ...                | il sied                   | ...               |

\* *Asseoir* is also conjugated more regularly, its primitive tenses being *asseyant, assis, j'assois, j'assis*.

G R O U P—*Continued.*

## DERIVATIVE TENSES.

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je déchois, tu déchois, il déchoit ; nous déchoyons, vous déchoyez, ils déchoient.*—FUTURE : *Je décherrai, tu décherras, &c.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je décherrais, tu décherrais, &c.*—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je déchoie, que tu déchoies, qu'il déchoie, que vous déchoyions, que vous déchoyiez, qu'ils déchoient.*

{ FUTURE : *Il écherra.*—CONDITIONAL : *Il écherrait.*—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Qu'il échoie.*

{ FUTURE : *Il faudra.*—CONDITIONAL : *Il faudrait.*—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Qu'il faille.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je meus, tu meus, il meut, nous mouvons, vous mouvez, ils meuvent.*—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, que nous mouvions, que vous mouviez, qu'ils meuvent.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je peux or je puis, tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent.*—FUTURE : *Je pourrai, tu pourras, &c.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je pourrais, tu pourrais, &c.*—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je puisse, que tu puisses, &c.*

FUTURE : *Je pourvoirai.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je pourvoirais.*

{ FUTURE : *Je prévaudrai.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je prévaudrais.* No Imperative.  
PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je prévale.*

FUTURE : *Je prévoirai.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je prévoirais.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied ; nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient.*—FUTURE : *Je m'assiérai, tu t'assiéras, &c., also, je m'asseierai, tu t'asseieras, &c.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je m'assiérais, tu t'assiérais, &c., also, je m'asseierais, tu t'asseierais, &c.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je sais, tu sais, il sait ; nous savons, vous savez, ils savent.*—IMPERFECT : *Je savais, tu savais, &c.*—FUTURE : *Je saurai, tu sauras, &c.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je saurais, tu saurais, &c.*—IMPERATIVE : *Sache, sachons, sachez.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Il sied, ils sièent.*—IMPERFECT : *Il seyait, ils seyaient.*—FUTURE : *Il siéra, ils siéront.*—CONDITIONAL : *Il siérait, ils siéraient.*—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Qu'il siée, qu'ils sièent.*



## S E C O N D

| Present<br>INFINITIVE.                             | Present<br>PARTICIPLE. | Past<br>PARTICIPLE. | Present<br>INDICATIVE. | Past<br>DEFINITE. |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| valoir <i>to be worth</i>                          | valant                 | valu                | je vau <b>x</b>        | je valu <b>s</b>  |
| voir, <i>to see</i>                                | voyant                 | vu                  | je vois                | je vis            |
| vouloir, <i>to be willing</i><br><i>or to wish</i> | voulant                | voulu               | je veu <b>x</b>        | je voulu <b>s</b> |
| boire, <i>to drink</i>                             | buvant                 | bu                  | je boi <b>s</b>        | je bu <b>s</b>    |
| dire, <i>to say</i>                                | disant                 | dit                 | je di <b>s</b>         | je di <b>s</b>    |
| faire, <i>to make</i>                              | faisant                | fait                | je fai <b>s</b>        | je fi <b>s</b>    |
| prendre, <i>to take</i>                            | prenant                | pris                | je pre <b>nds</b>      | je pri <b>s</b>   |

GROUP—*Continued.*

## DERIVATIVE TENSES.

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je vauz, tu vauz, il vaut ; nous valons, vous valez, ils valent.*—FUTURE : *Je vaudrai, tu vaudras, &c.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je vaudrais, tu vaudrais, &c.*—No IMPERATIVE.—SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille : que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils valient.*

FUTURE : *Je verrai, tu verras, &c.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je verrais, tu verrais, &c.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je veux, tu veux, il veut : nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent.*—FUTURE : *Je voudrai, tu voudras, &c.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je voudrais, &c.*—IMPERATIVE : ... .. veuillez.—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je veuille, qu tu veuilles, qu'il veuille ; que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils veuillent.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je bois, tu bois, il boit ; nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent.*—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je boive, que tu boives, qu'il boive ; que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils boivent.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je dis, tu dis, il dit : nous disons, vous dites, ils disent.*—NOTE. *Dédire* (to retract), *médire* (to slander), *prédire* (to predict), *interdire* (to interdict), *contredire* (to contradict), are written in the 2nd person plural of the PRESENT INDICATIVE : *vous dédisez, vous médisez, vous prédisez, vous interdisez, vous contredisez.* *Redire*, to say again, is the only compound of *dire*, which is entirely conjugated like it.

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je fais, tu fais, il fait ; nous faisons, vous faites, ils font.*—FUTURE : *Je ferai, tu feras, &c.*—CONDITIONAL : *Je ferais, tu ferais, &c.*—PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je fasse, que tu fasses, &c.*

{ PRESENT INDICATIVE : *Je prends, tu prends, il prend ; nous prenons, vous prenez, ils prennent.* PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE : *Que je prenne, que tu prennes, qu'il prenne, que nous prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils prennent.*

## Government of Verbs.

### LIST OF VERBS WHICH GOVERN THE PREPOSITION *de*.

|                                             |                                              |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| absoudre, <i>to absolve.</i>                | s'efforcer, <i>to endeavour to</i>           |
| s'abstenir, <i>to abstain from</i>          | s'effrayer, <i>to frighten at</i>            |
| accuser, <i>to accuse of</i>                | empêcher, <i>to prevent to</i>               |
| achever, <i>to finish to</i>                | s'empresser de, <i>to hasten to</i>          |
| affecter, <i>to affect to</i>               | enjoindre, <i>to enjoin to</i>               |
| s'affliger, <i>to be grieved at</i>         | s'ennuyer, <i>to get tired.</i>              |
| ambitionner, <i>to be ambitious to</i>      | entreprendre, <i>to undertake to</i>         |
| appartenir, <i>to belong to</i>             | essayer, <i>to try to</i>                    |
| appréhender, <i>to apprehend to</i>         | s'étonner, <i>to wonder at</i>               |
| avertir, <i>to warn to</i>                  | être charmé, <i>to be delighted at</i>       |
| s'aviser, <i>to bethink one's self of</i>   | être surpris, <i>to be surprised to</i>      |
| avoir coutume, <i>to be used to</i>         | être tenté, <i>to be tempted to</i>          |
| blâmer, <i>to blame for</i>                 | éviter, <i>to avoid to</i>                   |
| brûler, <i>to long to</i>                   | excuser, <i>to excuse to</i>                 |
| cesser, <i>to cease to</i>                  | exempter, <i>to exempt from</i>              |
| se chagriner, <i>to vex one's self</i>      | feindre, <i>to feign to</i>                  |
| charger, <i>to charge to</i>                | féliciter, <i>to congratulate upon</i>       |
| commander, <i>to command</i>                | finir, <i>to finish to</i>                   |
| conjuré, <i>to conjure to</i>               | se flatter, <i>to flatter one's self for</i> |
| conseiller, <i>to advise to</i>             | frémir, <i>to shudder</i>                    |
| se contenter, <i>to be contented with</i>   | se garder, <i>to beware of</i>               |
| convaincre, <i>to convince</i>              | gagner, <i>to gain</i>                       |
| convenir, <i>to agree to</i>                | se glorifier, <i>to glory in</i>             |
| craindre, <i>to fear to</i>                 | gronder, <i>to scold for</i>                 |
| décider, <i>to decide</i>                   | se hâter, <i>to hasten to</i>                |
| décourager, <i>to discourage</i>            | s'imaginer, <i>to imagine to</i>             |
| dédaigner, <i>to disdain</i>                | s'impatiser, <i>to grow impatient</i>        |
| défendre, <i>to forbid to</i>               | jurer, <i>to swear</i>                       |
| défier, <i>to defy to</i>                   | s'indigner, <i>to grow indignant</i>         |
| dégouter, <i>to disgust</i>                 | se lasser, <i>to grow tired</i>              |
| demander, <i>to ask to</i>                  | manquer(*), <i>to fail to</i>                |
| se dépêcher, <i>to hasten to</i>            | méditer, <i>to meditate</i>                  |
| se désaccoutumer, <i>to disaccustom</i>     | se mêler, <i>to meddle with</i>              |
| one's self                                  | menacer, <i>to threaten to</i>               |
| désespérer, <i>to despair of</i>            | mériter, <i>to deserve to</i>                |
| se déshabituer, <i>to lose the habit of</i> | se moquer, <i>to laugh at</i>                |
| se désister, <i>to desist</i>               | négliger, <i>to neglect to</i>               |
| détourner, <i>to deter</i>                  | offrir, <i>to offer to</i>                   |
| différer, <i>to defer to</i>                | obliger, <i>to oblige to</i>                 |
| dire, <i>to tell to</i>                     | obtenir, <i>to obtain</i>                    |
| discontinuer, <i>to discontinue to</i>      | s'offenser, <i>to be offended at</i>         |
| disconvenir, <i>to disagree to</i>          | omettre, <i>to omit to</i>                   |
| dispenser, <i>to dispense with</i>          | ordonner, <i>to order to</i>                 |
| dissuader, <i>to dissuade from</i>          | oublier, <i>to forget to</i>                 |
| écrire, <i>to write to</i>                  | pardonner, <i>to forgive for</i>             |

parier, to bet  
 parler, to talk of  
 permettre, to allow  
 persuader, to persuade to  
 se piquer de, to pretend to  
 plaindre, to pity for  
 prescrire, to prescribe to  
 presser, to urge to  
 prier, to request to  
 priver, to deprive  
 professer, to profess  
 projeter, to project  
 promettre, to promise to  
 proposer, to propose to  
 recommander, to recommend to  
 redouter, to dread  
 refuser, to refuse to  
 regretter, to regret to  
 se rappeler, recollect  
 se réjouir, to rejoice to

remercier, to thank for  
 se repentir, to repent  
 réprimander, to reprove  
 reprendre, to chide  
 reprocher, to reproach for  
 résoudre, to resolve to  
 rire, to laugh at  
 risquer, to risk to  
 rougir, to blush to  
 sommer, to summon  
 se soucier, to care for  
 souffrir, to suffer  
 soupçonner, to suspect  
 se souvenir, to remember to  
 suggérer, to suggest to  
 supplier, to entreat to  
 tâcher, to endeavour to  
 tenter, to tempt  
 trembler, to tremble at  
 se vanter, to boast of

#### VERBS WHICH GOVERN THE PREPOSITION *à*.

s'abaisser, to stoop to  
 aboutir, to lead to [self to  
 s'accoutumer, to accustom one's  
 admettre, to admit to  
 s'adonner, to addict one's self to  
 aider, to help to  
 aimer, to like to  
 s'amuser, to amuse one's self with  
 animer, to animate to  
 s'appliquer, to apply one's self  
 apprendre, to learn to  
 s'apprêter, to prepare one's self to  
 s'arrêter, to stop at  
 aspirer, to aspire to  
 s'attendre, to expect to  
 autoriser, to authorise  
 avoir, to have to  
 balancer, to hesitate to  
 se borner, to limit one's self to  
 chercher, to seek to  
 commencer, to begin to  
 condamner, to condemn to  
 consentir, to consent to  
 consister, to consist to  
 continuer(\*), to continue to  
 contraindre, to compel to  
 contribuer, to contribute to  
 se décider, to make up one's mind to  
 demander(\*), to ask to

dépenser, to spend at  
 destiner, to destine to  
 se déterminer, to determine on  
 se dévouer, to devote one's self to  
 se disposer, to dispose one's self to  
 donner, to give to  
 employer, to employ to  
 encourager, to encourage to  
 engager, to induce to  
 enhardir, to embolden to  
 enseigner, to teach  
 s'étudier, to prepare one's self to  
 être, to be  
 s'évertuer, to exert one's self to  
 exceller, to excel to  
 exciter, to excite to  
 exercer, to exercise to  
 exhorter, to exhort to  
 exposer, to expose to  
 forcer, to oblige to  
 former, to train up  
 habituer, to accustom to  
 se hasarder, to venture  
 hésiter, to hesitate to  
 induire, to induce  
 inviter, to invite to  
 se mettre, to set at  
 montrer, to show to  
 obliger(\*), to oblige to



s'obstiner, *to persist in*  
 s'occuper(\*), *to occupy one's self*  
 parvenir, *to succeed in*  
 penser, *to think of*  
 perdre, *to lose to*  
 persévérer, *to persevere in*  
 persister, *to persist in*  
 se plaire, *to delight in*  
 porter, *to prompt*  
 pousser, *to excite to*  
 préparer, *to prepare to*  
 prétendre, *to aspire to*  
 provoquer, *to incite to*  
 recommencer, *to begin again to*  
 se refuser, *to refuse to*

renoncer, *to renounce to*  
 répugner, *to be repugnant at*  
 se résigner, *to be resigned to*  
 se résoudre, *to resolve to*  
 rester, *to remain to*  
 réussir, *to succeed in*  
 servir, *to serve to*  
 songer, *to think of*  
 se soumettre, *to submit to*  
 tarder(\*), *to postpone, to long*  
 suffire(\*), *to be sufficient*  
 travailler, *to work to*  
 tendre, *to tend to*  
 tenir, *to wish*  
 viser, *to aim at*

---

LIST OF VERBS WHICH REQUIRE NO PREPOSITION BEFORE THE  
 INFINITIVE WHICH FOLLOWS THEM.

aimer mieux, *to like better*  
 aller(†), *to go*  
 avoir beau, *to be in vain*  
 avouer, *to own*  
 compter, *to intend*  
 confesser, *to confess*  
 daigner, *to deign*  
 déclarer, *to declare*  
 déposer, *to depose*  
 désirer, *to wish*  
 devoir, *to owe*  
 entendre, *to hear*  
 envoyer, *to send*  
 espérer, *to hope*  
 faillir, *to fail*  
 faire, *to cause*  
 falloir, *to be necessary*  
 s'imaginer, *to imagine*

laisser, *to let*  
 nier, *to deny*  
 oser, *to dare*  
 paraître, *to appear*  
 penser, *to expect*  
 pouvoir, *to be able*  
 préférer, *to prefer*  
 prétendre, *to pretend*  
 savoir, *to know*  
 sembler, *to seem*  
 souhaiter, *to wish*  
 soutenir, *to maintain*  
 valoir mieux, *to be worth more*  
 venir(†), *to come*  
 voir, *to see*  
 voler, *to hasten*  
 vouloir, *to be willing*

In examining the preceding lists, the student will notice how frequently French verbs govern a preposition other than the one which is the translation of the preposition used in English. Therefore it will be necessary to study these lists very carefully, and to refer to them every time the least doubt arises on that very important subject.

---

(\*) Verbs marked with an asterisk in these lists sometimes take *de*, and sometimes *à*, according to euphony: but *de* must be used in the passive.

Ex.: Je suis obligé de faire cela, *I am obliged to do that.*

(†) In the meaning of *to be about to do something*. Ex.: je vais sortir, *I am going out.*

(‡) *Venir*, in the meaning of *to have just done*, governs the preposition *de*.

Ex.: je viens de rentrer, *I have just returned.*

# Table of the Endings of French Verbs (Regular and Irregular).

| 1st Conjugation.        |                                                  | 2nd, 3rd, and 4th Conjugations.                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| INDICATIVE              |                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Present <sup>2</sup>    | <i>e, es, e, ons, ez, ent</i>                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} s \text{ or } x, s \text{ or } x, t^1 (*) \\ e, es, e, ons, ez, ent, \text{ only in cueillir, cou-} \\ \text{vrir, ouvrir, souffrir, tressaillir, and their compounds} \end{array} \right.$ |
| Imperfect               | <i>ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient</i>           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | like the 1st conjugation                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Past Definite           | <i>ai, as, a âmes, âtes èrent</i>                | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} is, is, it, îmes, îtes, irent \\ us, us, ut, ûmes, ûtes, urent \\ ins, ins, int, îmes, îtes, inrent \text{ (venir \& tenir only)} \end{array} \right.$                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Future                  | <i>rai, ras, ra, rons, rez,ront</i>              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | like the 1st conjugation                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| CONDITIONAL             |                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Present                 | <i>rais, rais, rait, rions, riez, raient</i>     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | like the 1st conjugation                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| IMPERATIVE <sup>3</sup> | <i>... e, ... ons, ez, ...</i>                   | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} s, ... ons, ez, ... \\ e, ... ons, ez, ... \text{ only in cueillir, cou-} \\ \text{vrir, ouvrir, souffrir, tressaillir, and their compounds} \end{array} \right.$                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| SUBJUNCTIVE             |                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Present <sup>4</sup>    | <i>e, es, e, ions, iez, ent</i>                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | like the 1st conjugation                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Imperfect               | <i>asse, asses, âti, assions, assiez, assent</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} isse, isses, îti, issions, issiez, issent \\ u s', usses, ûti, ussions, ussiez, ussent \\ inasse, inasses, înt. inssions, inssiez, inssent \text{ (venir \& tenir only)} \end{array} \right.$ |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

(\*) These figures refer to the Exceptions given on page 36.



U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C042827000



HOSSF

14 DAY USE  
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

# LOAN DEPT.

SPA

ENGLISH-SE  
arrang

SPANISH-EN

Key to ab

CONJUGATI

VERBS

ENGLISH-S

GERMAN-S

FRENCH-S

SPANISH-E

(New

DITTO, by

DITTO, by

HOSSFELT

GERMAN-S

HOSSFELT

DON QUI

GIL BLAS

IT

ENGLISH-

arran

ITALIAN

CONJUGA

VER

ENGLISH

Mel

DITTO, b

DITTO, b

ITALIAN

F

GRAMM

I

ENGLIS

I

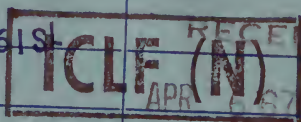
ENGLIS

HINTS

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

30 Oct 61



LOAN DEPT.

REC'D LD

NOV 1 1961

23 Oct 63 XS

REC'D LD

OCT 13 '63 - 1 PM

5 Nov '64 Jp

REC'D LD

NOV 3 '64 - 1 PM

APR 18 1967 3 6

LD 21A-50m-8,'61  
(C1795s10)476B

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley

HIRSCHFELD BROS.,

22 AND 24, BREAMS BUILDINGS, FETTER LANE, LONDON, E.C.

# HOSSFELD'S EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

## FRENCH.

s. d.

|                                                                                                         |   |   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|
| ENGLISH-FRENCH GRAMMAR, by Hossfeld's New Method,<br>arranged for Classes, Schools, and Private Lessons | 3 | 0 |
| ELEMENTARY FRENCH GRAMMAR... ..                                                                         | 1 | 0 |
| ADVANCED FRENCH GRAMMAR ... ..                                                                          | 2 | 6 |
| FRENCH COMPOSITION AND IDIOMS ... ..                                                                    | 2 | 6 |
| CONJUGATION OF FRENCH REGULAR AND IRREGULAR<br>VERBS ... ..                                             | 0 | 6 |
| POLYGLOT CORRESPONDENT (English, French, German,<br>Spanish) ... ..                                     | 3 | 6 |
| ENGLISH-FRENCH COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...                                                             | 2 | 0 |
| FRENCH-ENGLISH COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...                                                             | 2 | 0 |
| ENGLISH-FRENCH DICTIONARY ... ..                                                                        | 1 | 0 |
| FRENCH-ENGLISH DICTIONARY ... ..                                                                        | 1 | 0 |
| THE TWO DICTIONARIES in one volume ... ..                                                               | 2 | 0 |
| MANUAL OF FRENCH CONVERSATION ... ..                                                                    | 1 | 6 |
| 100 PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO ENGLISH AND<br>GERMAN ... ..                                          | 2 | 0 |
| 100 PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO GERMAN AND<br>FRENCH ... ..                                           | 2 | 0 |
| MOLIÈRE, LES FOURBERIES DE SCAPIN ... ..                                                                | 1 | 0 |

## GERMAN.

|                                                                                                         |   |   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|
| ENGLISH-GERMAN GRAMMAR, by Hossfeld's New Method,<br>arranged for Classes, Schools, and Private Lessons | 3 | 0 |
| MENGEL'S GERMAN EXERCISES AND IDIOMS ... ..                                                             | 2 | 6 |
| CONJUGATION OF GERMAN REGULAR AND IRREGULAR<br>VERBS ... ..                                             | 0 | 6 |
| HOSSFELD'S GERMAN READER ... ..                                                                         | 2 | 0 |
| ENGLISH-GERMAN COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...                                                             | 2 | 0 |
| FRENCH-GERMAN COMMERCIAL CORRESPONDENT ...                                                              | 2 | 0 |
| ENGLISH-GERMAN DICTIONARY ... ..                                                                        | 1 | 0 |
| GERMAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY ... ..                                                                        | 1 | 0 |
| THE TWO DICTIONARIES in one volume ... ..                                                               | 2 | 0 |
| SELECT GERMAN STORIES... ..                                                                             | 1 | 6 |

## SWEDISH.

|                                                |   |
|------------------------------------------------|---|
| ENGLISH-SWEDISH AND SWEDISH-ENGLISH DICTIONARY | 6 |
|------------------------------------------------|---|

## DANO-NORWEGIAN.

|                                                                               |   |   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|
| ENGLISH - DANO - NORWEGIAN AND DANO - NORWEGIAN -<br>ENGLISH DICTIONARY... .. | 4 | 6 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---|

HIRSCHFELD BROS.

22 AND 24, BREAMS BUILDINGS, FETTER LANE, LONDON. E.C.

